SOCIAL SCIENCE

CLASS 10

BOARD OF SECONDARYEDUCATION,RAJASTHAN
AJMER

PUBLISHER

RAJASTHAN STATE TEXTBOOK BOARD
JAIPUR

Text Book Translation Committee

SOCIAL SCIENCE

CLASS 10

Convener :

Dr. Gyarsi Lal Jat, Retd. Lecturer

Opposite Roadways Bus Depot,

Shanti Nagar, Devipura, Sikar

Translator :

Dr. Sunita Jakhar

Lecturer in English

Govt. Arts College, Sikar

Shri K. S. Rawat

Retd. Lecturer

38, Madhukar Nagar, Beawar, Ajmer

Shri Narendra Singh Rawat

Lecturer

Govt. Senior Secondary Kotra, Beawar, Ajmer

Shri Narendra Singh Rathore

Senior Teacher

Govt. Subhash Senior Secondary Ganj, Ajmer

Syllabus Committee

SOCIAL SCIENCE

CLASS 10

Convener :

Dr. Dev Kothari
Ex. Professor
13, Mehtaji ki Khidki, Mal Das Street,
Udaipur

Members :

Dr. Kamal Singh Kothari
Govt. College, Churu

Dr. Chandra Shekhar Kachhawa
Govt. Doongar Collage, Bikaner

Dr. Manoj Awasthi
Lecturer
S.P.C. Govt. Collage, Ajmer

Shri Prahlad Sharma
D.E.O. (Secondary)
Jaipur

Shri Jhabar Singh
Lecturer
Govt. Sn. Secondary School, Sanganer, Jaipur

Shri Durga Shankar Pareek
Dy. Inspector
Sanskrit Education, Topdara, Ajmer

Shri Dev Lal Gochar
Senior Teacher
Govt. Sn. Secondry School, Gumanpura, Kota

Shri Mahendra Singh choudhary
Senior Teacher
Govt. Secondary School, Bajheta Sewar,
Bharatpur

Shri Bhom Singh Chundawat
Senior Teacher
Govt. Secondary School. Fathenagar, Udaipur

Syllabus

Subject – Social Science

Class X

Time 3.15 Hrs **Maximum Mark:80**

Sr.No	Learning Areas	Weight age
1	History	20
2	Civics	20
3	Geography	18
4	Economics	18
5	Road Safety	2
6	Cleanliness and solid waste management	2

Contents

1. **Glorious India (Bharat)- Beginning to 1206 AD-**

(i). Mahajanapada Kal- Mahajanapada

Main janpads of Rajasthan – Moru-Jaangal, Matsya, Shoorsen and Shivi

(ii). Maurya shungs, Satavahan, Gupta, Vardhan, Choul, Chalukya, Pallava, Pal, Pratihar, Rastrakoot empire.

(iii). Foreign invasion and assimilating Huna, Shak and Kushana

2. **India (Bharat) during the struggle period – 1206 AD- 1757 AD-**

(i) Delhi Sultnat (1206 AD-1526 AD)

(ii) Mughal period (1526 AD-1757 AD)

(iii) opposition and cooperation with powers with reference to Rajasthan, Rao sekha, Hammir, Chauhan, Maharana Pratap, Chandrasen, Rai singh of Bikaner, Sawai Jaisingh and Amarsingh Rathore

(iv) History of maratha- special reference to Shivaji

(v) Vijaynagar and Bahmani empire

(vi) Origin and development of sikh religion (from Nanak to Guru Govind Singh, Banda Bairagi and Ranjeet Singh.)

3. **Retaliation and Struggle of British Empire-**

(i). Awakening of Freedom From 1757 AD-1857 AD

(ii). Tribal Movement

(iii). Contribution of revolutionary organizations

(iv). Peasants Movement

(v). Political Movement (A). 1857 AD-1919 AD (B). 1919 AD-1947 AD

(vi). Tribal peasants and Prajamandal movement with special reference to Rajasthan

4. **History of the world:-**

Origin of nationalism in Europe: Industrial revolution: - Unification of Germany and Italy.

5. **Democracy**

Meaning, Definitions Characteristics, Functioning, Participation, challenges

6. **Central Government:-**

Meaning of Government, Organs-Legislative, Executive and Judiciary Parliament of India (Bharat) (Lok Sabha-Rajya Sabha) Election process, Eligibilities', Functions, System and Powers

Executive- President, Vice president, Prime minister, Formation of council of ministers and their duties, functions, Rights and powers, the role of opposition

Judiciary- Organization of Supreme Court, jurisdiction and qualification of the judges.

7. **The State Government :-**. Vidhanmandal (Legislative)

(i). **VidhanSabha(Legislative assembly) –** Election, Functions and Powers

(ii). **Vidhan Parishad (Legislative assembly)**:- formation, Functions and Role

(iii). the process of formation of Rajasthan Vidhan Parashad and present Situation

(iv). **Executive:-** Governor, Chief Minister, Formation of council of minister, Functions, Powers

(v). High Court, Qualification of judges, Appointments and powers

8. **Water Resources:-**

Multipurpose plans, Eater conservation, Water management, Water self reliance (with special reference to Rajasthan)

9. **Agriculture-**

Kinds, Main Crops, Food grain crops and commercial

10. **Mineral and Energy resources**:-

Kinds of minerals, Main minerals (iron ore, copper, mica, aluminum, lead and zinc), distribution

Kinds of Energy Resources, Distribution, resources of minerals and energy in Rajasthan

11. Manufacturing Industries

Main industries, Iron and Steel, Textile cotton, cement, production and distribution of paper industry, industrial pollution, industries of Rajasthan.

12. Human Resources:-

Population Distribution, Growth, Density, Literacy, Sex Ratio, Rural, Urban population Ratio, population policy of Rajasthan

13. Transport and Communication-

Means of Transport, main means of communication (with special reference to Rajasthan)

14. Economic Concepts and planning-

Area of economy, general introduction of national income, economic development, and economic growth, economic planning in India (Bharat).

15. Characteristics and New Trends of Indian (Bhartiya) Economy-

In the form of undeveloped economy, developing economic, economic reforms (Liberalization, Privatization globalization), concept of swadeshi and skill development

16. Challenges before Indian (Bhatiya) economy

Price Rise, Poverty, Unemployment, Causes, and solutions.

17. Money and Financial Institutions:-

Role in economic system, historical origin, Institutional and non-intuitional financial Institutions for saving and credit (General Introduction)

Commercial Banks, indigenous bankers, local money lenders, and self help groups chit fund and personal financial companies

18. Consumer and Legal Awareness and Right to Information:-

Meanings causes of consumer`s exploitation, kinds, rights and duties of consumer, consumer`s dispute, redressal provisions (special reference to Rajasthan) legal awareness and right to information

19. Road Safety Education.

20. Cleanliness and solid waste management.

INDEX

Lession No.	Name of Lession	Page No.
1	Glorious India (Bharat) - Beginning to 1206 AD	1
2	India (Bharat) during the Struggle Period – 1206 AD – 1757 AD	26
3	Retaliation and Struggle of British Empire	52
4	History of The World	73
5	Democracy	85
6	Central Government	96
7	The State Government	110
8	Water Resources	123
9	Agriculture in India	135
10	Mineral and Energy Resources	143
11	Manufacturing Industries	153
12	Human Resources	162
13	Transport and Communication	175
14	Economic Concepts and Planning	189
15	Characteristics and New Trends of Indian Economy	197
16	Challenges Before Indian Economy	207
17	Money and financial Institutions	217
18	Consumer and Legal Awareness and Right to Information	226
19	Road Safety Education	233
20	Cleanliness and Solid Waste Management	239

Chapter 1

Glorious India (Bharat) - Beginning to 1206 AD

From the earliest period, the history and culture of India (Bharat) has been prestigious. India (Bharat) was known as the 'World Guru' and the 'Golden Sparrow'. Accepting the world as family (Vasudhaiva Kutumbkam) and praying for the welfare and good health of mankind (Sarve Bhavantu Sukhinah Sarv Santu Niramayah) are our ideals.

On the basis of excavations and archaeological remains Indian (Bhartiya) culture appears to be of universal nature. Indian (Bhartiya) regions across sea were known as 'Dipantar'. Indians (Bhartiyas) travelling on powerful ships established their political and cultural empire by travelling to Brahmadesh, Siam, Indonesia, Malaysia, Australia, Borneo, Phillipines, Japan and Korea. The ports and naval power of ancient India (Bharat) were highly developed. Scholars have mentioned about ships, sailing in the waters of Indus (Sindhu) river about 6000 years ago. Indians (Bhartiyas) travelled in various countries of the world via waterways as well as roadways and introduced Indian (Bhartiya) religion and culture to residents of distant countries. These courageous people propagated Indian (Bhartiya) philosophy, astrology, architecture, military science, political science, music and vedic treatises, all over the world. Thus we notice an extremely developed manifestation of the ancient Indian (Bhartiya) civilization.

Indus (Sindhu)-Saraswati Civilization, Vedic Civilization, civilization and culture prevalent during the time of the *Ramayana* and the *Mahabharata* have been a part of the Golden Period of India (Bharat). The Vedas are regarded as the encyclopaedia of knowledge. The Indus (Sindhu) - Saraswati Civilization is the best civilization in respect of its architecture. The *Ramayana* and the *Mahabharata* have been renowned texts representing the ideals and policies of India (Bharat). Our Mahajanapada age has been the ideal of Republican and Constitutional system. Existence of various Janapadas is evident in Post Vedic period. By this time, iron was extensively used in Eastern Uttar Pradesh and Western Bihar. The technique of using iron significantly transformed the lifestyle of people and as a result, tendency of sedentary life settlement consolidated in the society. Development of agriculture, industries, trade and commerce was instrumental in the decline of the ancient tribal system and small Janapadas were replaced by large Janapadas. With the advent of 6th century BC, Janapadas were evoloved in the form of Mahajanapadas.

In the beginning of the 6th century BC, sovereign rule was completely absent in North India (Bharat). India (Bharat) was divided into several Independent states. These states were larger and more powerful than the states of post Vedic Period.

(i) Mahajanapada Period (600-325 BC)-

Several large and powerful independent states were established during the 6th century BC in north India (Bharat). These states were known as the Mahajanapadas. As per the Buddhist text *Anguttarnikay* 16 Mahajanapadas existed at that time –

S.No.	Mahajanapadas	Capital
1.	Kashi	Varanasi
2.	Kuru	Indraprastha / Hastinapur
3.	Anga	Champa
4.	Magadha	Rajgriha/ Girivraja

5.	Vajji	Videha and Mithila
6.	Malla	Kushawati (Kushinara)
7.	Chedi	Shaktimati (Sotthivati)
8.	Vatsa	Kaushambi
9.	Kosala	Ayodhya (divided into two parts in Buddhist period, Saket- the capital of Northern part; Shravasti – the capital of Southern part)
10.	Panchala	Capital of Northern Panchala- Ahichhatra, capital of Southern Panchala –Kampilya
11.	Matsya	Virat Nagar
12.	Shoorsen	Mathura (Methora/ Shoorsenai)
13.	Ashsak	Potan or Pateli
14.	Avanti	Capital of Northern Avanti- Ujjaini, capital of Southern Avanti- Mahishmati
15.	Gandhara	Taxila
16.	Kamboja	Rajpur/Hatak

Among the above 16 Mahajanapadas, two types of states were present- Monarchy and Republic. Kosala, Vatsa, Avanti and Magadha were the most powerful monarchies of that time. Several republics also existed in 6th century BC, major were – Shakyas of Kapilvastu, Bhagas of Sunsumagiri, Bulis of Allakapa, Kaalams of Kesaputta, Koliyas of Ramagram, Mallas of Kushinara, Pava of Mallas, Moriyas of Pippalivan, Lichhavis of Vaishali, Videhas of Mithila.

Major Janapadas of Rajasthan-

In Rajasthan many Janpadas emerged with the evolution of Vedic civilazation. Tribes of the Punjab like Malav, Shivi, Arjunayan etc. which were famous for courage and valour, migrated to Rajasthan as a result of Greek invasion. Thus the roots of Janapada administration system were laid down in the Eastern part of Rajasthan.

Chief Janapadas of Rajasthan were as follows:-

Jaangal –

In the *Mahabharata* period, the present districts of Bikaner and Jodhpur were known as Jangladesh. At some places, these have been described as Kuru-Jangla and Madreya-Jangla. Ahichatrapur was the capital of this Janapada, which is now called Nagour. The king of Bikaner owned Jangladesh so he called himself 'Jaangladhar Badshah'. 'Jai Jangaldhar Badshah' is also inscribed in the royal symbol of Bikaner state.

Matsya-

The region surrounding present Jaipur was called Matsya Mahajanapada. Its expanse was from the surrounding hills of Chambal to the Jangal region of river Saraswati. Alwar and parts of Bharatpur were also included in this region. Viratnagar, which is known as Bairath at present, was its capital. Exact information about the Matsya Janapada before the reign of Maurya king Bindusara is not available. It has been mentioned in the *Mahabharata* that a king named Shahaaj ruled the states of Chedi and Matsya. In the beginning, Matsya remained a part of Chedi but later on, it became a part of the huge Magadha empire.

Shoorsen-

This Mahajanapada was situated in the modern Brij region. Mathura was its capital. Ancient Greek authors called this state 'Shoorsenoi' and its capital as 'Methora'. According to the *Mahabharata*, Yadu (Yadava) dynasty ruled here. Most of the parts of Bharatpur, Dholpur and Karauli districts came under Shoorsen Janapada. Eastern part of Alwar district was also in Shoorsen. Vasudeva's son Lord Krishna was linked with this Janapada.

Shivi-

Shivpur was the capital of Shivi Janapada and King Sushin had defeated it along with other tribes in the battle of ten kings. Ancient Shivpur has been identified with a place called Shorkot in present Pakistan. With passage of time, Shivi tribe

of Southern Punjab began to reside in Mewar region of Rajasthan.

Nagari, situated near Chittorgarh ,was the capital of this Janapad. Shivi coins have been excavated from various places of Mewar. Five cave edicts written in Brahmi script have been excavated from places near Mandsaur. From these edicts, we come to know about the expansion of Shivi janapada from the West to South east.

Despite the prevalent Republican Administration System, the actual administrative authority of these Janapadas was in the hands of aristocratic families. The representatives of these families managed all the administrative affairs as chiefs of Santhagara Sabha (General Assembly). The members of Santhagara could express their opinion on specific issues. This was called "Anayuvirodh". The topics of disputes were voted upon. Multi-coloured bars were used in the process of voting. Santhagara was the supreme organization of the Janapadas. Basic principles of state policies were determined in this assembly. In large republics, provincial assemblies were also existed apart from central assemblies. With time, these republics declined due to mutual conflicts and factions. To an extent the expansionist policies of contemporary monarchies were also responsible for the decline of these republics.

(ii) Maurya, Shunga, Satavahana, Gupta, Vardhan, Pal, Rashtrakuta, Prathihar, Pallava and Chalukya Dynasties -

Maurya Dynasty-

One of the 16 Mahajanapadas, Magadha developed into an empire during the period of Haryanka dynasty and with lapse of time, Magadha established its control over almost entire North India (Bharat).

Establishment of Maurya Dynasty-

Around 326 BC, a despotic ruler of Nanda dynasty, Ghananand ruled Magadha. At that time, Northwest India (Bharat) was terrified by Alexander's Invasion. The subjects were suffering from the atrocities of their king. People of the state were dissatisfied with him because of exorbitant taxes. In such conditions, Magadha was in need of a person who could eliminate the problems which had risen due to foreign invasions and establish the ideals of an all-powerful emperor by uniting the state. Soon, Kautilya's student Chandragupta emerged on the poltical horizon of India (Bharat) and he established a new dynasty called Maurya dynasty.

Chandragupta Maurya (322 BC-298 BC)-

With the help of guru Chanakya, Chandragupta ascended the royal throne of Magadha at the age of 25, by defeating Ghananand who was the last Nanda ruler.Through his extensive victory campaign, Chandragupta Maurya established the first pan India (Bharat) empire . In 305 BC, he defeated a Greek ruler Seleucus Nicator . After a treaty, Seleucus took 500 elephants from Chandragupta and surrendered Eastern Afghansistan, Baluchistan and the region in the western side of Indus (Sindhu) river to Chandragupta. Seleucus also got his daughter Helena married to Chandragupta and sent Megasthenes as his ambassador in Chandragupta's court. Parts of Kabul, Herat, Kandhar, Baluchistan, Punjab, plains of Ganga and Yamuna, Bihar, Bengal, Gujarat, Vindhya and Kashmir were incuded in the Great Kingdom of Chandragupta. It is evident from the Tamil treatises *Ahananuru* and *Murananuru* that Chandragupta invaded South India (Bharat). In old age he took initiation of Jain religion from Bhadrabahu. In 298 BC, he died in Shravanbelagola (Mysore) by fasting.

Bindusara (298 BC-272 BC)-

Bindusara was the son and successor of Chandragupta who was called Amitrochates by Greek authors. In the *Vayu Purana*, he has been called Bhadrasara and in Jaina texts, he has been called Singhasena. He conquered the distant South Indian (Bhartiya) regions and included them in Magadha Empire. According to *Divyavadana* (an anthology of Buddhist tales in Sankrit) revolts took place in Taxila during his reign and to crush these revolts, earlier Ashoka and then his elder brother Susim were sent. In the royal court of Bindusara, Greek ruler Antiochus first appointed a person

named Diamachus, as his ambassador. According to Pliny, Egyptian king Philadelphus (Ptolemy II) had sent an Egyptian Ambassador Dionysius to Bindusara's court.

Ashoka (273 BC-232 BC)-

According to Jain hearsay, Ashoka occupied Magadha's rule against the wishes of Bindusara. From Maaski and Gujjara records discovered from Southern India (Bharat), his name is found to be 'Ashoka'. In the records, Ashoka has been adorned with titles such as Devanampriya and Devanampriyadarshi. Ashoka was married to the princess of Vidisha who gave birth to Ashoka's daughter Sanghamitra and his son Mahendra. His queen Karuvaki is also mentioned in the records inscribed by Ashoka.

After seven years of coronation Ashoka included various regions of Kashmir and Khotan in his empire. During his reign, apart from Tamil region, whole India (Bharat) and a large part of Afghansistan were included in the Mauryan Kingdom. In his eighth year of coronation, Ashoka invaded Kalinga in 261 BC, and 1 lakh people died. On the basis of Hathigumpha records, it is estimated that at that time, Nandaraja was the ruling Kalinga. This mass killing distressed Ashoka to such an extent that he renunciated weapons forever. Dhauli (or Toshali) was made the capital of Kalinga under Magadha kingdom. Under the influence of Shraman Nigrodh and Upagupta, Ashoka was initiated into Buddhism and adopted Dhammaghosh instead of Bherighosh. According to Kalhana's Rajatarangini, Ashoka was a worshipper of Shiva before embracing Budhism. Later, he came under the influence of Moggaliputratissa. In Barabar hills, Ashoka built four caves for the residence of Ajivikas, i.e., Sudama, Chopaar, Vishwajhopdi and Karna. He undertook a religious journey to Bodhgaya in the tenth year of his coronation and to Lumbini (Kapilavastu) in the twentieth year of coronation. It is evident from Rummandei records that Ashoka had reduced the rate of tax from 1/6 to 1/8. Chola, Chera, Pandya and Kerala have been described as the four neighbouring independent states in inscriptions of Ashoka. In minor rock-edict associated with his coronation, Ashoka has called himself as Buddhashakya.

Dhamma-

Ashoka established ideals for the moral development of mankind. These were called Dhamma. Definition of Ashoka's Dhamma has been given in the second and seventh rock edicts. According to him, shunning sinful actions, welfare of the world, compassion, charity, truth and purity of actions is Dhamma. The essential conditions of following Dhamma include saintly nature, performing works of public welfare, shunning all evils, good behavior, compassion, charity, gratitude, non violence, obeying one's parents and elders, respect for one's guru, being chairtable towards one's friends, acquaintances, relatives, brahmins and the needy, etc. According to the third rock edict, there was also a provision of moderately accumulating and moderately spending money. According to Bhabru rock edict, Ashoka expressed his belief in the Buddha's Triratnas, namely, Buddha, Dhamma and Sangha (Council).

In minor rock edicts of Sanchi (Raisen district, Madhya Pradesh) and Sarnath (Varanasi, Uttar Pradesh), Ashoka ordered the Mahamatras of Kaushambhi and Pataliputra to ostracize such Bhikshus and Bhikshunis who tried to create schism in the Council. In the First Edict, it was ordered that no animals should be killed for any Yajna.

Dhamma Yaatra (Religious Travel)-

Before Ashoka's reign, kings used to go for ViharaYaatras (Forest Travels) during which, they used to kill animals for their entertainment. In place of such travels, Ashoka arranged for Dhammayaatra, in which travels were made to Buddhist pilgrins and Brahmins, Shramanas and needy people were given gold in charity.

Anusandhaan-

During Ashoka's reign, the state employees- Pradeshikas, Rajjukas and Yuktaks were sent on travel for propagation of religion

every fifth year. This was called Anusandhan.

Dhamma Mahamatra-

In the 13th year of coronation, Ashoka appointed Dhamma Mahamatras- whose major responsibility was to propagate religion among the masses, to inspire them for deeds of public welfare and charity, releasing prisoners from imprisonment or reducing their tenure of punishment, providing financial assistance to their dependants etc.

Rock Edicts-

Ashoka was the first Indian (Bhartiya) ruler to address his subjects through edicts. He got inspiration to do so from Dara (Darius first)- the ruler of Iran. Most of the edicts of Ashoka are in Brahmi script, while the edicts found in Mansera and Shahbajgadi in northwest India (Bharat) are in Kharoshti script. On one pillar brought from Topra to Delhi, seven edicts have been inscribed. Greek king Antiochus II is mentioned in the Second and Third Edicts. James Princep was the first person to successfully interpret the edicts of Ashoka.

Influenced by Ashoka, king Tissa of Tamparni (Sri Lanka) adopted the title of Devanampiya. He also invited emperor Ashoka on the occasion of his Second Coronation. Ashoka's son Mahendra carried a part of Bodhivriksha and attended this ceremony. This is regarded as the beginning of Buddhism in Sri Lanka. After ruling for 40 years Ashoka died in 232 BC.

Successors of Ashoka and fall of the Mauryan Dynasty-

For 50 years after Ashoka, weak successors continued to rule. After Ashoka, Kunala became the king, who has been called Dharmavivardhana in Divyavadana. According to Rajatarangini, Jalok was the ruler of Kashmir at that time. According to Taranath, Ashoka's son Virasena had become an independent ruler of Gandhar. As Kunala was blind, Magadha's administration was in the hands of his son Samprati. Kunala's son Dhashratha also ruled over Magadha. He had given the Nagarjuna caves to Ajivikas in charity.

Brihadratha was the last Mauryan ruler. His Brahmin minister Pushyamitra Shunga assassinated him and founded the Shunga dynasty in Magadha.

Mauryan Administration-

A centralized government system was established for the first time in India (Bharat) during Maurayan period. Despite centralization of power in the hands of the king, he was not autocratic. Kautilya has described seven components of the state, namely, Raja, Amatya, Janapada, Durga, Kosha, Sena and Mitra. The king used to appoint the Chief Minister and priest after duly checking their character and background. This process was known as Upadha Parikshana. These people used to be dignified members of the Council of Ministers. Apart from the Council of Ministers, there was also Parisha Mantrina, which was also a form of Council of Ministers.

Central administration-

18 departments called Tirtha have been mentioned in *Arthashastra* . The President of these Tirthas is known as Mahamatya. Minister (mantri), priest (purohit), Commander (senapati) and Prince (Yuvaraaj) were the most important Tirthas.

Samaharta-

His responsibility was to collect revenue, keep record of income , expenditure and prepare the annual budget.

Sannidhata (Treasurer)-

He was responbile for building treasuries and granaries in various parts of the kingdom. 26 department heads have been mentioned in *Arthashastra*, which include-Koshadhyaksh (treasurer), sitadhyaksha (agriculture), Pandyadhyaksha (trade) Sutrasdhyaksha (tailoring and weaving), Lunadhyaksha (slaughterhouse), Vivitadhyaksha (pastureland), Lakshanadhayksha (issuing currency), Mudradhyaksha, Pautvadhyaksha, Bandhanagaradhyaksha, Atvika(head of the forest department) , etc. Yuktas and Upayuktas were lower level employees under the control of Mahamatayas and heads.

Provincial Administration-

In Ashoks's reign, five provinces of

Magadha kingdom have been mentioned. These include–Uttarapatha (Taxila), Avantirashtra (Ujjaini), Kalinga (oshali) Dakshinapatha (Suvarnagri) and Madhya Desh (Patalipura) . Provincial administration was administred by royal officers named 'Kumara' or 'Aryaputra' . The provinces were divided into 'Vishaya' , which used to be under the control 'vishayapati'. 'Sthanik' was the administrative head of the district and he used to be under the control of 'Samaharta' . 'Gopa' used to be the smallest administrative unit and he used to handle the administration of ten villages. An officer called 'Pradeshtri' used to function under Samaharta, and used to monitor the working of Sthaniks, Gopas and village officers.

City Administration-

According to Megasthenes, city administration was handled by a council of 30 members, who were divided into 6 committees, with five members in each committee. The first committee was responsible for monitoring industry and artistic activities, the second committee looked after foreigners, the third committee kept records of births and deaths, the fourth was responbile for trade and commerce, the fifth committee used to monitor sales of manufactured goods, the sixth committee would collect one tenth of the sale in the form of sales tax.

Military System-

For organizing the army, there was a separate military department, which was divided into six committees consisting of five members in each committee. These committees used to look after the five departments of the army which included-Paidal (infantry), Ashva (cavalry), Hathi (soldiers on elephants), Ratha (soldiers on chariot) and the naval force. Military affairs were monitored by Antpal. He was also responsible for managment and monitoring the bordering regions. According to Megasthenes' (Indica) Chandragupta Maurya had a huge army adorned with 6 lakh soliders on foot, 50 thousand horsemen, 9 thousand elephants and 800 chariots.

Judicial System -

The emperor used to be the supreme head of judicial system. Village courts were present at lower level, in which the Gramini and GramVraddha used to pronounce judgements. Sangraharan, Dronamukh were the courts on Local and Janapada level, respectively. Above all there was a Central Court of Pataliputra. Apart from Gramansangha and king's court, all the other courts were of two types:

1. **Dharmsthiya-** The work of pronouncing judgement in these courts was in the hands of three Dharmasthas who were experts of religious scriptures or a Vyavharik and three Amatyas. Dharmsthiya used to be a type of civil court. Cases associated with theft, robbery and loot, also known as 'Sahas' were placed in front of Dharmsthiya courts. Cases associated with abusing, defamation, beating, etc. were also brought in these courts which were called 'Vak-Parushya' or 'Dand-Parushya'.

2. **Kantakshodhan-** These were criminal courts. Three Pradeshtris and three Amatyas used to judge disputes between the state and concerned person. The city magistrate was called 'Vyavharik Mahamatya' and the district magistrate was called 'Rajjuk'. According to Chanakya there were four main parts of law : Dharma (religion), Vyavahara (behaviour), Charitra (character) and Shashan (administration).

Maurya Society -

We get information about the social system of Mauryan period through texts such as – Kautilya's 'Arthasastra', Megasthene's 'Indica' and from Ashoka's rock edicts. Kautilya has regarded Varnashram system as the foundation of social organization. Kautilya has also mentioned about the occupations of these four Varnas (castes). Apart from these four Varnas, Kautilya has also mentioned about several other castes such as- Nishad, Parshav, Rathkar, Kshata, Vedehak, Sut, Chandal etc. Megasthenes has divided the Indian (Bhartiya) society into seven castes in his book 'Indica'. These include Darshanik (philosophers), Kisan (farmers), Karigar or Shilpi (craftsmen or sculptors), Sainik (soldiers) Nirikshak (inspectors), Sabhasad and Shasak (ministers and

Map 1.1 Mahajanapadas

Map 1.2 Maurya Dynasty

Fig 1.3 Sanchi Stupa

Fig 1.4 Ashoka pillar

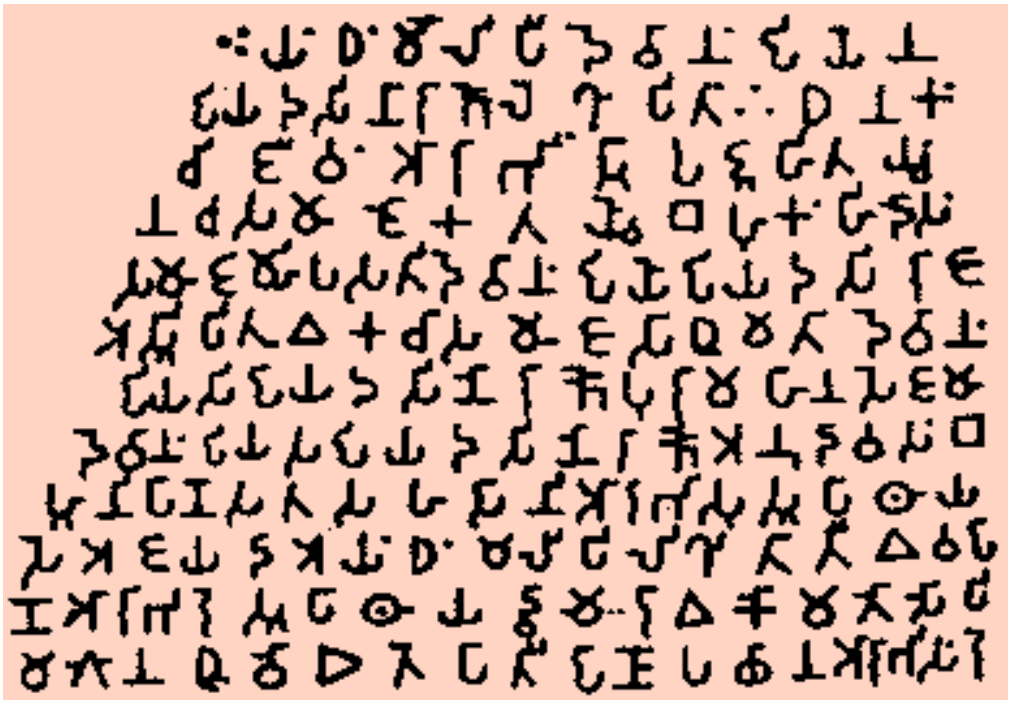


Fig 1.5 Ashok's rock edict-script

Map 1.6 Ashoka's Empire

administrators). In his classification, Megasthenes has ignored the difference of caste, colour and occupation.

During Maurya period, the condition of women cannot be said to be progressive, but still, they were in a better position as compared to Smriti period and they were allowed to remarry and perform Niyoga.

Shunga Dynasty- This dynasty was founded in 185 BC by Pushyamitra Shunga. He was the chief commander of maurya king Brihadratha. Pushyamitra assassinated him and occupied the throne. He ruled till 151 BC. He conquered several wars and performed Ashvamedha Yajna twice during his reign. Renowned Sanskrit grammarian Patanjali was his priest in the yajna.

After Pushyamitra, Agnimitra, Jyeshthamitra, Bhadrak, Bhagwat and Devabhuti were the major rulers of shunga dynasty. Devabhuti was dethroned by Amatya Vasudeva around 73 BC.

Fig. 1.7 Coins of Satvahana Period

Satavahana Dynasty-

A person named Simuka laid the foundation of Satavahana Dynasty in 60 BC in Andhra (the valley of rivers Godavari and Krishna). This Dynasty is known by the name of Andhra as well as Satavahana dynasty.

Simuka's reign is regarded till 37 BC. After that, his son Satakarni I became the ruler. Satakarni I took the Satavahana dynasty to great heights. Satakarni I performed the Ashvamedha Yajna and through this, he established his indisputable empire across entire South India (Bharat). His capital was Pratisthan (modern Paithan) situated on the banks of river Godavari. After some time of the death of Satakarni I, due to the invasions made by Shakas, the power of Satavahanas started decling and the rule of Shaka Kshatrapa dynasty began in Maharashtra, which is known as Western Kshatrapa Dynasty. Gautamiputra Satakarni who was the 23rd ruler of Satavahana dynasty, eliminated the power of Western Kshatrapas and re-established the power,

prosperity and rule of his dynasty. Vasishthiputra Pulumavi got married to the daughter of Shaka Mahakshatrap Rudradaman I, but Rudradaman snatched entire kingdom from him, which he occupied by defeating the Western Kshatrapas. Yagyasri (Satakarni) who was the 27th ruler of Satavahana dynasty, reoccupied some parts of region from the Kshatrapas of Ujjaini and restablished the glory of his dynasty. Yagyasri circulated several types of currencies and ships were inscribed on some of them. This shows that his empire extended till the oceans. All the rulers of this dynasty were followers of Hinduism. They established the system of Vedic Yajnas and Varnashram system in the society and continuously fought against the foreign invaders – the Yavanas and the Shakas. They provided huge grants to Buddhist and Jaina Viharas and rest houses. In their period, trade and commerce, agriculture and other industries developed significantly and currencies made of silver, copper, lead and bronze were in circulation. They were the first to establish the practice of granting land (Agrahar) to the Brahmins. The Satavahana kings built many Chaityas and Viharas in Western Deccan. Karla Chaitya is the most famous among them. This Chaitya is 40 metre long and 15 metre high and is an excellent example of Chaitya architecture.

Gupta Dynasty (275 AD-550 AD)-

Kushana Dynasty almost declined in North India (Bharat) in about 230 AD, then a larger part of land came under the occupation of Shaka Murands, who continued to rule till 250 AD. After that, Gupta Dynasty came into power in 275 AD. Sri-Gupta

was the founder of this dynasty. In Prayaga Prashasti, Samudragupta has described himself as the great grandson of Sri-Gupta. After Sri-Gupta, Ghatotkacha became Gupta ruler. His title was 'Maharaja'.

Chandragupta I (320 AD – 335 AD)-

After Ghatotkacha, his son Chandragupta I became a Gupta ruler. He attained the title of 'Maharajadhiraja'. He married the Lichchhavi princess Kumaradevi. In 319 AD, Chandragupta I Started an era, which is famous by the name of Gupta era (Samvat).

Samudragupta (335 AD – 380 AD)-

Chandragupta I appointed Samudragupta as his successor. His ideals were conquering and unifying India (Bharat). He believed in imperialism. His court poet Harisen has described about his victorious military expeditions in records of Allahabad Prashasti. These records are inscribed on the same pillar, on which Ashoka's Edicts are inscribed. The rulers and countries which were won by Samudragupta can be divided into 5 groups – The states of Ganga-Yamuna Doab, states of Eastern Himalayas, the bordering states of Eastern Vindhya region, Eastern Deccan and states of South India and Shaka and Kushana states. As per Allahabad Prashasti, he was never defeated in any battle. Samudragupta possessed a very powerful navy, by which he strengthened his foreign relations. 'Ashvamedha Parakrama' can be seen inscribed on his coins. He also excelled in fine arts. He has also been called an excellent poet. He excelled in music also. His image of playing Veena has been inscribed on a coin. He was a devotee of Lord Vishnu, but had equal respect for other religions.

Chandragupta II (380 AD – 412 AD)-

Chandragupta II was the son of Samudragupta. He has also been called Devaraja or Devagupta. He expanded his empire through marriage alliances and victories. He got his daughter married to Vakataka king Rudrasena. After his death, Prabhavati became the real ruler by making her younger son sit on the throne. Chandragupta II also conquered Western Malwa and Gujarat. He made Ujjain his second capital. After attaining victory on Shakas, he adorned the title of 'Vikramaditya'.

Kumaragupta Mahendraditya (414 AD – 455 AD)-

After Chandragupta II, his son Kumaragupta became the ruler. Kumaragupta has been regarded as the founder of Nalanda University. His empire expanded from Saurashtra to Bengal. In the last days of his rule, he had to face revolt from Pushyamitra.

Skandagupta (455 AD – 467 AD)-

Although he was not the eldest son, Skandagupta became the successor of the kingdom. It is evident from Junagarh Rock Edicts that Skandagupta renovated the Sudarshan Lake which was built by Mauryan rulers. It has been mentioned in Junagarh inscription that while ascending the throne, Skandagupta had to confront the Malechch Hunas. Finally, Skandagupta defeated the Hunas.

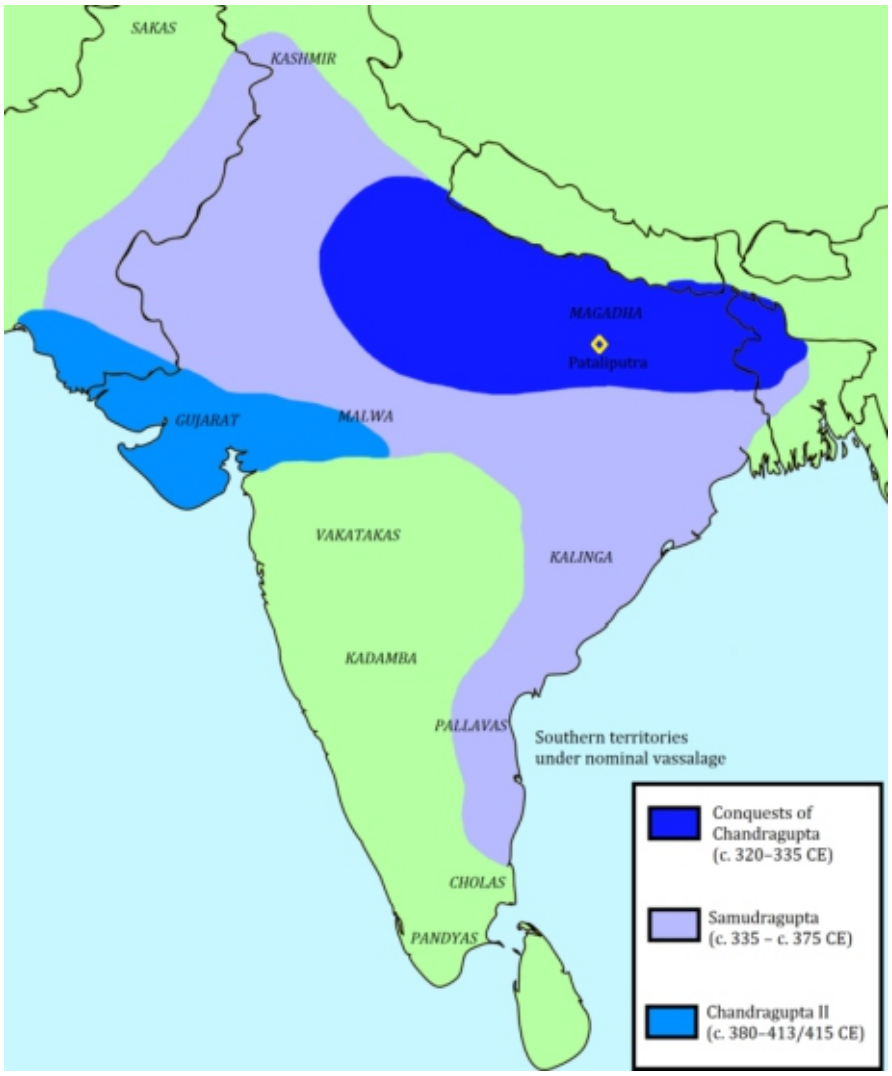
Cultural Achievements of Gupta Dynasty-

Gupta dynasty has great importance in the cultural history of India (Bharat). Gupta rulers were followers of Vedic Religion. Samudragupta and Kumaragupta I had even performed Ashvamedha Yajna. They also supported Buddhism and Jainism. The Chinese pilgrim Fa Hien visited India (Bharat) during the reign of Chandragupta II. As per his description, Gupta Empire was excellent in administration and crimes rarely took place. The burden of taxes was also less. Sanskrit was the official language. Kalidasa – the composer of the play *Abhigyan Shankutalam* and the great epic Raghuvansham, Shudraka– the writer of the play *Mrichchkatikam*, *Vishakhadatta* – the writer of the play *Mudrarakshasa* and the reknowned koshkar Amar Singh were all present in Gupta period. *Ramayana*, *Mahabharata* and *Manu Samhita* composed in their present form in Gupta period. Great Mathematicians Aryabhata. Varamihira and Brahmagupta significantly

contributed in the development of mathematics and Astrology during the Gupta period. The decimal system was invented in this period, which later reached Europe through the Arabians. Evidence of architecture, painting and metallurgical science of the time is evident from the remains in Jhansi , Kanpur, Ajanta caves ,the iron pillar at Delhi, the 80 feet tall copper statue of the Buddha in Nalanda and from the 7½ feet tall copper statue of the Buddha in Sultanganj.

Society in the Gupta Period-

Society was traditionally divided into four parts during the Gupta period. The place of Brahmins was regarded to be the highest. Their duties were - studying, teaching, performing yajnas and charity. The Kshatriyas were responsible to protect the nation. Vaishyas were in the occupation of trading and commerce. Shudras were service providers. In Gupta period, the bond of occupations with castes weakened. Despite this, the basis of castes remained prevalent. Women had an important place in the society. In religious activities, the presence of wife along with the husband was mandatory. Women were educated. Veil (purdah) system was not prevalent. At this time, eight types of marriages were prevalent. The practice of Swayamvara was there. Mudravashakti,



Map 1.8 Gupta Empire

Fig 1.9 Gold coin circulated by Samudragupta

Fig 1.10 Gold coins circulated by Chandragupta Maurya

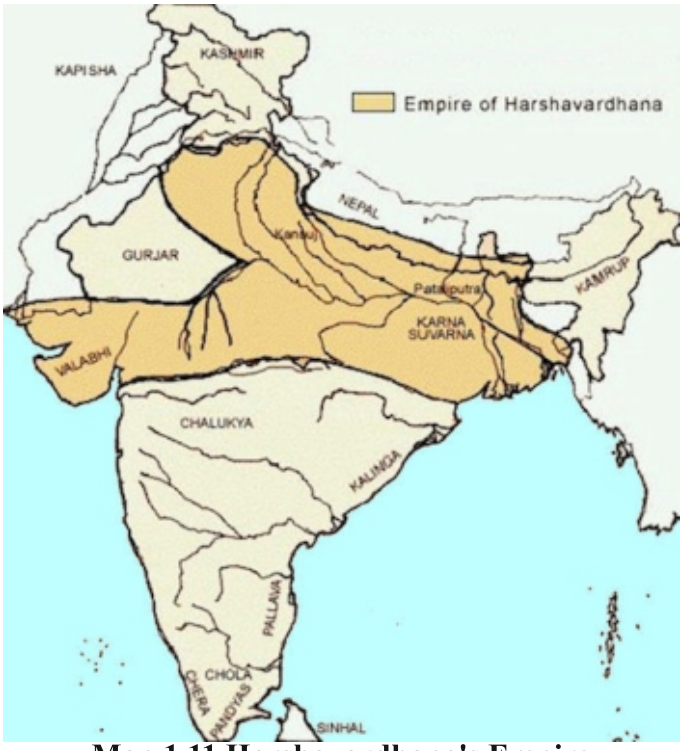
Karana, Ambashtha, Parshava were the mixed castes during Gupta period, Kayastha was a section class during Gupta period, but later, it emerged in the form of a caste. Women have been depicted ideally in literature of Gupta period. In case of not having a son, the wife had the primary right to her husband's property.

Vardhan Dynasty (Pushyabhuti Dynasty)-

This dynasty began in 6th century AD near Thaneswar with Pushyabhuti, who was a devoted worshipper of Shiva. Three kings were born in this dynasty – Prabhakaravardhana, Rajyavardhana and Harshavardhana. After the death of Prabhakaravardhana, his elder son Rajyavardhana ascended the throne, but shortly after his coronation, he was to engage in several battles and was assassinated by Gaur ruler Shashanka in 606 AD. After this, his younger brother Harshavardhana (606-47 AD) became the ruler, who ruled for forty years and expanded his empire. He did not have any children, so Pushyabhuti dynasty ended with his demise.

Situation was extremely critical at the time Harsha ascended the throne. Gaur (Bengal) ruler Shashanka had assassinated his elder brother Rajyavardhana younger sister Rajashri went away to an unknown place to save her life. Soon, Harshavardhana was successful in finding the whereabouts of his sister. He entered into an alliance with king Bhaskar Verman of Kamrupa and sent a large army against Shashanka, though in the South , his armies were forced to return from the banks of river Narmada around 620 AD by king Pulakeshin II. The boundaries of Harsha's empire extended from snow laden mountains in the North, till the banks of river Narmada in the South , Ganjaam in the East and Ballabhi in the West. Kannauj was the capital of this huge empire.

Harsha took the title of Maharajadhiraja. He was a worshipper of Shiva and the Sun god.



Map 1.11 Harshavardhana's Empire

Fig 1.12 King Harshavardhana

Later, he was inclined towards Mahayana Buddhism. Once in every five years, he used to organize a large ceremony at the confluence of rivers Ganga and Yamuna, performed charity and other works of public welfare. The Chinese traveller Hiuen Tsang also attended the sixth ceremony of this kind.

Pala Dynasty-

The beginning of this dynasty is estimated to be around 750 AD in Bengal from Gopala. Dharmapala who was the second ruler of Pala dynasty is considered to be the most powerful ruler of this dynasty. He extended his empire up to Kannauj and even after getting engaged in a tripartite struggle with the Pratiharas and Rashtrakutas, he remained successful in protecting his kingdom. His son and successor Devapala also emerged victorious in several battles. He shifted his capital from Pataliputra to Bengal. The ambassador of king Bal Putra Deva of Sumatra had attended his royal court. After Devapala (810 – 850 AD), the power and might of Pala dynasty started to fade due to weakness of the rulers and invasions by Gurjar – Pratihara rulers. During the reign of 9th king Mahipala-I, the Chola king Rajendra Verman–I had occupied the area till river Ganga around 1023 AD. By the middle of 12th century, the strength of Pala dynasty weakened.

Kings of the Pala dynasty were followers of Buddhism and during their reign the Buddhist educational centres developed significantly. The very famous Mahaviharas of Nalanda and Vikramshila got protection from them. The famous Buddhist monk Atisha was present during the reign of tenth Pala king Nayapala, who had visited Tibet on an invitation of the king. Kings of Pala dynasty were great lovers of art and architecture. They gave patronage to great sculptors like Dhiman and Vitpal. Many reservoirs were built during the Pala period are still present in Dinapur district.

Rashtrakuta Dynasty-

This dynasty was founded by Dantidurga in 736 AD. He made Nasik his capital. There were 14 kings in this dynasty. Dantidurga was a lord under the Chalukyas of Vatapi. He eliminated the rule of Chalukyas in the South by defeating the last Chalukya king Kirti Verman–II. Krishna–I built the famous Kailashnath temple of Ellora. Dhurva, the fourth ruler of the dynasty, defeated the Gurjar-Pratihar king Vatsaraja and the fifth ruler Govinda III defeated the Gurjar-Pratihar king Nagabhatta II and Pala king Dharmapala. He expanded the empire of Rashtrakutas from Malwa region to Kanchi. The sixth ruler Amoghavarsha was peace-loving and he ruled for about 64 years. He made Manyakhet (Malkhed) as the capital of Rashtrakutas. Arabian traveller Sulaiman considered Amoghavarsha amongst the world's four greatest kings of that time. Krishna III and Indra III defeated Mahipala, the then ruler of Kannauj and forced him to flee. During the reign of the twelfth ruler Krishna III, a long struggle started between the Rashtrakutas and the Chola kings of the South .

Rashtrakutas were overthrown by the Chalukyas of Kalyani. Chalukya king Tailapa defeated Karka II of Rashtrakuta dynasty in 973 AD and established control of Manyakhet. Rashtrakuta kings were supporters of Hinduism. They built huge temples. They were nurturers of Sanskrit and Kannada literature. The Arabians have addressed the kings of this dynasty as Balhara (Balaraja).

Gurjara-Pratihara Dynasty-

This dynasty was founded by a lord the name of this Nagabhatta in 725 AD. His kingdom started from Gujarat, therefore the name of this dynasty came to be known as 'Gurjara-Pratihara'. Nagabhatta-I was extremely brave. He successfully confronted the invasions of the Arabians who came from Sindh. Vatsaraja was the first king of this dynasty who took the title of Emperor. Vatsaraja's son Nagabhatta II invaded Ganga valley around 816 AD , occupied Kannauj and made it his capital. Nagabhatta II was defeated by Rashtrakuta king Govinda III, however, his descendants continued to rule Kannauj and its surrounding regions till 1018-19 AD. Bhoja I was the greatest ruler of this dynasty. He is also known

as Mihira Bhoja. He was the grandson of Nagabhatta II. Arabian trader Sulaiman visited India (Bharat) during his time. The next ruler was Mahendrapala, who was the disciple and protector of the great poet Rajashekhara – the composer of a play called Karpuramanjari. Mahendra's son Mahipala was badly defeated by the Rashtrakuta king Indra III. During Mahipala's reign, the Gurjara-Pratihara dynasty began to decline. After him, the other rulers – Bhoja II, Vinayakapala, Mahendrapala II, Devapala, Mahipala II and Vijayapala somehow managed to maintain their rule till 1013 AD. During the time of invasion of Mahmud Ghaznavi, Rajyapala was the king of Kannauj. He ran away without confronting Ghaznavi. Later, he accepted the sovereignty of Mahmud. The neighbouring Rajput rulers were annoyed by this event. After Mahmud Ghaznavi had returned, the Rajput kings defeated and killed Rajyapala under the leadership of Chandela king Ganda of Kalinjar and Trilochanapala ascended the throne. After the rise of Gahadvala (Rathore) dynasty in Kannauj, the Gurjara-Pratihara dynasty was eliminated forever in the second quarter of 11th century. The rulers of this dynasty didn't allow the Arabians to advance further.

Chola Dynasty (Northern Chola Region)-

This was one of the three major states of ancient Dakshinapatha. The other two were – Pandya and Chera (Kerala). In the inscriptions of Ashoka, this region has been described as an Independent Region. The residents of Chola region spoke Tamil. They produced high quality literature in Tamil language. Kular composed by Thiruvalluvar is an excellent example of this development. Karikala (around 100 AD who was the First ruler of Chola dynasty, and laid the foundation of Puhar or Pugar town, fought against the Sinhalas and built a dam on the banks of river Kaveri with the assistance of Sinhali prisoners of war. He shifted the capital of Cholas from Uragpur (Uruyur) to Kaveripatnam. Chola king Vijayalaya's son and successor Aditya (around 880-907 AD) had defeated the Pallava king AparajitaVerman. Aditya's son Parantaka-I had completely crushed the power of the Pallavas. He had also occupied Madurai which was the capital of the Pandyas.

Chol Rajraj I (985AD– 1013 AD)-

He became all powerful ruler of South India (Bharat) by occupying entire Madras (Chennai), Mysore, Coorg and Sinhala Dweep (Sri Lanka). He built a Shiva temple named Rajarajeshwara (Brihadeshwara) in his capital Tanjore. His son and successor Rajendra I (1016 AD – 1044 AD) possessed a strong naval power, had conquered Pengu, Martban and Andaman-Nicobar islands. He waged a war aganist Mahipala, the ruler of Bengal and Bihar. His armies crossed Kalinga and reached far off to Ganga by proceeding through or (Orissa), Southern Kausal, Bengal and Magadha. In order to commemorate this victory, he took the title of 'Gangaikonda'. His son and successor Rajadhiraja (1044 AD – 1054 AD) was killed during the battle of Koppam while fighting against Chalukya king Someshwara. But, Veer Rajendra (1034 AD – 1069 AD) defeated the Chalukyas in the battle of Kudal-Sangamam and avenged the earlier defeat. Soon after, a battle of succession began among the Cholas. As a result Rajendra Kulottunga – I (1070 AD – 1122 AD) ascended the throne. Rajendra Kulottunga's mother was a Chola princess and his father was the ruler of Chalukya kingdom. In this way, Kulottunga established a new dynasty named Chalukya-Chola dynasty. He ruled for forty years.

Chola Administration-

Chola administration was based on the Gram Panchayat system. To facilitate administration, the Chola kingdom was divided into six provinces, which were known as Mandalam. Kottam was the sub unit of Mandalam, Nadu was the sub unit of Kottam, Gram and Kurram. In inscriptions, the assembly of Nadu has been called Nattar and the units of the town have been called as Nagartar. Village representatives were regularly appointed every year. Every Mandalam was fully independent, but there was no Central Legislature present to control the power of the king. About one-sixth of land produce was received by the king in the form of lagan (land revenue). This lagan could be paid in the form of grain or gold coins. The gold coins which were

circulated during the Chola period were called 'Kasu' and it weighed 16 ounces. Along with large military power, the Chola kings also possessed a strong naval force. Chola kings initiated various large irrigation schemes and built many roads.

Chola Art-

The Cholas promoted the architectural style of the Pallavas. Various features of Dravidian architectural style of the Cholas are as follows – Quadrate Vimanas, Mandapas, Gopuras, large halls adorned with artistic pillars, traditional lions (Chali) for decoration, brackets and joint pillars, etc. The Shiva temple (Rajarajeshwara temple) of Tanjore built by Rajaraja-I is an excellent example of Dravidian architecture. The system of canals in South India (Bharat) is a gift from Cholas. Temples of Chidambaram and Tanjore are the best among

Map 1.13 Rashtrakuta, Gurjara-Pratiharas, Chola empire

Fig. 1.14 Chola Temple

Fig. 1.15 statue of Nataraja (Shiva)

Chola temples. The bell metal statues of Nataraja Shiva built during Chola period are regarded to be the best. Gopuram style temple architecture was developed in this period.

Society-

Chola kings were the followers of Shaiva sect. In the records of royal kings, performance of ashvamedha yajna has also been mentioned. Women used to be the property owners in the society. Dasa and Devadasi systems were also prevalent.

Pallava Dynasty-

Rulers of this dynasty ruled the present day districts of Arcot, Madras (Chennai), Trichinapalli and Tanjore. In the inscriptions, the mention of First Pallava king is Vishnugopa of Kanchi. Simhavishnu ascended the throne in the Second half of sixth century AD. After that, the Pallavas ruled for about two centuries. Major Pallava kings included MahendraVerman-I (around 600–625 AD), arsimhaVerman-I, NarsimhaVerman-II, ParameshwarVerman-II, NandiVerman, NandiVerman-II and Aparajit.

Mahendraverman was a great architect. He built many temples of carved stones. Mahendraverman–I also wrote a play named Mattavilasa Prahasana. He also got dug the Mahendra pond. He was defeated by Chalukya king Pulakeshin-II in around 610 AD. Mahendra's

Map 1.16- Pallava Empire

Fig 1.17 Mamallapuram (Mahabalipuram) style of architecture of Pallava period

Fig 1.18 Temple of Pallava Period

son and successor NarsimhaVerman (Mahamalla) defeated Pulakeshin II in 642 AD and occupied his capital Vatapi, but the Chalukyas took revenge of their defeat in 655 AD. Chalukya king Vikramaditya-I defeated the Pallava king Parameshwarverman and occupied his capital Kanchi. The preceding Pallava rulers established a town named Mamallapuram (Mahabalipuram) and built five chariot temples over there. Here, rock – cut statues have been carved. Pallava rulers built temples in Kanchi too. Some of the Pallava rulers were worshippers of Vishnu, while others worshipped Shiva.

Chalukya Dynasty -

Chalukya king Pulakeshin – I had performed Ashvamedha Yajna. Chalukyas of Vatapi ruled from 550 AD to 757 AD, excluding 13 years from (642 AD – 655 AD). Among the Chalukya rulers, the fourth king – Pulakeshin II- was the most famous ruler. He occupied the throne in 608 AD. His empire extended from river Narmada in the North to river Kaveri in the South. He was defeated by the Pallava king NarsimhaVerman in 642 AD. Pulakeshin's son Vikramaditya II re-established the glory of the Chalukyas. Chalukya king Vikramaditya II defeated the Rashtrakuta king in 973 AD and founded the New Chalukya Dynasty by making Kalyani his capital. This dynasty ruled from 973 AD to 1200 AD. The Chalukya kingdom of Kalyani remained in conflict with Chola rulers for a long time. Chola king Rajadhiraja defeated Sattashreya, a Chalukya king. But, Someshwar I avenged this defeat by not only defeating the Chola king Rajadhiraja in the battle of Koppam, but also assassinated Rajadhiraja in this battle. The seventh king Vikramaditya VII, who was famous by the name of Vikramanka, occupied Kanchi and provided protection to the renowned poet Bilhana who also wrote a book named reestablished Vikramankadevacharita, based on the life of Vikramaditya. Despite being Hindus, the Chalukya kings of Vatapi and Kalyani gave patronage to Buddhism and Jainism. The Chalukya kings built temples. Famous jurist Vijnaneshwara, who had composed the 'Mitakshra' interpretation of Yagyawalakya Smriti, lived in Kalyani which was the capital of the Chalukyas. Mitakshra is regarded as an official book of Hindu laws.

(iii) External Invasions and Assimilations – Shakas, Hunas and Kushanas-

Shaka was a warrior tribe of Central Asia which had occupied the entire region of Western Afghanistan and Baluchistan. From here, The Shakas came to India (Bharat) through Bolan Pass in around 71 AD. In the *Ramayana* and the *Mahabharata*, Shaka colonies have been mentioned along with the Kambojas and Yavanas. In the writings of Kalkacharya, invasion of Shakas on India (Bharat) has been described, and they have been addressed as Sagakul (Shaka clan). They established the Shaka rule in Saurashtra by occupying Indus (Sindhu) region. It is clear from

the excavated coins and edicts that one of their branches established its domination in Uttarapath and Mathura along with lapse of time they spread in Avanti, Saurashtra and Maharashtra.

Maues and Azes have been among the Shaka rulers of Taxila. The Shaka power was demolished by the Pallavas in Taxila. Hammamas and Hagaan were the initial Shaka Kshtrapas of Mathura. In Singha-Sheershak-inscription obtained from Mathura, the later Shaka king Rajbul has been called Mahakshatrapa. The Shakas of Mathura had expanded their empire up to Eastern Punjab. The Kushanas demolished the Shaka power in Mathura. Two rulers of Shahrat dynasty of the Shakas – namely Bhumak and Nahapan are famous. These Shaka rulers annexed several regions from the Satavahanas and they established their rule in Maharashtra, Kathiawar and Gujarat. During the reign of Nahapan, India (Bharat) had cordial trade relations with the western countries. It is evident from the coins excavated from a place called Jogalthambi, that Nahapan was defeated by Gautamiputra Satakarni. In Nasik insperction, Gautamiputra Satakarni has been described as the destroyer of Shahrat dynasty. King Chastan, who established the Shaka dynasty in Ujjaini, is mentioned among the Shaka rulers of Ujjaini and Kathiawar. In their edicts and coins, the rulers of this dynasty used the Shaka era. Chastan's grandson Rudradaman was an important ruler. We find information about him from Junagarh inscription. Rudradaman's empire extended up to East-Western Malwa, Dwarika, Junagarh, Sabarmati River, Marwar, Indus (Sindhu) valley, Northern Konkan and Vindhya mountain range. It is evident from the excavated coins that Chastan's dynasty ended in 305 AD.

Hunas-

Huna was a barbaric tribe of Central Asia, just like the Shakas, entered India (Bharat) from North-Western frontier. They were also called 'Daityas'. First, they invaded India (Bharat) during the reign of Skandagupta in around 458 AD, and were defeated. After some time, a chief named Toramana destroyed the Gupta empire and gained the title of Maharajadhiraja by gaining control of Punjab, Rajputana, Sindh and Malwa. Toramana's son Mihirakula's reign began from 510 AD and Sialkot was his capital. Mahirakul hated the Buddhist bhikshus. He destroyed various monasteries and stupas. Malwa king Yashodharman defeated him. After his defeat, he went to Kashmir and established his empire there. After the invasion of the Hunas, the Gupta Empire came to an end and the political unity of India (Bharat) ended. The country was again divided into small parts.

Kushan Dynasty-

Kushans are also known as Yuezhis or Toccharians. Yuezhi tribe was divided into five parts. One of these tribes ruled some parts of India (Bharat).

Kujula Kadphises I (15 AD – 65 AD)-

He established the glory of his tribe. He merged Southern Afghanistan, Kabul, Kandhar and a part of Parthia in his empire. He also adopted Vedic religion.

Vima Kadphises II (65 AD – 75 AD)-

He ruled a large part of India (Bharat). He was the follower of Shaiva sect. On some of his coins, image of Tribhuja, Trishuldhari, Vyaghracharmagrahi, protector of Nandi - Lord Shiva – have been inscribed. He circulated gold coins in his name for the first time in India.

Kanishka-

He is regarded as one of the important rulers of India (Bharat). According to tradition, Fourth Buddhist Council was held in Kundalvana in Kashmir under the Presidentship of Acharya Parshva in Kanishka's time. His first capital was Peshawar (Purushpur) and his second capital was Mathura. He started a new era in 78 AD, which is renowned in the name of Shaka era. Kanishka conquered Kashmir and established a town named Kanishkapur. He also gained victory over Kashgar, Yarkand and Khotan. A gold coin which has been excavated from Mahasthan (Bogra) has a standing statue of Kanishka inscribed on it. Another statue

of Kanishka has been found in Mathura. In this statue, he is wearing a robe up to his knees with heavy boots. On a copper coin, Kanishka has been shown performing sacrifice at an altar. In the royal court of Kanishka, Buddhist intellectuals like Parshava, Vasumitra and Ashvaghosha, famous mathematicians like Nagarajuna and renowned surgeons like Charak were present. The Mahayana sect of Buddhism advanced and spread during Kanishka's reign.

Fig. 1.19 Kushan Empire

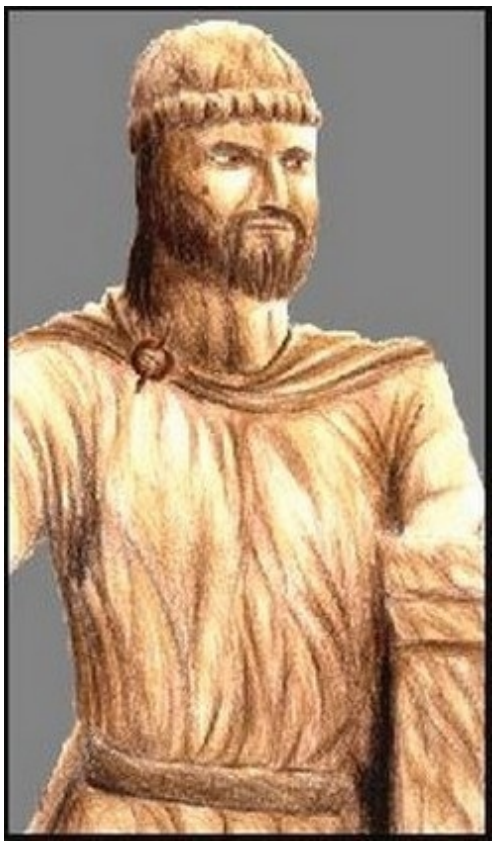


Fig. 1.20 Kanishka

Fig. 1.21 Coins of Kushan Period

In North India (Bharat), the Kushan kings ruled till 230 AD. At that time, India's (Bharat's) trade with Rome was extremely profitable as a result India became very prosperous.

Assimilation-

Shaka, Hunas and Kushanas – all three were foreign tribes. Indeed, they ruled India (Bharat), but gradually, they assimilated into Indian (Bharatiya) society and culture. Due to the liberalist policy of the Indians (Bharatiyas), these barbaric tribal clans became a part of society. The Kushana rulers were ardent followers of Vedic religion and they remained loyal towards Shaivite sect. Service of Buddhism done by Kanishka made him one of the greatest kings to rule India (Bharat).

Important Points

1. Information about the Republics (Mahajanapadas) is obtained from the *Mahabharata*, Buddhist Literature and Chanakya's *Arthashastra*.
2. Kabul, Herat, Kandhar, Baluchistan, the Punjab, Ganga-Yamuna Plains, Bihar, Bengal, Gujarat, Vindhya and part of Kashmir were included in the vast empire of Chandragupta Maurya.
3. The ideals which were laid by Ashoka for the purpose of moral upliftment of mankind came to be known as Dhamma. According to him, renouncing evil actions, welfare of all, compassion, charity, truth and purity of actions is Dhamma.
4. Most of Ashoka's records are in Brahmi script, though his rock edicts from North-west India (Bharat) are in Kharoshti script which have been derived from Aramaic. James Pricep was the first person to become successful in interpreting the rock edicts of Ashoka.
5. According to Kautilya, the seven components of a state are – Raja, Amatya, Janapada, Durga, Sena and Mitra.
6. All the Satavahana rulers were ardent followers of Hinduism. They established Vedic Yajnas and Varnashrama system and confronted the Yavanas and the Shakas.
7. According to Allahabad Prashasti, Samudragupta was never defeated in any battle.
8. Aryabhata, Varamihira and Brahmagupta significantly contributed to the development of mathematics and astrology in the Gupta period.
9. Gurjara-Pratihara dynasty was founded by a lord named Nagabhatta in 725 AD. As his empire was established in Gujarat, hence the name Gurjara-Pratihara was conferred on this dynasty.
10. Chola ruler Rajadhiraja I built a Shiva temple named Rajarajeshwara (Brihadeshwara) temple in his capital Tanjore. Bell metal statues of Lord Shiva built in Chola period are regarded as excellent works of sculpting.
11. In Nasik records, Satavahana ruler Gautami Satakarni has been described as 'the destroyer of Shaharat dynasty' because he had destroyed the Shakas.
12. Kanishka started a new era in 78 AD which is known by the name of Shaka era.

Very Short Answer Type Questions -

1. Which were the major Mahajanapadas of Rajasthan?
2. What was the name of the Greek ambassador who visited Bindusara's court?
3. What is the name of Ashoka as per the *Puranas*?
4. Who was the last Mauryan Ruler?
5. What was the work of an officer named 'Samaharta'?
6. Write the name of the book written by Kautilya.
7. Name the ruler in whose reign Patanjali was present.
8. What is the name of the most powerful ruler of Satavahana Dynasty?
9. Who was the author of 'Allahabad Prashasti"? In which ruler's court was he present?
10. Name the lake built by the Mauryas which was renovated by Skandagupta.
11. Write the names of literary creations of Harshavardhana.
12. Name the religion which was followed by rulers of the Pala dynasty.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Name the Republics mentioned in the Mahajanapadas.
2. Write the essence of Ashoka's Dhamma.
3. Elucidate the cultural contribution of Samudragupta.
4. Give a brief description of Rashtrakuta Dynasty.
5. Write a short note on Chola administration.
6. What do you know about Pallava dynasty?
7. Mention the contribution of Kanishka.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Describe the Mahajanapadas and give an introduction of the major Janapadas of Rajasthan.
2. Give a description of administration and society of Mauryan period.
3. Describe the major rulers of Gupta dynasty and write a short note on cultural achievements during this period.
4. Give a detailed description of Chola and Chalukya empires of the South.

Chapter 2

India (Bharat) during the Struggle Period
1206 AD – 1757 AD

India (Bharat) was continuously attacked by foreign invaders. The Indians (Bhartiyas) bravely opposed and struggled against these invasions. Indians (Bhartiyas) defeated the initial Arabian and Muslim invaders and ousted them out of the country. During the time of Amar Khalifa in 636 AD, the First Naval invasion of the Arabians took place at Thane. It is mentioned in the book named Futuh al-Buldan that this invasion of the Arabians was unsuccessful. After this, the Arabians invaded Badwas (Baruch) and Debal port of Sindh. These invasions too were unsuccessful. In 'Chach Nama', it is written that in the struggle for Debal, the Arabian army commander Mudhaira was defeated and killed.

In 712 AD, a battle took place between Muhammad Bin Qasim and Dahir, the king of Sindh. Baba Dhuri has written that it was a fierce battle, which was never heard ever before. It is mentioned in 'Chach Nama' that – The Kafirs (Non-Muslims) surrounded the Arabians from all the four sides and the Islamic army got confused and was disarrayed by the brave and rigid way of fight of the defenders. In between all this, coincidently an arrow struck Dahir's chest who was riding an elephant and the king died. Even after this, warriors like Rajkumar Jaisiya and empress Rani Bai stood firmly to protect the fort.

Mahmud Ghaznavi had to fight fiercely against the royal rulers of Kashmir Jayapala and Anandapala. Muhammad Ghori was defeated several times by Prithviraj Chauhan. But, due to some circumstances, Muslim rule started in India (Bharat) by 1206 AD. Even after this, the Indians (Bhartiyas) continued their struggle against foreign invaders and this struggle continued till the Indian (Bhartiya) Independence Movement. The Indians (Bhartiyas) continued their retaliation and struggle.

I. Delhi Sultanate (1206 AD – 1526 AD)

Yamini, Ilbari or Ghulam Dynasty-

Qutb-ud-Din Aibak (1206 AD – 1210 AD), also known as 'Lakhbaksh', was coronated in 1206 AD. Lahore was his capital. Hasan Nizami was sheltered in his court. Aibak built the first floor of Qutub Minar. The rest was completed by Iltutmish. Qutub Minar was built in the memory of the reknowned Sufi saint Khwaja Qutbuddin Bakhtiar Kaki. This has been mentioned in the contemporary Islamic Literature. Aibak died in 1210 AD after falling down from a horse while playing Chaugan (polo).

Iltutmish (1210 AD – 1236 AD)

He was the son-in-law and successor of Aibak. He can be hailed as the real organizer of Muslim Empire. Iltutmish conquered Ranthambore in 1226 AD. In 1223 AD, the Sultan invaded Malwa and occupied the fort of Bhilla. He had also occupied Gwalior and Jalore. By not providing an assistant to Khwarizm Shah's son Mangbarni, Iltutmish avoided enemity with the Mongol Ghengis Khan.

Razia Sultan (1236 AD – 1240 AD)

After the assassination of Rukn-ud-din Firuz Shah, Iltutmish's daughter Razia became the Sultan. Iltutmish had chosen Razia as his successor. The Turkish aristocrats opposed Razia. Razia discontinued wearing veil (purdah and had started wearing Kuba (coat) and Kulah (cap) just like men. She had appointed an Abyssinian named Malik Jamal-ud-Din Yaqut as Amir-i-Akhur (superintendent of the royal stables), due to this,

The Turkish aristocrats got annoyed. During the campaign of quelling the revolt by the ruler of Sarhind, Yaqut was assassinated. Later, Razia married Altunia, but they both were assassinated in 1240 AD. After that, Bahram Shah ruled from 1240 to 1242 AD Masud Shah ruled from 1242-1246 AD and Nasiurddin Mahmud reigned from 1246-1265 AD. They all were incapable rulers. The actual ruling force behind Nasiruddin was Ghiyasuddin Balban.

Balban (1265 AD – 1286 AD)

Ulugh Khan (Balban) belonged to the famous band of forty (Chahalgani) group of Turkish slaves of Iltutmish. He ascended the throne in 1265 AD. He restructured the military department named Diwan-i-Ariz to confront the Mangolians. He started the practice of Sijda and Paibos (bowing in front of the emperor and kissing his feet) in the royal court. Balban is counted among the major builders of administrative structure of Delhi Sultanate. He adopted the policy of Iron and Blood against his enemies, in which, the men were killed and the women and children were enslaved. After the death of Balban in 1286 AD, the struggle between various groups of aristocrats took a bloody turn. Jalaluddin Khilji assassinated Cumers in 1290 AD and declared himself as Sultan. Ruling and administration of Balban was famous. Balban believed that king is a representative of God on earth. Balban Turk was aware of aristocratic revolt. Therefore, he maintained strict discipline in the court. His (King's) major functions included keeping law and order under control, elimination of

Fig 2.1 : Empire of Ghulam dynasty

thieves and robbers and crushing the anti-administration revolts of Rajput landlords.

Khilji Dynasty/ Empire (1290-1320 AD)

Jalal-ud-din Firuz Khilji (1290 AD – 1296 AD) was the first ruler of Khilji Dynasty. He was 70 years old. His nephew and son in law Alauddin deceived and assassinated him in 1296AD and became the Sultan. In 20 years of rule , Alauddin is remembered for reforms. He was alluded as 'The Second Alexander' on the coins issued by him. Kashmir and Bengal were not included in his empire. He carried out a military campaign against Baghela Rajput king Rai Karandev of Gujarat. Alauddin invaded and looted Ranthambore in 1301 AD and Chittor in 1303 AD. During Gujarat campaign, he accumulated massive wealth. He was

Fig 2.2 Khilji Dynasty

assisted by an army commander Malik Kafur who was converted to a muslim from Hindu. With Allauddin Khilji's help, he could enter South India (Bharat). Malik Kafur invaded Devagiri, Hoyasala region and Pandya region. According to Amir Khusrau, Kafur reached Rameshwaram. Revenue system was restricted during the reign of Alauddin. He issued four orders to control the revolts – annexing the property of aristocrats and increasing the revenue by changing barren land into agricultural land, ban on alcohol in Delhi, formation of intelligence system and banning the get togethers of aristocrats. He approved the reign of Khalifa and entitled himself as "Yaasmin-ul-Khilafat-Nasiri-Amirul-Muminin." In 'Khazain ul futuh', Amir Khusrou has adorned Alauddin with titles such as 'Sultan of the World' and 'Public's Herdsman'. The Sultan made several reforms in police, espionage, postal and provincial administration system. The most important among these was control on markets. He developed his administration by creating new designation such as Diwan-i-Riyasat (market controller), Shahana or Dandadhikar (market inspector), Muhhatasib (protector of the common people and in inspector of weights and measures) and Barid-i-Mumalik (intelligence spying officer).

He introduced economic reforms to maintain a huge army. He encouraged bargaining but banned black marketing and profiteering. Sarai-i-Adal was a market of local and imported goods. Alauddin was the first ruler who paid his soldiers in cash.

In 1303 AD, Alauddin built the Alai Fort or Kosh-i-siri (Kushke Siri), which had seven gates. After the death of Allauddin, his son Qutb-ud-din Mubarak Khilji became the king. He discontinued all the rigid orders of his father and declared himself to be the Khalifa and took the title of "Ul Vasik Billah". After his assassination, Nasiruddin Khusrau Shah became the Sultan. He was the last ruler of Khilji dynasty.

Tughlaq Rule -

Tughlaq Dynasty

In 1320 AD, Ghazi Malik or Ghiyas-ud-Din Tughlaq became the Sultan of Delhi after assassinating Khusro Shah. As soon as he became the Sultan, he had to face provincial revolts. He sent his son Jauna Khan to Warangal to fight against King Pratap Rudradeva of Telangana. A military expedition was sent to Jajnahar (Orissa) in which Ulugh Khan (Juna Khan) emerged as victorious. Crushing the Bengal revolt was the last military expedition of Ghiyas-ud-Din.During a reception ceremony organized in Delhi to celebrate his return, a wooden structure collapsed, because of which he died in 1325 AD. After this, his son Jauna Khan became the Sultan in the name of Muhammad Tughluq. His name was associated with various titles, such as –"An astonishing mix of Contradictions","Thirsty of Blood", etc. During the reign of Muhammad Tughlaq, Tughlaq dynasty was divided into 23 Muktas (provinces). Ziauddin Barni mentions five major policies of the Sultan-Tax increase in Doab, making Devagiri as the capital, circulation of token currency, attack on Khorasan and expedition towards Karachil.

Sultan retained Devagiri as his capital from 1327 AD to 1335 AD and renamed it as Daulatabad. In 1330 AD, he circulated token coins made of mixture of copper and bell metal. People started making forged currency. Therefore, token currency had to be discontinued. Moroccan traveller Ibn Battuta visited India (Bharat) in around 1333 AD. Sultan appointed him as the Qazi of Delhi and he sent him to China as his ambassador in 1342 AD. Muhammad Tughluq died in 1351AD.

In 1351 AD, Muhammad Tughluq's cousin Firuz Shah Tughluq became the Sultan. Firuz Shah sent two military expeditions against Haji Ilyas of Bengal who had declared himself independent. But he remained unsuccessful both the times. Firuz Shah made government and military jobs hereditary and discontinued the system of checking for one's qualification. He appointed his son Fateh Khan as his successor and got his son's name inscribed on the coins along with his own name. Firuz gave importance to architecture. He populated some towns such as Hisar Firoja, Firozabad, Jaunpur, etc. Ashoka's pillars were

brought from Topra and Meerut to Delhi. But the scholars were unable to interpret them. The most important achievement of Firuz was digging of canals in Haansi and Sirsa regions to solve the problem of water shortage. One canal was dug from Sutlej river towards Dipalpur and another was dug from Yamuna river to Sirmur. A sound policy was adopted to increase agriculture produce and face droughts. Firoz Tughlaq was under the influence of fanatic aristocratic Islam. Jazia (a type of tax) was imposed on the Brahmins. Leaders of Shia sect were sentenced to death. Non-Islamic punishments were abolished. Non Shariyat taxes (24) were eliminated, only four types of taxes were retained-Kharaj, Zakat, Khums and Jazia. There was an unnatural increase in the number of slaves. Firuz Shah died in 1388 AD. Nasiruddin Mahmud was the last ruler of Tughlaq Dynasty. During this time in 1398 AD, Turkish invader Taimur Lang invaded India (Bharat) and plundered.

Sayyed Dynasty

Taimur conquered Delhi and appointed Khizr Khan as his representative. Khizr Khan founded the Sayyed dynasty. Even after ruling from 1414 AD to 1421 AD, Khizr Khan neither gained any shah title, nor did he circulate coins in his name. After him, Mubarak Shah remained the ruler from 1421 AD to 1434 AD. He gained the title of 'Sarva Shah'.

Lodi Dynasty

Last Sayyed ruler Alamshah willfully renounced rule upon Delhi and Bahlol Khan Lodi occupied Delhi in 1451 AD. For the first time after the Turks, Afghan Dynasty ruled Delhi. The efforts made by Mahmud Shah Shirqi of Jaunpur to rule Delhi became unsuccessful. After ruling for 38 years, he died in 1489 AD. After his death, his second son Nizam Shah took the title of Sikandar Shah and became the Sultan. He extended his empire till Tirhut, Bihar and Bengal. His judicial system and revenue reforms were famous. He performed the work of measuring the land and fixing land revenue on that basis. He started the use of measurement unit named 'Guz'. One Guz was generally equal to 30 inches. For a long time, Guz continued to be used by the name of 'Sikandar-i-Guz'. In order to maintain his sovereignty over the rulers of Etawah, Bayana, Kol, Gwalior and Dholpur, he built the town of Agra in 1504 AD. His nickname was Gularu Khan. He also composed poems by this penname. After his death, his son Ibrahim Lodi ascended the throne in Agra in November, 1517 AD. In 1517 – 1518 AD, Lodi was defeated in the battle which was fought between Ibrahim Lodi and Rana Sanga. In the Battle of Panipat in 1526 AD, the Sultan Ibrahim Lodi was defeated by Babur. In history, this battle is famous as the First Battle of Panipat. This battle proved to be a landmark in history and Mughal dynasty.

Administration during the sultanate Period

Sultan- The tradition of acquring the title of Sultan was started by Turkish rulers. Mahmud Ghaznavi was the first ruler to acquire the title of Sultan. The entire power of the kingdom used to be in the hands of Sultan. He was the Chief Justice as well as the political and religious commander in absolute terms. It was expected from the Sultans that they adhere to the advice given by Ulema section.

Amirs (Aristocrats)- The Amirs used to influence the power of Sultan. There were two sections of these Amirs- Turkish and Non-Turkish. During the reign of Iltutmish, a group of 40 Amirs was called Chahalgani. According to the skills and disqualification of the Amirs, their influence continued to increase and decline in the royal court.

An organization of central administration, named Majlis-i-Khalwar used to function just like a Council of Ministers. Its four components were- Wazir, Ariz -i-Mumalik, Diwan-i-Insha and Diwan-e-Risalat.

The office of wazir was called Diwan-e-Wizarat. It can be regarded as the Finance Department. Mustaufi (Chief Auditor), Khazin (Treasurer), Majamadaar (Accountant) used to be the employees of this department.

Jalaluddin Khilji established a department

named Diwan-e-Wakuf and Alauddin established a department named Diwan-e-Mustakhraj. These came under the Finance Department. Muhammad Tughluq established Diwan-e-Amir-Kohi to change land into agricultural land. He used to be the commander of the army.

Fig 2.3: Mughal Empire (1605-1707 AD)

Diwan-e-Insha was responsible for royal postal system. The function of Diwan-e-Riyasat was like that of a foreign minister. Sadr-us-Sudur used to be the head of the religious department. This had a separate treasury in which the money which was derived from Zakat was collected. Kazi-ul-Kuzaat was the Judicial Department, while Barid-e-Mumalik was the Department of Information. There were six employees to handle the court and matters related to palace. They were Wakir-e-Dar, Barbak, Amir-e-Hajib, Amir-e-Shikar, Amir Majlis and Sar-e-Jahandar. The booty which was seized during war times was called Khams. Provinces were called Wali or Nazim. The provincial heads were appointed by the Sultan. Shik used to be the revenue officer of the district.

From 1206 AD to 1526 AD, the frontiers of Delhi Sultanate empire continued to expand or decline according to the power of the ruling Sultan of that time.

India (Bharat) during the Mughal period (1526-1858AD)

Babar

Babar established the Mughal empire in India (Bharat) in 1526 AD after defeating Ibrahim Lodi in the first battle of Panipat. He was a Turkish Muslim and Taimur's descendant. Along with his connection with Chugtai Turkish clan, he was also associated with the clan of Mongolian commander-in –chief Changez Khan. His mother was Changez Khan's descendant. Initially, after his father's death, Zahir-ud-Din Muhammad ascended the throne of Fargana with the title of 'Badshah'. He was the first Taimur clan ruler to acquire this title. In Khanwa, 40 km away from Agra, a battle took place between Babar and Rana Sanga in March, 1527 AD. Babar fought this battle using Tulghuma strategy and gave the slogan of 'Jihad'. After standing victorious, Babar acquired the title of Ghazi. In 1528 AD, Babur defeated Medini Rai of Chanderi. In 1529 AD, Babur defeated the Afghans in the Battle of Ghaghra. Babur died in on 26th December, 1530. He was buried in Aaram Bagh in Agra on the banks of river Yamuna. Later, he was buried in Kabul as per his wishes. Babur wrote a book *Baburnama* or *Tuzk-e-Babri* in Turkish language. The book is a record of his daily life. Later, Abdul Rahim Khan-Khana translated this book in Persian.

Humayun

After Babur, his son Nasir-ud-din Humayun became the ruler. Humayun gave Kabul and Kandhar to his brother Kamran, Sambhal to Askari, Alwar and Mewat to Hindal and Badkhwan region to his cousin Suleman. Humayun established a new town called Din Panah. He invaded Malwa and Gujarat. A battle took place between Humayun and Sher Khan at a place called Chausa near Buxar in 1539 AD, in this battle, the Mughals were defated. After victory in Chausa, Sher Khan attained the title of 'Sher Shah' and circulated coins in his name. Farid Khan was the

real name of Sher Shah. In 1540 AD, the battle of Kannauj or Bilgram took place between Shershah and Humayun. Humayun was defeated and ran away. The Delhi Sultanate was occupied by Shershah. During his term of exile, Humayun got married to Shaikh Ali Akthar's daughter Hamida near Bhatkat, who later became Akbar's mother. Gradually, Humayun conquered

Kandhar and Kabul. In an attempt to regain his power in India (Bharat), he occupied Lahore in 1555 AD. He occupied the Punjab by defeating the army of Nasir Khan and Tatar Khan in the Battle of Macchiwara. In June 1555, he again defeated the Afghans near Sarhind. The Afghans were led by Sikandar Sur and the Mughals were led by Bairam Khan. After this, Humayun ascended the throne of Delhi for the second time on 23rd July, 1555, but after a short time, on 24th January, 1556 AD, he suffered a major injury due to slipping on the steps of a library at Din Panah and died. Humayun was always under perpetual influence of opium. He believed in astrology and therefore formed a rule of wearing clothes of seven different colours for seven days in a week.

Soor Empire

Hasan Khan was a landlord of Sasaram (Bihar) (under Jaunpur region). Hasan Khan's son Farid (Sher Khan) was the founder of Sur Empire. An unarmed Farid killed a lion, thus was adorned with a title of Sher Khan by the ruler of South Bihar-Bahar Khan. His empire extended from western Kannauj towards the hills of Assam in the East and from Northern Himalayas towards the Bay of Bengal in the South. Sher Shah occupied Malwa too. In 1544 AD, Sher Shah defeated Maldeo and established control of Ajmer, Jodhpur and Mewar. Sher Shah won the war against Maldeo with great difficulty. At the time when Jaita and Kumpa bravely struggled against him, Sher Shah said-"I had nearly lost the Sultanate of Hindustan for a handful of millet." He also attained in a symbolic control on Mewar. In 1545 AD during the Battle of Kalinjar, Sher Shah died due to an explosion of gunpowder. After Sher Shah, Islam Shah ruled till 1553 AD, but later, due to mutual conflicts between incapable successors, the Sur Empire declined. Sher Shah's reforms and buildings are famous. He organized land measurement and lagan (a type of tax) and formed the Gallabakshi or Batai, Naqsh, Muqtai or Kankut and Cash or Zabti system. He built 4 big roads and several guest houses. His longest road was from Sonar village to Peshawar, which exists even today. This road is famous as the Grand Trunk Road. He reformed coin minting and issued a copper coin of 380 grain value and a silver coin of 178 grain value. He built his own mausoleum in a lake in Sasaram (Bihar). This mausoleum has impact of a Hindu temple in style and is in the shape of hand drum.

Fig 2.4: Coins of Sher Shah Suri's period

Akbar (1556 AD – 1605 AD)

Akbar was born in 1542 AD at Amarkot Fort Sindh (Pakistan). At the age of thirteen, Bairum Khan built a throne of bricks in Kalanaur and coronated him on 14th February, 1556 AD. Bairam Khan became his guardian. The Second Battle of Panipat took place between Afghan commander Hemu and Mughal representative Bairam Khan on 5th November, 1556 AD. Shot by an arrow in neck, Hemu fainted and the Afghans lost the battle. Hemu was a very capable Hindu commander of Bihar's Afghan ruler Muhammed Adil Shah. He had emerged victorious in 22 battles and he gained the title of 'Raja Vikramjit'.

Akbar occupied Malwa, Fort of Chunar and Gondwana from a music lover Baz Bahadur in 1562 AD. He also won the Ranthambore Fort from Surjan Hada. Raja Ramchandra handed over the Kalinjar fort to Akbar. In 1570 AD, both Marwar and Bikaner handed over their forts to Akbar.

Akbar also snatched Gujarat from Muzaffar Shah and Bengal region from Daud Khan.

The world famous Battle of Haldighati took place in 1576 AD in which Maharana Pratap (Mewar) fought against the Mughal army which was led jointly by Man Singh and Asaf Khan. The Mughals remained unsuccessful in this battle. Pratap did not accept the sovereignty of the Mughals. Just after the Mughal army returned, Pratap reoccupied his regions and granted his estates to the lords.

Led by Akbar,the Mughal army gained decisive victory on Kabul (Mirza Hakim), Kashmir (Yusuf), Sindh (Mirza Jani beg), Orissa (Nisar Khan), Kandhar (Hussain Mirza), and Khaled (Ali Khan). Akbar re-named Khandesh as 'Dhandesh'. The Mughal army confronted the fierce opposition of Chand Bibi and gained over Ahemednagar in 1600 AD. The Mughals gained control of Asirgarh in 1601 AD. This was Akbar's last victory. In 1564 AD, the Uzbeks revolted under the leadership of Malwa's Governor Abdullah Khan. Akbar crushed both the revolts of Uzbeks. As he had crushed the Gujarat revolts in 1584 AD, Abdul Rahim was entitled as “Khan-e-Khana”. During the invasion of Yusufjahis, one of the nine gems- Raja Birbal- died. Akbar too died in 1605 AD after a prolonged illness. He was buried at Sikandra. His tomb is influenced by Buddhist style of architecture.

Akbar called Portuguese missionaries from Goa. He built Ibadat Khana at Fatehpur Sikri in 1575 AD to conduct religious discussions. He started a religion named Din-e-Ilaahi through voting in 1582 AD. Raja Birbal was the first Hindu to join this religion. Sheikh Mubarik announced Akbar as “Inam Adil” (Mujat hind). He provided protection to Chishti order of Sufi clan and built churches for Christians at Lahore and Agra. He provided protection to Jain Muni Harivijaya Suri by honouring him as 'Jagadgura'. Abul Fazal was the head priest of Din-e- Ilahi religion. In 1583 AD, Akbar issued a new calendar called Ilahi Era.

Fig 2.5 : Silver coins of Akbar

According to the policy adopted for the Rajputs, Akbar established sovereignty over Rajputs through marriage alliances and by manifesting power. Kachwaha ruler Bharmal was the first Rajput ruler to enter into an alliance with Akbar. He appointed Bhagwan Das and Raja Man Singh to high posts in his court. Royal dynasties of Dungarpur, Banswara and Pratapgarh accepted the sovereignty of the Mughals, but they remained independent. In 1564 AD, Akbar abolished Jazia tax completely.

Fatehpur Sikri remained the royal capital from 1569 AD to 1584 AD. Buland Darwaza built on the Southern gate of the mosque was built to commemorate Akbar's victory over Gujrat.

Jahangir (1605 AD – 1627 AD)

After the name of Shaikh Salim Chisti, he was named 'Salim'. Owing to his military services, he had obtained 12,000 Mansabs. Salim revolted against Akbar in 1599 AD. To crush the revolt, Akbar sent Abul Fazal in 1602 AD, but Jahangir got him assassinated. In 1605 AD, Jahangir gained the title of Nur-ud-din Mohammad Jahangir Badshah and occupied the Mughal throne at Agra Fort in 1605 AD. Jahangir got the Peacock Throne (Takht-e-Taus) built.

He got the Sikh guru Arjan Dev sentenced to death. Jahangir's victory of Kandhar is considered important from military and commercial view point. In 1611 AD, Jahangir married a widow Mehr-un-nisa and gave her the title of 'Nur Mahal' Noorjahan. Later she was entitled as Badshah Begum. British ambassador

Fig 2.6: Fatehpur Sikri

Captain Hewkins and Sir Thomas Roe visited his court. Jahangir died in 1627 AD.

Shahjahan (1627 AD – 1658 AD)

His childhood name was Khurram. In 1612 AD, he married Asaf Khan's daughter Arjumand Banu Begum (Mumtaz Mahal). He was coronated at Agra in February, 1628 AD. During his reign, Khanjahan Lodi and Jujhar Singh (Bundela) revolted against him. Shahjahan defeated the Portuguese at Hooghly in 1632 AD. He merged Ahmednagar in the Mughal Empire. He defeated Bijapur's Sultan Adil Shah. In 1652 AD, Shahjahan made his son Aurangzeb the Viceroy of Deccan. In 1657 AD, Aurangzeb imprisoned Shahjahan in Agra Fort. He assassinated his brothers Dara, Murad and Shuja and himself ascended the throne. Shahjahan died in 1666 AD. A succession battle called the Battle of Dharmat took place between Dara Shikoh and Aurangzeb. French traveller Francois Bernier and Italian traveller Niccolao Munucci have described Shahjahan's reign.

Aurangzeb (1658 AD – 1707 AD)

After becoming the ruler, Aurangzeb defeated the Rathores of Marwar, Assam, Kutch, Bihar, Rangpur and Kamrup. He appointed King Jai Singh as the Governor of the Deccan. Treaty of Purandar took place between Shivaji and King Jai Singh in 1665 AD, Shivaji gave 23 forts to king Jai Singh. In 1666 AD, Shivaji visited Aurangzeb's court with the efforts of king Jai Singh, but Aurangzeb did not behave respectfully and deceived and imprisoned Shivaji, who secretly moved out of the fort and escaped to Maharashtra. In 1686 AD, Aurangzeb occupied Bijapur and in 1687 AD, occupied Golkonda. During his reign, 5 percent additional tax was imposed on Hindu traders. Aurangzeb ordered to demolish temples in 1669 AD. In 1679 AD, Jazia was imposed on Hindus. Aurangzeb used religion as a weapon. He banned the practice of Jarokha Darshan and music which was prevalent from Akbar's time. Aurangzeb died in Ahmednagar in 1707 AD. During his reign, the Jats revolted under the leadership of Gokul in 1668 AD and the Satnamis revolted in 1672 AD.

Sikh Guru Tegh Bahadur also raised voice against the atrocities of Aurangzeb. He was killed for this reason.

After the death of Aurangzeb, the Mughal dynasty became weak and inefficient and due to weak successors, the Mughal Empire started declining gradually. In 1707 AD, Bahadur Shah ascended the Mughal throne. In 1711 AD, East India Company of Surat sent its deputies in Bahadur Shah's court, the influence of a Christian lady named Juliana Dias da Costa is evident. She attained titles such as Khatum, Biwi and Fidvi Duago Juliana. She largely protected the interests of the Portuguese.

Administration during the Mughal period

Mughal administration system was a fusion of Indian (Bhartiya) and foreign administration system. The emperor was the supreme power. Waqil-e-Mutaliq (Wazir) was the second biggest officer after the emperor. A head named Sadra-Mir-e-Sama was the chief of Finance Department.

Provincial administration was divided into Subas, which were 15 in number during the reign of Akbar and increased to 21 during the reign of Aurangzeb. District administration was in the hands of Faujdar, Amal-Guzar (warehouse keeper), Bitikuchi (assistant), Shiqdar (head of the Pargana), Amil (munsif), and Fotdar (treasurer and Kanungo (officer of the patwaris).

Emperor used to be the Chief Commander. Army was organized as per Manasbdari system. Mansabdari was divided into Zaats and Sawars.

Opposition and Cooperation with the Rulers in Context of Rajasthan (Rao Shekha, Hammir Chauhan, Maharana Pratap, Chandrasen, Rai Singh of Bikaner, Sawai Jai Singh and Amar Singh Rathore)

Rao Shekha

Maha Rao Shekha was born on 24th September, 1433 AD. His father's name was Mokal and his mother's name was Nirvan. Rao Mokal was the chieftain of Nan in Amer (Jaipur) state. At the age of 12, Shekha took up his father's responsibilities in 1445 AD. Udaikaran, the ruler of Amer (Jaipur) had adorned Shekha with the title of Maharao. At the age of 16, he performed a sudden attack on Sankhla Rajputs of Naharchal, Multan and Sevar and emerged victorious. This was the first successful expedition of Maha Rao. From 1473 AD to 1477 AD, Rao Shekha took assistance of Pani Pathans and gained victory on Nopsingh Jatu up to Dadri and on other Jatu Rajputs. He extended the boundaries of his empire by gaining victory on Istarkhan till Hansi and by occupying Hisar from Heda Khan Kayamkhani. He made Amersar his capital in 1449 AD. Shekha built the temple of Lord Jagdish in Amersar and Shikargarh Fort in 1477 AD.

Fig 2.7 : Rao Shekha

He died at Ralawata in 1488 AD, where a chhatri (cenotaph) has been built in his memory. Maha Rao Shekha fought 52 battles in his lifetime. He is considered to be the founder of Shekhawat sub-clan of Kachwaha dynasty. His wife Ganga Kumari built Kalyanji temple in front of Amersar fort.

Hammir Dev Chauhan 1282 AD -1301 AD)

After Bagabhatt, his son Jaitra Singh (Jaisimha) became the ruler of Ranthambore. During his term, Jaitra Singh appointed his

Fig 2.8: Hammir Dev Chauhan

younger son Hammir Dev as his successor and enthroned him in 1282 AD.

Soon after ascending the throne, Hammir Dev adopted the policy of Digvijay and collected tax from Mandalgarh by defeating king Arjun of Bhimras. He defeated Parmar ruler Bhoj of the South and proceeded towards the North and returned to Ranthambore via Chittor, Abu, Vardhanpur (Kathiawar), Pushkar and Champa. In Ranthambore, he performed Koti-yajna to commemorate his victory. Hammir fought 17 battles, out of which, he emerged victorious in 16.

When Jaluddin Khilji Delhi noticed the increasing power of Hammir Dev, he proceeded towards Ranthambore.

Jalaluddin Firoz Khilji proceeded from Jhain towards Ranthambore and surrounded the fort. After many efforts, when the Sultan did not succeed , he thought of winding up his enclosure. Jalaluddin Khilji remained unsuccessful in demolishing the strong frontier of Hammir Dev. Finally, in June 1291 AD, Sultan left Ranthambore fort and proceeded towards Delhi.

In 1296 AD, Jalaluddin's nephew and son-in-law Alauddin Khilji assassinated him and became the Sultan of Delhi. Alauddin Khilji could not tolerate the power of the Chauhans and started planning to annex Ranthambore. At the same time, he got an excuse to attack the fort. According to 'Hammir Mahakavya', this excuse was Hammir providing protection to Alauddin's Mongolian rebel Muhammad Shah. Mongolian commander Muhammad Shah gathered the entire booty, revolted against Alauddin's army and sought refuge at Hammir's place. Hammir clearly refused to hand over the people who had come to him for protection. Alauddin was furious at this and ordered the invasion of Ranthambore.

Alauddin Khilji sent his royal army under the leadership of Ulugh Khan and Nusrat Khan to invade Ranthambore fort at the end of 1299 AD. The royal army attacked Jhain which was regarded as the 'key to the road towards Ranthambore'. At that time, Hammir Dev was observing silence after the conclusion of Koti-yajna. Hammir sent his two soldiers named Bhim Singh and Dharam Singh to confront the enemies. Both of them defeated Alauddin's army. Bhim Singh and Dharam Singh proceeded towards Ranthabore, taking the booty along. As they reached near Ranthambore Fort, they got the news that they the army of enemies is again proceeding towards the fort. Bhim Singh sent Dharam Singh back to Ranthambore and he himself confronted the enemies. This time, Ulugh Khan defeated the Rajput army, in which Bhim Singh was killed while fighting. Ulugh Khan did not proceed towards Ranthambore and returned to Delhi.

After this, Alauddin Khilji sent Ulugh Khan and Nusrat Khan again along with a massive army to invade Ranthambore. The army surrounded the Ranthambore fort and started breaking its walls, and at that time, Nusrat Khan died due to a blow of cannon that was fired from the fort. When the Turkish army came to know about all this, it started to run away. Seeing all this, Ulugh Khan sent the news of death of Nusrat Khan and fleeing away of the army to Alauddin Khilji and asked him to send more soldiers. Alauddin realized the intensity of the situation and he charged towards Ranthambore with a large army. The fort was surrounded. This siege remained for many days. When rainy season was approaching, and the reports of fierce revolts in Delhi and Awadh started to hit the Sultan, he became concerned. He planned treason and decided to conquer Ranthambore through treason.

Alauddin sent a message to Hammir to make an alliance with him. Hammir sent two of his commanders Ranmal and Ratipal to forge an alliance in the royal court. The Sultan bribed Ranmal and Ratipal with the control of the fort and brought them in his favour. Due to betrayal of both these commanders, the Turkish came to know about the secret road to go inside the fort. The Turkish army reached inside the fort through the secret road.

According to the historians, as the Muslims had surrounded the fort for more than a year, severe scarcity of foodgrains had taken place inside the fort. In such a condition, Hammir decided not to remain enclosed inside the fort and to attack the enemy. Before the attack, the Rajput women performed Jal Jauhar under the guidance of Hammir's queen Rangadevi and his daughter Padamala. After this, the Rajput soldiers got dressed up in orange clothes and opened the gates of the fort. A fierce battle took place between both the armies in which Hammir was martyred.

Alauddin Khilji established his rule over Ranthambore fort on 11th July, 1301 AD. Alauddin got Hammir's commanders Ranmal and Ratipal killed, commenting that if they could not be faithful to their good master, how could they be faithful to him in the future.

In the battle of Ranthambore, a scholar Amir Khusro was also present with Alauddin Khilji. Even after sacrificing his entire family, Hammir became famous for keeping his word and as a man who refused to hand over those persons who reposed faith in him for protection. It has been said for Hammir in folk language that-

Singh savan, satpurush vachan, kadali falat ik baarA
Tiriya-tel, hummeer-hath chadhe na dooji baarAA

In memory of his father Jai Singh's reign of 32 years, Hammir built a Chhatri with 32 pillars in Ranthambore fort, which is also renowned as Nyaya Ki Chhatri (the cenotaph of justice). Hammir Dev built a Padamala pond in the name of his daughter Padmala. A poet named Bijaditya lived in Hammir's court.

After Hammir's death, the rule of Chauhans of Ranthambore came to an end.

Maharana Pratap (1572 AD – 1597 AD)

Maharana Pratap was born on Sunday, 9th May, 1540 AD (Vikram Samvat 1597, Jyeshtha Shukla Tritiya) in 'Badal Mahal' of Kumbhalgarh fort (Katargarh). Pratap was the eldest son of Udai Singh. His morher's name was Jaiwanta Bai and she was the daughter of Pali king Akhey Raj Songara Chauhan. The childhood of Maharana Pratap passed in Kumbhalgarh fort. Maharana Pratap got married to Ajabde Panwar in 1557 AD and she gave birth to Amar Singh on 16th March, 1559 AD.

Fig 2.9 : Maharana Pratap

When Maharana Pratap was 32 years old, his father died on 28th February, 1572 AD in Gogunda on festive Holi day. Udai Singh was cremated in Gogunda itself. On 28th February, 1572 AD, the lords and people of Mewar enthroned him in the form of Maharana at a place named Mahadev Bawari situated in Gogunga. Jagmal, who was nominated as the successor by Maharana Udai Singh, was deprived of throne by the elderly lords of Mewar.

In 1570 AD, Nagaur court of Akbar was held in

which most of the Rajputs excluding Mewar accepted the sovereignty of Akbar. Akbar sent four groups in Pratap's court to force him accept his sovereignty, in which-

- First group- Jalal Khan, who was sent in November, 1572 AD in Pratap's court.
- Second group- Man Singh (ruler of Amer) was sent in June, 1573 AD to convince Pratap.
- Third group- Bhagwandas of Amer was sent in October, 1573 AD.
- Fourth group- Todarmal was sent in December, 1573 AD.

When all these four groups of delegates remained unsuccessful in convincing Pratap, then Akbar decided to make Pratap a prisoner of war. This plan of making him a prisoner was drafted in Ajmer fort, in which a museum exists today and as it was a storehouse of weapons in the colonial period, it is also known as Magazine.

Akbar appointed Man Singh as the Chief Commander of this battle and Asaf Khan was appointed as the assistant of Man Singh.

On 3rd April, 1576 AD, Man Singh proceeded towards Ajmer along with a massive army and he laid his first camp in Mandalgarh where he stayed for two months and later, he laid camp in Molela village of Khamnor near Nathdwara. On the other hand, the news of arrival of the royal army had reached Maharana Pratap.

Maharana Pratap laid his camp in the narrow valley of Haldighati situated between the hills of Gogunda and Khamnor. In this valley, only one person could enter at a time. Therefore, even after having fewer soldiers in his army, this was the best place for Pratap to confront his enemy, here, Pratap's familiar soldiers could hide well behind the hills and attack the enemy. On the other hand, the Mughal soldiers could lose their way, could face the soldiers of Mewar or die due to starvation. Finally, the two armies confronted each other on 18th June, 1576 AD, right after the declaration of war in the morning.

The first attack of the Rajputs on the Mughal army was so intense that the Mughal soldiers ran in all directions to save themselves. In the first phase of the battle, Hakim Khan Sur's leadership remained successful. Mughal historians Badauni Khan, who was present with the Mughal army, also ran away from the battlefield. Mihattar Khan who was the incharge of reserve force of the Mughals spread rumour that Emperor Akbar is himself coming along with a massive army. Hearing the news of Akbar's assistance, the Mughal army got some strength and they again proceeded forward to confront the Rajputs. After being successful in the first phase of the battle, the Rajput soldiers laid their camp on a plain 'Rakht Talai' situated on the banks of river Banas. In this engagement, a fierce battle took place between Rana's elephants named Puna and Ram Prasad and Mughal elephants named Gajmukta and Gajraj. The mughals took control of elephant Ram Prasad as his mahaut died in the war. Elephant Ram Prasad was of extreme importance for the Mughals and Akbar renamed him as Pir Prasad.

At this time, the Mughal army surrounded Pratap from all the four sides. Jhala Man of Bari Sadri tore through the Mughal army proceeded towards Rana and requested him-"Please take the royal symbol off and give it to me please go away from the battlefield at this critical time for the benefit of Mewar." Rana Pratap accepted his request at witnessing the plight of wounded Chetak. As soon as the royal symbol was exchanged, hundreds of swords attacked Jhala Man. Jhala Man faced these blows bravely and received martyrdom.

Maharana Pratap's faithful horse Chetak died while crossing a small ditch at Balicha. At this place, i.e. Balicha village. In fact the war between Maharana Pratap & Akhar was not religious conflict. This was conflict between two poilitcal

powers. It was also significent that the army chief of Maharana Pratap was Hakim Khan Suri & while the Mughal army was lead by Raja Man Singh.

Struggle after of Haldighati War

After the war of Haldighati Mugal army was stay at Gogunda but due to lack logistics material the mugal army returned to Agra. Maharana Pratap established has new Capital at Kumbhulghar and continue has stragel with a Mugals adopted new strategy of war Gurila system. Three times Akbar sended his army to Mewar under the leadership of Shahbaz Khan 15October 1577, 15 December 1578 and May1580. During first attack Shahbaz encircled Kumbhul garh by encroaching. The villages again in 1580 Abdur Rahin KhanKana was sended by Akbar but he was not get any success. In this war Mewar army was under the leadership of Prince Amar Singh son of Pratap. He occupied kumbhulghar.

Akbar send his army under Jagnal Khwaja but he did not get success. In July 1582 Pratap's army attacked an Mugal army on the path of diver between 1585-1597, Pratap had made the other areas free from Mughals except Chittorgarh and Mandal.

Got an opportunity to attack Sherpur and he imprisoned Abdul Rahim Khan-Khana's family. Maharana Pratap got annoyed by this and told Amar Singh to release the family of Abdul Rahim Khan-khana and send them back respectfully. This was a major station of the Mughals. Pratap attacked this station along with Amar Singh. Pratap took control of the entire valley of Diwer.

Fig 2.10: Maharana Pratap attacking Man Singh

When the news of Pratap's death on 19 Janauary 1597 reached Akbar, he too became sad. The description of this situation was interpreted by Durssa Adha present in Akbar's court as-

"As lego andaag paag lego ann-nami Gehlot Raan jeetee gayo dasan moond rasna Ussi, nissas mook maria nayan to mrit shah pratapsi"

Fig 2.11: Samadhi of Maharana Pratap at Bandoli Chawand

Meaning : Rana Pratap, on your death the Emperor pressed his tongue in between his teeth and cried severely because neither did you sacrifice your horse, nor did you bow your turban in front of any one- really, you are the winner by all means.

Colonel James Todd addressed Haldighati as "Mewar's Thermopoli" and Diwer as "Mewar's Marathon".

Rao Chandrasen (1562 AD- 1581 AD)

Rao Chandrasen was born on 16th July, 1541 AD. He was the son of Maldev Jhala Rani Swarup Dev. Swarup Dev had requested Maldev to make Chandrasen the prince of Mewar. When Maldev died, Chandrasen became the ruler of Marwar on 31st December, 1562 AD, though he was the youngest of all his brothers. For this reason, both the brothers of Chandrasen were annoyed. The elder brother Ram went in Akbar's court and requested him for royal assistance, and Akbar was also waiting for this to take place. Shortly after this, Akbar sent his army under the leadership of Hussain Quli Khan towards Jodhpur, who occupied the Jodhpur fort in May, 1564 AD. Marwar's ruler Chandrasen fled away from Jodhpur and took refuge in Bhadrajun. In 1570 AD, Chandrasen attended Akbar's Nagaur court but watching the behaviour of Akbar and the presence of his competitor Udai Singh, he left the Nagaur court and returned.

When Akbar came to know about all this, he appointed Rai Singh of Bikaner as Jodhpur chief and to crush Rao Chandrasen, Akbar sent his army towards Bhadrajun. From Bhadrajun, Chandrasen, along with his nephew Kalla (son of Chandrasen's brother Ram), reached Sojat. Following him, the Mughal army reached there. Rao Chandrasen proceeded towards Sivana (Barmer) from there. From Sivana, Chandrasen reached Sanchiyay in Saran hills (Pali). He died on 11th January, 1581AD. His Samadhi is built there. Rao Chandrasen is also known as the forgotten hero, the forgotten king, etc.

Rai Singh of Bikaner (1574 AD – 1612 AD)

Rai Singh was the elder son of Kalyanmal Rathore. He was born on 20th July, 1541 AD. In Nagaur court held in 1570 AD, he joined the royal army of Akbar and shortly became Akbar's loyal.

First, Akbar appointed Rai Singh as Jodhpur chief in 1572 AD After the death of his father Kalyanmal on 25th December, 1574 AD, Rai Singh became the ruler of Bikaner. When Rai Singh was looking after Jodhpur's administration, Ibrahim Mirza revolted in Nagaur. Rai Singh eliminated him in a village called Kathauli. A conflict took place between Sirohi's Deora Surtan and Bija Deora. At that time, Rai Singh attacked Sirohi and forced Bija out of the state. He placed half of the Sirohi region under the Mughal Empire and gave it to Maharana Pratap's esteranged step brother Jagmal who had come from Mewar. Surtan attacked the Mughals. A battle took place between both the armies at a place called Dattani in 1583 AD. Jagmal died in the battle of Dattani and Surtan reoccupied Sirohi. Being happy with Rai Singh, Akbar granted him the Junagarh region in 1593 AD. He granted him the jagir of Shamshabad and Noorpur in 1604 AD and entitled him as 'Rai'. Between 1589-94 AD, Rai Singh built Junagrah (Bikaner) under the guidance of his Prime Minister Karamchand and inserted a Prashasti named "Rai Singh Prashasti" over there. Rai Singh was also a literate man and he wrote a commentary based on the language of Rai Singh Mahotsava, Vaidyak Vanshavali, Jyotish Ratnamala, and astrological books. In a treastise named "Karamchandra Vanshokirtanak", he has been addressed as Rajendra.

During the reign of Rai Singh, Bikaner experienced a severe famine. Rai Singh opened 'Sadavrats' at several places and arranged fodder for animals. The beginning of Bikaner style of art is said to have began during the reign of Rai Singh. Rai Singh died at a place called Burhanpur in South India (Bharat) on 21st January, 1612 AD.

At some place in South India (Bharat), Rai Singh saw and embraced a bush named 'Fog' in a desert and said-

"Tu sei deshi rookhda, mhe perdeshi log,
Mhane Akbar tedia, kyon tu aayo phog"

Meaning- You are a native plant, whilst I am a foreigner. Akbar has sent me forcerfully over here, but Fog, why have you come here?

Sawai Jai Singh/ Jai Singh II (1699 AD-1743AD)

Jai Singh was born on 3rd September 1688 AD. His father's name was Bishan Singh. In the beginning his name was Vijay Singh and his brother's name was Jai Singh. Being influenced by his capability, Aurangzeb named him as Jai Singh and his brother as Vijay Singh. Jai Singh's father Bishan Singh died in 1699 AD. Sawai Jai Singh became the ruler of Amer on 19th December, 1699AD.

Aurangzeb died in February, 1707 AD . A battle of succession took place between Aurangzeb's sons. Muazzam, Azam, Kam Baksh and Akbar were the sons of Aurangzeb. Akbar left India (Bharat) and went to Persia. Kam Baksh was not interested in becoming the ruler. Finally, a battle took place between Muazzam and Azam in 1707 AD at the battlefield of Jajau (Uttar Pradesh). Sawai Jai Singh took part in this battle and favoured Azam. Muazzam took Jai Singh's bother

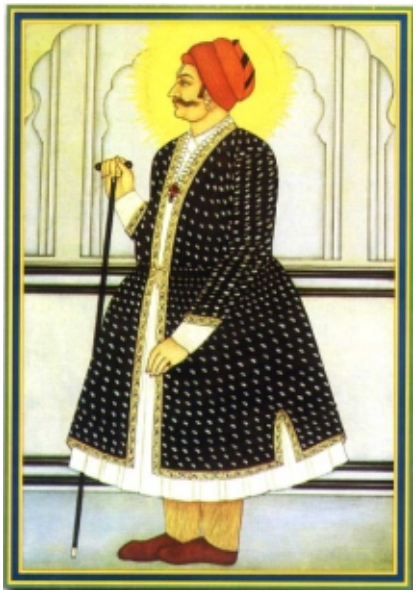


Fig 2.12 : Maharaj Sawai Jai Singh

Vijay Singh in his favour. Muazzam emerged as victorious in this battle. After winning the battle, first, Muazzam renamed himself as Bahadur Shah I. Vijay Singh was made the ruler of Amer and Amer was renamed as "Islamabad" and later as "Mominabad". Bahadur Shah appointed Amer's ruler Sawai Jai Singh and Marwar's ruler Ajit Singh as Subedars. Amar Singh II put a condition that Sawai jai Singh should get married to his daughter Chandrakunwari and only then he will be provided with royal assistance. Jai Singh agreed to this condition which is also known as Debari Samjhota (Debari Pact).

Amar Singh II agreed to provide assistance to Sawai Jai Singh of Amer and Ajit Singh of Mewar. When this news reached Bahadur Shah-I, at first he became very angry, but later he forgave both of them.

Churaman revolted in Bharatpur estate. To crush this revolt, Rangila sent Jai Singh in 1722 AD. Jai Singh took Churman's nephew Badan Singh in his favour and forced Churaman out from Bharatpur. Jai Singh conferred Badan Singh with the title of 'Brijraj' and gave him Deeg. Being happy with the decline of Jats, Muhammad Shah adorned Jai Singh with the title of "Rajarajeshwar Sri Rajadhiraj Sawai".

Sawai Jai Singh built an astronomical table to determine the speed of constellations in 1725 AD. Jai Singh wrote a book on astrology which was named "Jai Singh Karika". For developing astrology in India (Bharat), Jai Singh built five observatories at Jaipur, Delhi, Mathura, Varanasi and Ujjain. Jantar-Mantar of Jaipur is the largest observatory of them which has been included in World Heritage List of UNESCO in July,2010 AD. Jainagar was the ancient name of Jaipur. Before Jaipur was built, a Shikar Hodi was situated at this place. This Hodi was transformed into Badal Mahal by Sawai Jai Singh and he began to build the city of Jaipur.

Fig 2.13: Jantar-Mantar, Jaipur (Solar Observatory, built by Jai Singh)

Sawai Jai Singh was the last Hindu ruler who performed Rajasuya/Vajpaya/ Ashvamedha yajna in 1740 AD. Sawai Jai Singh built Jal Mahals for the residence of the Brahmins who performed the yajna. Due to blood infection, Jai Singh died in Amer on 21st September,1743 AD.

Amar Singh Rathore

Jodhpur Maharaja Gaj Singh had three sons- Amar Singh was the eldest son followed by Jaswant Singh and Achal Singh was the youngest who died during childhood. Amar Singh Rathore was mighty and brave. Many Rajput youngsters

Fig 2.14: Amar Singh Rathore (Jodhpur)

like him were his companions. Gaj Singh came under the influence of a paswaan named Anara and deprived Amar Singh of succession and forced him out of the country. Amar Singh Rathore went to serve the Mughal emperor. Shah Jahan was influenced by his bravery and adorned him with the title of 'Rao'.

Once, Amar Singh Rathore remained absent from the Mughal court for 15 days. When Emperor Shah Jahan asked the reason for his absence he answered with pride that "I had gone for hunt and therefore could not attend the court. And as far as giving fine is considered, my sword is my only property". Bakshi Salawat Khan was sent to collect fine from him. Amar Singh refused to pay the fine. The emperor ordered Amar Singh to come immediately. Amar Singh Rathore obeyed the order and greeted the emperor in Diwan-e-Khas. As soon as he reached there, Salawat Khan called him mannerless. Amar Singh couldn't bear these words and attacked Salawat Khan and killed him with his sword. After this, Amar Singh attacked emperor Shahjahan, but somehow he saved himself. Terrified Shahjahan ran away to Janana Mahal. Amar Singh's brother in law betrayed him and cunningly attacked and killed him in temptation of a grant. Hearing this, the chiefs and soldiers of Amar Singh became agitated and immediately proceeded towards Delhi and entered into Shahjahan's residence through the Bukhara Gate. Rathores received martyrdom while confronting the enemy. Red Fort's Bukhara Gate was closed using bricks the same day and from that day this gate became famous as 'Amar Singh's Gate'. This gate remained closed for many years and was opened in 1809 AD by the orders of a British officer named George Steel.

History of Marathas

The rise of Maratha power was not the work of a single person, instead, it took place at a special time, which was a result of some extraordinary circumstances. Deccan plateau which is situated in the South -western part of India (Bharat) is known as present Maharashtra. As most of this part is a plateau, the residents of this place have been laborious and brave. The residents of Maharashtra who are known as Marathas are short in height with sound physical built. They were skilled in guerilla warfare. They largely avoided open battles and used to attack their enemy in a Guerilla war and used to snatch money from them. The religious reforms and Bhakti Movements which took place in the 15th and 16th century, further strengthened social unity. In the South this religious movement based on the masses was led by saints and intellectuals like Tukaram, Ramdas, Eknath, Vaman Pundit and others. This movement was against discrimination, caste system and other social evils and it showed the path of devotion to attain God. Marathi as a language was very practical and easy.

Chhatrapati Shivaji (1627 – 1680 AD)

Shivaji was born on 20th April, 1627 AD in Shivner Fort. He was the son of Shahaji Bhonsle's first wife Jijabai. Shahaji was a Bijapur aristocrat who married another lady named Tukabai Mohite. For this reason, Jijabai did not live with him. As a child, Shivaji was brought up by his local guardian Dadoji Konddeo and Jijabai's guru Samarth Swami Ramdas. They inspired him to protect the motherland. He learned military and administrative skills from Dadoji Konddeo. At the young age of

Fig 2.15: Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj

12, Shivaji the estate of Pune from his father. First, in 1646 AD, at the age of 19, he formed a group of some Mavala comrades and won Raigarh and Chakan from Bijapur's Sultan and in 1647 AD he also occupied Baramati, Indrapur, Singhgarh and Purandar fort. In 1656 AD, Shivaji also occupied Konkan's Kalyan and Javali fort. In 1656 AD itself, he made Raigarh his capital. Being concerned by Shivaji's policy of extension of empire, Bijapur's Sultan sent his commander Afzal Khan to eliminate him. During the talks of alliance, Afzal Khan tried to betray Shivaji, as a result Shivaji slit his stomach using a Baghnakha. In 1659 AD, Aurangzeb appointed Deccan's Mughal Viceroy Shaista Khan to eliminate Shivaji in 1663 AD. Shaista Khan occupied Pune which was Shivaji's centre of administration. But shortly after this, Shivaji attacked Shaista Khan's camp in the night time, from where, Shaista Khan had to run away after losing his son and three fingers of his hand. In 1664 AD, Shivaji looted Surat which was occupied by the Mughals. Angered by these activities, Aurangzeb sent his minister, king of Amer, Mirza Jai Singh and Dilner Khan. Mughal army occupied several forts of Shivaji. Being helpless, Shivaji entered into a treaty with Jai Singh in 1665 AD which is renowned as the Treaty of Purander. Followings were the provisions of this treaty-

1. Shivaji surrendered 23 out of his 35 forts to the Mughals and kept merely 12 forts with himself.
2. Shivaji's elder son Sambhaji was appointed as Paanch Hajari Mansabdar.

King Jai Singh convinced Shivaji to attend the Mughal court in Agra. Jai Singh told him that he would be appointed as the Subedar of Mughal subas in the South. In May, 1666 AD, Shivaji visited the royal court, in which he was insulated as if he was a lowly Mansabdar and he was also interned. But in November, 1666 AD he secretly went away from the prison along with his son Sambhaji and reached home safely. The following year, Aurangzeb entitled Shivaji as the king and granted him the estate of Barar. Shivaji maintained peace for two years. But in 1670 AD, he revolted and reoccupied all those forts which had earlier been occupied by the Mughals. Ensuring security to local Mughal officers in some part of Khandesh, he made a written agreement of collecting Chauth (one-fourth part of income) from them. In 1670 AD, he looted Surat again. In 1674 AD in Raigrah

Fig. 2.16 : Empire of Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj

Fig. 2.17 : Shivaji killing Afzal Khan

Fig. 2.18: Raigarh Fort (Maharashtra)

Fort, he enthroned himself as the independent king of Maharashtra and assumed the title of 'Chhatrapati'. Shivaji died in 1680 AD. At that time, his Maratha Empire extended across the entire Western Karnataka from Belgaon to the banks of river Tungabhadra. In this way, even after facing strong opposition from Mughal power, Bijapur's Sultan, Protuguese from Goa and sea pirates of Abyssinia in Janjira, Shivaji managed to establish an independent Hindu empire.

Vijayanagar and Bahmani Empire

Vijayanagar Empire

The five sons of Sangam, out of whom Harihara and Bukka were the most famous, laid the foundation of Vijayanagar kingdom on the northern banks of river Tungabhadra. They were the lords of Kakatiyas of Warangal and later appointed as ministers of Kampili state of modern Karnataka. After the destruction of Kampili state, Muhammad Tughluq had imprisoned both these brothers and they were released later. With the efforts of their guru Vidyaranya, they were sanctified and they established an independent Vijayanagar empire which shortly became the most powerful empire of South India (Bharat). Today, its capital Vijayanagar can be indentified from the remains called Hampi, which have been recognized as a World Heritage Protection site by UNESCO.

Fig. 2.19: Vijaynagar Empire in present time in the form of remains of Hampi

Harihara was enthroned in 1336 AD. He annexed the entire Hoysala region into Vijayanagar in 1346 AD. Bukka extended the Vijayanagar Empire towards entire south India (Bharat), Rameshwaram, Tamil and Cher region He ruled till 1377 AD. Harihara II (1377–1406 AD) was the successor of Bukka. During his reign, he confronted the Muslim rulers. He was the worshipper of "Virupaksha" form of Lord Shiva. During his reign, the Vijayanagar Empire extended up to entire South India (Bharat) including Mysore, Vanara, Tiruchanapalli and Kanchipuram. Just like Harihara II, Deva Raya I (1406-1422 AD) was also defeated by the Bahmani Sultans. Bukka's son Deva Raya II ruled from 1422 AD to 1426 AD. He attained the title "Gajabetkar" (the hunter of elephants). In order to confront the Bahmani Empire, he recruited Muslims for the first time in his army. Italian traveller Niccolo de Conti and Persian ambassador Abdur Razzaq visited Vijayanagar during this period. In this period, the Vijayanagar Empire had extended up to the seacoast of Ceylon (Sri Lanka). The last rulers of this empire were Mallikarjuna and Virupaksha respectively.

Bahmani Empire

In the South , the Bahmani empire and dynasty was founded by Muhammad Tughluq'a officer named Hasan (Zafar Shah) in 1347 AD. Hasan obtained the favour of Amir of the South and established his kingdom by taking advantage of the revolt spread against Tughluq. He was the descendent of brave Persian warrior Bahman. He took the title of Alaudding Bahman Shah. At the time of his death in 1358 AD, his empire extended from Penganga in north up to river Krishna in the South and from Goa in the west up to Bhongir in the east.

The western frontier of Vijayanagar

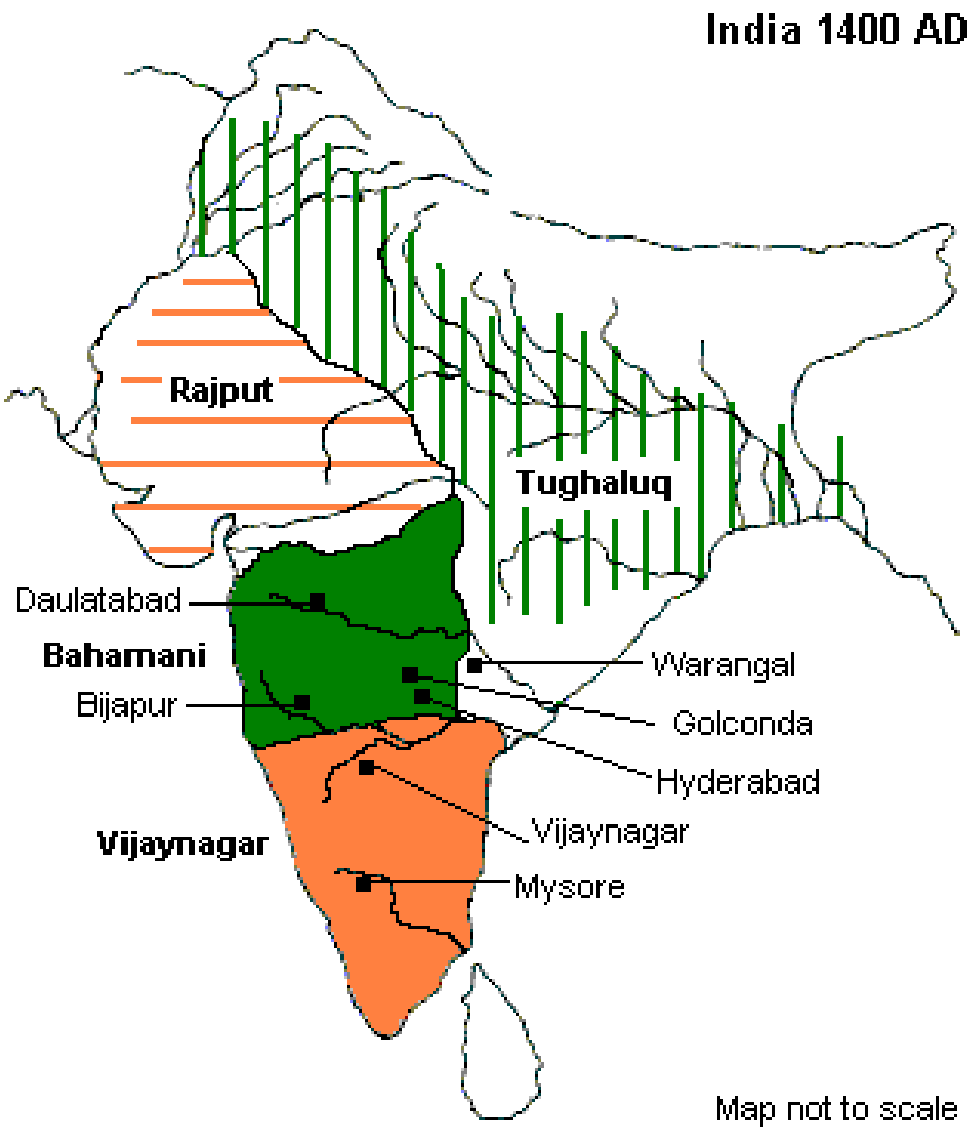


Fig. 2.20 : Bahamani Empire

bordered Bahmani kingdom. Therefore, both of these kingdoms remained in conflict with each other. The issue of gaining victory upon two neighbouring forts of Mugdal and Raichur was another reason for the battle. The ninth Bahmani Sultan Ahmad replaced Gulberg and made Bidar as his capital. Muslims were in minority in Bahmani kingdom, therefore several Shia Muslims from abroad were attracted and they settled in Bahmani. Due to this, the South ern and Abyssenian Sunni Muslims got angry. The thirteenth Sultan Muhammad III hanged Muhammad Gawan who had been an employee of the kingdom. After the death of Gawan, the Bahmani kingdom began to decline. During the reign of the last sultan Mahmood, Barar, Bidar, Ahmednagar, Golkunda and Bijapur became the five independent states of Bahmani kingdom and their Subedars declared themselves as independent rulers. The position of common people during the Bahmani kingdom was miserable, as mentioned by the Russian trader Athonysivs Nikitin who travelled through the Bahmani kingdom for four years (1470-74 AD).

Influence and development of Sikhism (Including Gobind Singh Banda Bairgai and Ranjit Singh)

Fig. 2.21: Guru Nanak Dev Ji

Muslim rule was established in the Punjab right from beginning of thirteenth century. In order to establish their religious rule, the Muslim rulers gave first class status to Muslims and the Hindus were placed in the second category. Due to this religious intolerance policy of the Delhi Sultanate, struggles began to take place. Building mosques in place of temples had become a common phenomenon. An atmosphere of intolerance and hatred started to develop. At such time, Guru Nanak Dev was born on 15th April, 1469 AD. He got married to Sulakhaani. Nanak was inclined towards spiritualism. Nanak travelled across entire India (Bharat) preaching the slogan- "All humans are of the same caste". These travels initiated by him are called "Udasiyan". Teachings of Guru Nanak Dev included- faith in one god, importance and worship of name, greatness of god, etc. He emphasized on performing pure actions and performed the work of social reforms by opposing caste and colour discrimination. He said, "Caste does not matter, what matters are actions of an individual". Japji Sahib, Arti, Rahiram and Barah Mah are his famous compositions. He founded Sikhism and made his place among the leading religious and social reformers of the world. Guru Angad, who was the disciple of Guru Nanak, performed the work of explaining Guru Nanak's teaching to the common man. For this, he developed the Gurmukhi script and composed the Vani of Guru Nanak in the form of Guruvani. He performed many other important works such as establishment of ' Manjhiyan' which were centres of Satsang preaching, Langar system, compilation of Guru Granth Sahib, etc. Guru Angad died in 1552 AD on the banks of river Beas. A disciple named Amar Das was made the new guru. He implemented the Langar system and Manjhi system in a rigid way, declared Baisakhi as a festival and opposed Sati system. Emperor Akbar also came to visit him at a place named Goindwal. This place is regarded as a pilgrimage due to Guru Amar Das.

Guru Ram Das (1574-81 AD)

He increased the number of religious centres and built a massive reservoir on 500 bighas of land which became renowned as " Amritsar". The prominent Sikh place "Amritsar" is named after it. The powerful and wealthy farmers of this place became the disciples of Sikhism. Akbar abolished the tax which was levied on Haridwar pilgrimage on the request made by Guru Ram Das. Maintaining friendship with Akbar, Ram Das increased the number of Sikhs. Ram Das started the practice of giving grants to the poor and needy by propagating Masand practice. Now, guru started to be called 'Sacchaa Paatshah' along with Satguru.

Guru Arjan Dev (1581-1606 AD)

He was the Fifth Sikh guru. He proved to be the real organizer of Sikhism. Guru enriched Sikhism with religious and political rights. Jahangir sentenced him to death as he had blessed his rebel Khusrow. Sikhism became financially independent due to his works such as compilation of Adi Granth, providing a practical form to Masand system, sending disciples to foreign countries for collection of grants etc. Arjan Dev's sacrifice of life transformed the Sikhs into a strong

military power. Arjan Dev's martyrdom was a landmark incident in history of Sikhism , due to which the peaceful Sikhs became the proponents of armed struggle. Sikhs now got transformed into a military union. Guru Arjan Dev's son Guru Hargobind Singh (1606-1645 AD) became the sixth Sikh Guru. He adopted two swords in place of Saili (a wooden chain). One sword represented a religious seat named "Piri" and the other sword represented a political designation named "Miri". In place of grants, he started receiving arms and ammunition. He built premises near each temple which had a tall seat. This was built in 1699 AD. This came to be known as "Akal Takht" . This emerged as the symbol of political sovereignty of the Sikhs. Jahangir tried to collect Guru Arjan Dev's financial dues from Guru Hargobind. On his refusal, Hargobind was imprisoned in a jail in Gwalior fort.

Although, Hargobind had started the work of giving military form to Sikhism, yet the later Guru Har Rai (1645-1661 AD) Hari Krishna (1661-1664 AD) and Tegh Bahadur (1664-1675AD) performed the work of propagating Sikhism only. When Tegh Bahadur refused to adopt Islam, Aurangzeb ordered to chop his head off. For him, it is said that he gave off his head, but not his religion. In Chandni Chowk at Delhi, his memorial is renowned as Sis Ganj Gurudwara.

Guru Gobind Singh (1675-1708AD)

Fig.2.22 Guru Gobind Singh

Fig.2.23 Golden Temple, Amritsar

He was the son of Guru Tegh Bahadur. He was the tenth and last guru of Sikhs. He developed training centres for training of arms and armaments to oppose atrocities of Aurangzeb in Punjab. Through this, the Sikh society became strong and capable. He defeated the Subedar of Lahore in the battle of Nadaun. He established the Khalsa order in 1699 AD to organize the Sikhs, remove their evils and inspire them with a renewed vigour and vitality. A new practice of Panch Pyarey, Pahul (Charnamrit) and Amrit Chakha (consumption of sweetened water) was started by the five sacrificing devotees. It was mandatory for Khalsa Sikhs to keep five "Kakaras", i.e. Kada, Kesh, Kutch, Kripan and Kangha. Due to the possibility of war with Aurungzeb, he opened a military centre in Anandpur Sahib in 1699 AD. Guru Gobind Singh continued to reform the Sikhs by keeping the ideal of religious freedom and national unity as his priority. Due to Mughal invasion in 1705 AD, he had to leave Anandpur. Both his sons named Jorawar Singh and Fateh Singh were imprisoned and buried alive in the walls of Sarhind fort as they had refused to convert their religion. His other two sons named Ajit Singh and Junjhar Singh became martyrs in the battle of Chamkor. In the struggle of Khudrana, forty Sikhs received martyrdom. They were called "Mukta" and the place became famous as "Muktasar".

Finally, Guru Gobind Singh reached Talwandi from Anandpur where he remained busy in composing literary works for one year. When he was going to visit Aurangzeb's court on his invitation, he got the news of Aurangzeb's death. Guru Gobind Singh died on 1st October, 1708 AD.

Banda Bairagi (1708-1716 AD)

Fig.2.24: Banda Bairagi

Madho Das Singh was the real name of Banda Bairagi (Bahadur). He was born in a Rajput family in 1670 AD and used to reside in an Ashram situated on the banks of river Godavari. While residing in the South , Guru Gobind Singh called himself as Guru's disciple (Banda) and was thus known as Banda Bahadur. With the permission of his Guru, he reached Punjab to complete, the remaining work of the guru. At that time, the people of Punjab were suffering due to the atrocities of Subedar Wazir Khan. All these people organized under the leadership of Banda. First, Banda invaded Sarhind. Wazir gave the slogan of 'Jihad' and urged all the muslims of Punjab to face Banda. Wazir khan was slain into pieces at a place called Chappar Chidi with the assistance of Mujhayal Jats of Majha. Banda established his rule in the region with an annual revenue income of thirty-six lakhs. Banda abolished the Zamindari System to provide relief to the farmers. Encourged by victory in Sarhind, the Sikhs established their control on Amritsar, Batala, Kalanor andPathankot. Mughal rule ended in the Punjab.

Mughal Emperor Bahadur Shah was forced to send his army to Punjab. Banda went into the Lohargarh fort which was situated in the hills. He began to attack Mughal rulers with guerilla strategy. Bahadur Shah I died on 28th February, 1712 AD. New Mughal ruler Farrukhsiyar sent an army against Banda under the leadership of Safdar Khan. Banda surrendered after being surrounded for a long time in Derababa. He was sentenced to death in Delhi along with hundreds of his assistants.

Banda Bairagi was a great warrior, courageous and protector of law. He bravely confronted the Mughals and infused new vitality among the Sikhs.

Ranjit Singh

Ranjit Singh was born on 13th November, 1780 AD in Gujranwala. His grandfather was a brave leader of Chakia Misl. He waged several wars against Ahmad Shah Abdali. His father's name was Man Singh, who died in 1792 AD. From 1792 to 1797 AD, administrative functions were performed by the administrative council run by his mother, his mother in law and Diwan Lakhpat Rai. In the end of the eighteenth century, the Sikh Misls (confederacies) were present in a divided form. Ranjit Singh took benefit of this situation and

Fig.2.25: Maharaja Ranjit singh

shortly he established a kingdom in Punjab on the basis of his strength. Ranjit Singh occupied Lahore in 1799 AD and occupied Bhangi Misl in Amritsar in 1805 AD. In 1803 AD, he also occupied

Akalgarh. In 1804 AD, he invaded Sahib Singh of Gujarat and defeated him. In 1808 AD, Ranjit Singh crossed river Sutlaj and conquered Faridkot,

Malerkotla and Ambala, but after the Treaty of Amritsar, he accepted the Malerkotla and Ambala, but after the Treaty of Amritsar, he accepted the states across Sutlaj River 1809 AD. Multan was occupied in 1818 AD and Peshawar

Important Points

1. Balban's principle of revenue has been famous. Balban believed that king is a representative of god on earth.
2. Babar composed his book in Turkish language. Its name is 'Babarnama' or Tuzk-e-Baburi. Later, it was translated into Persian language by Abdul Rahim Khan-I-Khana.
3. Reforms and buildings of Shershah are famous. Shershah is considered to be a patron and an administrative adviser to Akbar. He organized land measurement and revenue and enforced gallabakshi or batai, nashq, muktai or knakut and cash or zabti system. He built four big roads and several guest houses. His biggest road was from Sonar village of Bengal up to Peshawar (Pakistan) which exists even today. This road is renowked as Grand Trunk Road.
4. For discussion and debate on spiritual and religious matters, Akbar built the Ibadatkhana in Fatehpur Sikri in 1575 AD. He founded a religion named Din-e-Ilahi in 1582 AD after collecting good points of all the religions.
5. Mughal administration was a fusion of Indian (Bhartiya) and international system of administration. This was an Arabic-Persian system in Indian (Bhartiya) context.
6. The social reforms and Bhakti Movements of the 15th and 16th century strengthened the social unity even further. Relevant to the common people of the South, this religious movement was led by saints and intellectuals such as Tukaram, Ramnath, Eknath, waman Pundit and many others. This movement was against discrimination on the basis of social evils and it showed the path of devotion to attain salvation.
7. In 1674 AD, Shivaji enthroned himself in the form of an independent ruler on Raigarh fort and he also took the title of "Chhatrapati".
8. Nanak travelled through entire India (Bharat) giving the slogan "All humans are of the same caste". These travels initiated by him were called "Udasiyan". Teachings of Guru Nanak Dev included- belief in one god, importance pure action and urged the people to be truthful.
9. Aurangzeb got Teg Bahadur's head chopped off as he had refused to accept Islam. It is written in his context that "he sacrificed his head but he never sacrificed his religion". His memorial situated in Delhi is renowned as Sis Ganj Gurudwara.

EXERCISE

Very short Answer type Questions -

1. What is the other name of Ghulam dynasty?
2. On which post did Razia Sultana appoint Yakoot?
3. Who was the ruler who implemented the policy of "Iron and Blood"?
4. Who translated *Baburnama* into Persian Language?

5. Which ruler built the Grand Trunk Road?
6. When did the Second Battle of Panipat take place?
7. Which title was taken by Hemu?
8. When did the world famous Battle of Haldighati take place?
9. Which religion was formed by Akbar?
10. Who was the founder of the Bahamani Empire?
11. Which Sikh guru built the 'Akal Takht'?
12. Where was Shivaji coronated?
13. Hammir Chauhan was the ruler of which region?
14. Where is Amar Singh Gate situated?

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Write the Name of the five plans implemented by Muhammad Tughluq?
2. Explain 'Sikandar-e-Guz'?
3. Who adorned Farid with the title of 'Sher Khan' and why?
4. Give a brief introduction of Vijaynagar Empire'.
5. What do you know about Rao Shekha?
6. Who was Banda Bairagi?

Essay Type Questions

1. Write in detail about the administration of the Delhi Sultanate.
2. Elucidate the contribution of Sawai Jai Singh.
3. Write an essay on the Battle of Haldighati.
4. Describe the role of Shivaji in the emergence of Marathas.
5. Give an introduction of Guru Nanak Dev and mention the major teachings of Sikhism.

Chapter 3

Retaliation and Struggle of British Empire

The Western countries discovered colonies in different countries to fulfil their economic goals, and later on to set up their empire at these places. British Colonial Era in India (Bharat) began with treachery, atrocity and exploitation. From ancient times, India (Bharat) was a prosperous nation. Therefore, along with world's other countries, the Britishers always eyed India (Bharat) with good and were always in search of opportunities to exploit. The Britishers arrived in India (Bharat) in the form of traders, soon they transformed themselves into rulers. Due to the Britishers, India's (Bharat's) social, economic and cultural fabric and ethos system endured a significant setback.

Spirit of Independence from 1757 AD to 1857

AD

On 23rd September 1600 AD, some major British traders started "The Governor and Company of Merchants of London Trading in to the East Indies" in the form of a joint venture company called East India Company. On 31st December 1600 AD, Elizabeth I granted a Charter to this company, permitting it with the sole right to trade with the East. In 1612 AD, the East India Company established its first permanent trading hub in Surat. In Madras (Chennai) 1604 AD, it built Fort Saint George. In 1717 AD, it acquired a farman from Mughal Emperor Farrukhsiyar and obtained the ownership of land of 38 villages. In exchange of a small grant of three thousand rupees the emperor made the Company's goods duty free and also granted rebate in toll tax, he allowed the Britishers

Fig 3.1: Battle of Plassey

to issue Dastak (special letter of approval). The Company paid more attention to Bengal.

Before 1757 AD, the Britishers defeated other European companies and established their supremacy. After obtaining farman from the Mughals, East India Company increased its interference. Nawab of Bengal Alivardi Khan died on 10th April 1756 AD. His successor Siraj-ud-Daulah who was the son of his younger daughter became the Nawab. On the other hand, Shaukat Jung, the Governor of Purnia, also wished to become the Nawab. The Britishers took advantage of this conflict and started patronizing opponents of the Nawab. Many disputes regarding financial issues arose between the Nawab and the Britishers. As a result, Battle of Plassey took place on 23rd June, 1757 AD, in which the Britishers emerged victorious and the Nawab was killed. The Britishers appointed Mir Jafar as the Nawab of Bengal by which British sovereignty was established in Bengal.

In 1760 AD, when Mir Jafar was unable to fulfil financial obligations towards the British, the Britishers appointed Mir Kasim as the Nawab. After becoming the Nawab, Mir Kasim made efforts for administrative reforms in Bengal, but he was unable to do due to corruption and British interference. Disputes related to financial issues and grant of concessions began to rise between nawab Mir Kasim and the Britishers. As a result, the Battle of Buxar took place on 22nd October 1764, in which the Nawab was defeated and the Britishers emerged victorious. This battle proved to be a big blow for the Indians (Bhartiyas). After this battle, the Britishers got the revenue rights of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. As a result, Indian (Bhartiya) trade and industry experienced a setback.

Struggle of the Britishers against the Marathas and Mysore

In the eighteenth century, the Marathas were a major power in India (Bharat) but after the Battle of Panipat on 14th January, 1761 AD, the Maratha power suffered a setback. Only the Marathas were capable of stopping the Britishers from occupying India (Bharat). Now, the Britishers were searching for opportunities to establish their domination over the Marathas. In 1772 AD, after the death of Peshwa Madhavrao, his brother Narayan became the Peshwa but Raghunath Rao, who was the uncle of the previous Peshwa, desired to become the Peshwa.

The Britishers got a chance to divide the Maratha kingdom. On 6th March,1775 AD, Treaty of Surat

Fig. 3.2: Maratha struggle against the Britishers

took place between the Britishers and Raghunath Rao, according to which, the Britishers would help Raghunath Rao in becoming the Peshwa and the Peshwa would grant half of the Lagaan (land revenue) obtained from Bassien, Salset and Surat. In this way, ambition of Raghunath Rao and the Treaty made by him with Bombay (Mumbai) government made the struggle between the Marathas and Britishers unavoidable.

First Anglo-Maratha War-

Clashes took place between the Britishers and Marathas from 1775 AD to 1782 AD. In this struggle, the British army was defeated by the united Maratha army and they had to sign the humiliating Treaty of Badgaon in 1779 AD, according to which the Britishers were to give back the regions they had won previously from the Marathas and hand over Raghunath Rao to the Pune court. Besides, they had to pay Rs 41,000 as war damages.

Second Anglo-Maratha War

This struggle continued from 1802 to 1805 AD. The reason of this clash was the imperialistic ambitions of Lord Wellesley and the mutual conflict between Maratha chiefs. In this struggle, the Maratha chiefs fought independently against the Britishers and were defeated. Bhonsle struggled in South India (Bharat) and after being defeated in the Battle of Amargaon in 1803 AD, Treaty of Deogaon was signed with the Britishers on 17th December 1803 AD. Sindhia was defeated in the Battle of Lalwadi and the Treaty of Surji-Anjangaon was signed on 30th December 1803 AD. The struggle which took place between the Holkars and the Britishers remained indecisive and the Treaty of Rajghat inked between both the parties in 1806 AD, according to it the Holkars gave up their right of the Northern region of river Chambal and promised not to interfere in the internal matters of Rajputana.

Third Anglo-Maratha War-

On 13th June 1817 AD, the Britishers signed a humiliating treaty with the Peshwas and on 5th November 1817 AD, another humiliating treaty with the Sindhias. Both these treaties were signed to strengthen the supremacy of the Britishers in India (Bharat). To get rid of these humiliating bonds, the Marathas started a struggle. But the Peshwas lost at a place called Kirki, Bhonsle lost at Sitabardi and Holkars lost at Mahidpur. On 18th June 1818 AD, Malcolm entered into a treaty with the Peshwas. According to it the post of Peshwa was abolished and the Peshwa was sent to Bithoor with a sanctioned pension of eight lakhs, there he died in 1852 AD. In this way the Britishers defeated the Marathas through struggle, by diplomacy and their policy of divide and rule.

Anglo-Mysore War

In 1761 AD, Hyder Ali usurped the power from Mysore king Nandaraja and became omnipotent. After the death of Mysore king in 1776 AD, he proclaimed himself as the ruler. The Britishers regarded Hyder Ali as an obstacle in their imperialistic ambition. Therefore, the Britishers formed a union with the Marathas and the Nizam to counter Hyder Ali, but Hyder Ali diplomatically counterbalanced the Marathas during the war and allied the Nizam with him by promising him a grant of a large region. In 1767, Hyder Ali invaded the regions under British influence. Finally, the Britishers were defeated, and helpless Britishers signed the Treaty of Madras (Chennai) on 4th April, 1769 AD with Hyder Ali. According to the provisions of this treaty, they both returned each other's regions.

Second Anglo-Mysore War-

The Britishers wanted to avenge the humiliating defeat they suffered faced in their first struggle, while Hyder Ali was annoyed due to the occupation of the Britishers on Guntur. Finally, Hyder Ali joined hands with the Nizam and the Marathas and waged a war against the Britishers. The battle started in July, 1780. Initially, Hyder Ali was successful, but he died on 7th December, 1782 and his son Tipu Sultan had to take charge. Tipu continued the struggle for one year, and after being tired of the war, both the parties signed the Treaty of Mangalore on 11th March, 1784 AD. They returned each other's regions and the Britishers promised not to interfere in the internal issues of Mysore.

Third Anglo-Mysore War-

The Britishers wished to end the influence of Mysore while Tipu wanted to buy Dutch forts of Kagnnaur and Arcot in Kochin to defend Malabar. These were the reasons behind this war. But the king of Travancore who favoured the Britishers bought these forts and displeased Tipu. In April 1790 AD, Tipu attacked Travancore. But Cornwallis invaded Mysore with a huge army. Tipu faced him courageously but finally on 23rd February 1792 AD, he had to sign the Treaty of Srirangapatnam. Due to this treaty, half of Mysore went into the hands of the Britishers and Britishers were paid three crore `. as war indemnity. Tipu was forced to hand over his two sons as prisoners in the custody of the British.

Fourth Anglo-Mysore War -

In 1798 AD, Lord Wellesley came to India (Bharat) as the Governor of the East India Company. Wellesley was an imperialistic Governor general. He decided to eliminate Tipu completely or to dominate him completely. To fulfill this objective, he used the ploy of Subsidiary Alliance. Tipu Sultan rejected this Subsidiary Alliance. In April 1799 AD, he started a campaign against Tipu. The Srirangapatnam fort was occupied on 4th May, 1799 and Mysore lost its independence. Tipu attained martyrdom while fighting the Britishers.

Ango-Sikh Wars-

The ruler of Afghanistan made Ranjit Singh the Governor of the Punjab. Ranjit Singh wished to occupy the provinces situated on the East of Sutlej River, while the British wanted to establish sovereignty in this region. In February 1809 AD, Ochter Lony declared British occupancy on the eastern regions of river Sutlej and warned , if any invasion took place from Lahore side, it would be stopped through military power. The Maharaja was defeated and on 25th April, 1809 AD the Treaty of Amritsar was signed between Ranjit Singh and the Britishers, according to which, the Britishers established their control on the Eastern regions of Sutlej River.

Relations with the Britishers remained cordial during the reign of Ranjit Singh. But after the demise of Ranjit Singh on 27th June, 1839 AD, several groups were formed in the court due to greed of the chiefs. Khadak Singh became the ruler but he was not a skilled administrator, due to this the interference of Dogra brothers increased in the court. The Britishers took advantage of this maladministration and formed a basis for a war between the two.

First Anglo-Sikh War-

Imperialistic ambition of the Britishers and the policy of Divide and Rule was the cause of this war. After the first struggle, Lord Hardinge declared war against the Sikhs on 13th December, 1845 AD. On 10th February, 1846 AD, the Sikhs were completely defeated in the Battle of Sobraon. On 13th February, 1846 AD, the Britishers occupied Lahore. The Treaty of Lahore took place on 1st March, 1846 AD according to it, Jalandhar Doab was annexed in British Empire and the Sikhs were asked to pay an amount of one crore and fifty lakhs to the Britishers in the form of war indemnity. The strength of Sikh soldiers in the army was also reduced. Hardinge wanted to maintain control on the administration of the Punjab till Dalip Singh became an adult. Therefore, a supplementary Treaty of Bhaironval was signed on 22 December 1846 AD accordingly the Britishers became the owners of a part of the Punjab.

Second Anglo-Sikh War and Merger of Punjab in the British Empire -

During 1847-48, the Britishers introduced reforms that were anti-Sikh. The soldiers who were released from military services were dissatisfied. The rights of Rani Jinda were taken away and she wanted to avenge it. All these were the reasons of the Second Ango-Sikh war. Excessive internal interference of the Resident and Dalhousie's desire of British rule the Punjab were the factors that made the Second Anglo Sikh war unavoidable.

With Governor General Dalhousie's declaration of a final war against the Sikhs, the war started on 10th October, 1848 AD and ended on 13th March 1849 AD with the surrender of Sikhs like Sher Singh, Chattar Singh, Mulraj and others. Dalhousie annexed the Punjab in British India (Bharat) via a

Declaration of 29th March 1849 AD. With this Declaration, the Punjab lost its status of an independent state.

Freedom Struggle of 1857 -

Before 1857 AD, the East India Company faced opposition from the provincial states, princely estates, farmers and tribals continuously for a hundred years. But in 1857 AD, the Britishers had to face a united revolt of the Indians (Bhartiyas) for the first time. But the Britishers used diplomacy and the Policy of Divide and Rule to crush this struggle, However, they were forced to amend their policies.

Form of Freedom Struggle -

Historians differ regarding the form of this first struggle of Indian (Bhartiya) independence. On one hand the British and European historians call it as the "Sepoy Mutiny", reaction of the aristocrats or Muslim conspiracy, on the other hand, the Indian (Bhartiya) historians and scholars believe that starting from military unrest, this struggle took an extreme form of the first mass revolt. Later, this struggle took the form of nation-wide revolt and freedom struggle. Surendra Nath Sen wrote - "This struggle started in the name of religion and ended in the form of freedom struggle". In his book "War of Indian Independence", Dr Vinayak Damodar Savarkar has called this struggle as the Indian War of Independence.

Reasons of the Freedom Struggle

1. Economic Policy of the Britishers
2. Annexation Policy of Lord Dalhousie
3. British Policy of Empire Extension
4. Social, Religious and Military Causes

Start and Spread of Freedom Struggle

When the soldiers refused to use fat-coated cartridges, they were charged with indiscipline and were punished. On 29th March, 1857 AD, a soldier named Mangal Pandey revolted in Barrackpore Cantt and killed an officer. The British officers dismissed the 34th BNI Regiment and punished the Indian (Bhartiya) soldiers. In May 1857 AD, when 85 soldiers refused to use fat-coated cartridges in Meerut cantonment, they were sentenced to long term imprisonment by the military court. On 10th May, the soldiers revolted openly and assassinated their officers by shooting them. After freeing their fellow soldiers, they advanced towards Delhi. The soldiers occupied Delhi on I2th May, Bahadur Shah II was declared as the Indian (Bhartiya) Emperor. Losing control of Delhi was a big setback for the Britishers. The revolution soon spread to Lucknow, Allahabad, Kanpur, Bareilly, Varanasi, some parts of Bihar, Jhansi and various other regions.

In order to reoccupy Delhi, the Britishers called armies from the Punjab. The Indian (Bhartiya) soldiers fought fiercely but finally, in September 1857 AD, the Britishers reoccupied Delhi. A British officer John Nicholson was killed in the battle. The Emperor was imprisoned. The residents of Delhi were avenged. Lieutenant Hudson shot down two sons and a grandson of the emperor.

On 4th June 1857 AD, the revolution started in Lucknow, and the Indian (Bhartiya) soldiers surrounded the Residency in which a British resident Henry Lawrence died. Havelock and Outram made efforts to reoccupy Lucknow but were unsuccessful. In November 1857 C E, Chief Commander Sir Colin Campbell entered the city with Gorkha Regiment. In March 1858 AD, the Britishers reoccupied the city.

On 5th June 1857 AD, the revolutionaries occupied Kanpur and declared Nana Saheb as the Peshwa. The cantonment commander Sir Hugh Wheeler surrendered on 27th June. Tatya Tope favoured Peshwa Nana Saheb. On 6th December 1857, Sir Campbell reoccupied Kanpur. Tatya Tope fled to Jhansi.

Revolution took place in Jhansi in June 1857 AD. Rani Laxmi Bai was declared the ruler of the state. Sir Hugh Rose invaded Jhansi and reoccupied in April 1858 AD. After the Britishers occupied Jhansi, Rani and Tatya Tope proceeded towards Gwalior where the soldiers welcomed them. But the Scindias decided to remain loyal to the Britishers and took refuge in Agra. Gwalior was re-occupied by the Britishers in June 1858 AD. On 17th June 1858 AD, Rani Laxmi Bai received

martyrdom during confrontation with the British army. Tatya Tope managed to escape again but a Scindia lord caught him and handed him over to the Britishers, who hanged him.

In Bihar , this revolution was led by a landlord named Kunwar Singh of Jagdishpur. He was 80 years old. Kunwar Singh defeated the British officers Milmel, Colonel Dax, Marc and Major Douglas. In April 1858 AD, he reoccupied his estate. On 26th April 1858 AD, Kunwar Singh waged a war against the Britishers but was unsuccessful. In Bareilly, Bahadur Khan participated in the revolution. A revolution also took place in Varanasi but was crushed by Colonel Neil.

Although the number of revolutionaries in South India (Bharat) was comparatively lesser than that in North India (Bharat), yet in this great struggle, many revolutionaries of South India (Bharat) received martyrdom. Some others suffered atrocities and were imprisoned. The major leaders who led the struggle in South India (Bharat) include- Rang Bapu Ji Gupte (Satara), Sona ji Pundit, Ranga Rao Pange, Maulvi Sayyed Alauddin,, Bhim Rao and Mundargi Chota Singh (Karnataka), Annaji Phadnavis (Kolhapur), Ghulamgaus and Sultan Baksh (Madras), Aranagiri and Krishna (Chigalphut), Mulgabal Swami (Coimbatore), Mulla Sani, Vijay Kudarat (Kerala) and several others.

In this manner, the Freedom Struggle of 1857 AD spread across the entire nation and people from all regions, languages, religions, castes, including the farmers and landlords participated and cooperated with the soldiers.

Tribal Movements

On 23rd June 1757 AD, after the Battle of Plassey, the East India Company established its control over Bengal. After the Battle of Buxar in 1764 AD, the East India Company started the process of transforming India (Bharat) into a British colony. This process of colonization gave rise to several mass revolts, one of which was the tribal movement. The reasons behind these Tribal Movements include the tribals losing their independence, foreign interference in the nation's administration, administrative changes, demand of excessive taxes, decline in the economy of the country etc.

Tribal Rebellions in Bengal and Eastern India-

1. **Sanyasi Rebellion-** After the establishment of British rule in Bengal, the British officers strictly collected taxes even during a severe famine of Bengal in 1769 — 70 AD. The Sanyasis used to conduct religious travels along with farming from time to time. The Sanyasis were annoyed by the ban on travel for pilgrimages. There was a tradition of these Sanyasis to revolt against injustice and they joined hands with the masses to loot the hubs and treasuries of the Company. They fought bravely against the Company soldiers, but after a long campaign, Warren Hastings crushed this revolt. This is mentioned in a novel entitled "Anand Math" written by Bankim Chandra Chatterjee.

2. Kol Rebellion- The Kol tribe revolted against the exploitation born out of British mal administration, rigid land revenue system and misbehaviour of local administrative officers. This revolt became more intense in 1831 AD after their land was snatched away from their leaders i.e. the Mundas and allotted to some outsiders. This revolt was extremely violent. It spread to Ranchi, Singhbhum, Hazaribagh. Palamu and the Western regions of Manbhumi.

After a long and extended military campaign, peace was established. President of the Calcutta Council i.e. Metcalfe accepted that in this revolt, an anti-British spirit was evident.

3. Santhal Rebellion - Santhal rebellion was an

Fig. 3.3 : Kol Rebellion

important mass revolt against the British rule during 1855 - 1856 AD. Its leadership and unity was well organized. This revolt spread to Veerbhumi, Bakura, Singhbhurn, Hazaribagh, Bhagalpur and Munger. The reasons behind this revolt included misbehaviour with the Santhals by revenue officers, exploitation by the police and forceful collection of taxes by the landlords and moneylenders. This revolt was headed by two brothers i.e. Sidhu and Kanhu, who declared themselves independent and the end of the Company rule. After an extended military campaign, the situation came under control in 1856 AD and the Government was forced to form an independent and separate Santhal Pargana.

4. Bhil Rebellion- The Bhil tribals used to reside in Khandesh district of the Western Coast. From 1812 - 1819 AD, they started a revolt against their new masters- the British. The Company officers believed that this revolt was promoted by Peshwa Baji Rao II and his representative Trikbakaji Dangalia. The actual reasons were problems associated with farming and fear of the new government. Several troops of British army were used to crush this revolt. Under the leadership of Sevram, they revolted again in 1825 AD followed by another revolt in 1846 AD.

5. Ramosi Rebellion- Ramosi was a tribe residing on the Western Ghats. They were unhappy with the British administration system and rule. In 1822 AD, its chief Chittar Singh revolted and looted the region around Satara. Revolts again took place in 1825- 26 AD. The British became successful in crushing this revolt only after employing a massive military force.

Contribution of Revolutionary Organizations in the Freedom Movement -

Indians (Bhartiyas) never accepted British sovereignty whole heartedly. The (Bhartiyas) Indians started to struggle from 1757 AD till they attained independence. A massive revolt which took place in 1857 AD proved to be unsettling for the British. From the end of the nineteenth century to the beginning of the twentieth century, till the time they became independent, the revolutionary martyrs wrote the history of Indian independence with their blood.

The reasons behind the rise of revolutionary movement were the same due to which the extremists emerged in the movement. In 1857 AD,

after a tough struggle, the Britishers re-established their empire. But the retaliatory policies of Lord Curzon forced the Indians (Bhartiyas) to start a revolutionary movement. The pride of every Indian (Bhartiya) suffered a setback by the blow of partition of Bengal in 1905 AD. The revolutionary movement was born due to the frustration which was the result of the British atrocities and incapable leaders who remained unsuccessful in providing capable leadership to the masses.

The revolutionaries believed that the essential elements for nationalism such as religious and political freedom, moral values and Indian (Bhartiya) culture- all will be destroyed under the foreign rule. Therefore, all the revolutionaries had one and the only objective of ousting the foreigners out of the country and making India (Bharat) free.

Revolutionary Movement In Maharashtra-

Revolutionary activities started in Maharashtra by a government employee named Vasudev Balwant in 1876 AD. He resigned from the government job to throw off the British yolk through delivering provocative speeches in 1876 AD. Due to Phadke's speeches, unrest began to spread. Phadke was arrested and sent to Adan (Arabia) jail in 1879 AD, where he died in 1889.

Assassination of Rand by Chapekar Brothers-

Damodar Hari Chapekar, Balkrishna Hari Chapekar and Vasudeo Hari Chapekar from Pune (Maharashtra) guided the revolutionary movement. In 1893 AD, they formed the "Hindu Dharma Sanrakshan Sabha". Under this, Shivaji and Ganesha festivals began to be celebrated, as a result the masses were infused with the spirit of nationalism and joy. In 1897 AD, plague spread in the form of an epidemic in Pune, but the plague commissioner Rand and Lieutenant Ayerst were busy spreading terror amongst the masses instead of helping the plague victims. Both officers were corrupt, despotic and infamous for hatching conspiracies. The city of Poona was terrified by their atrocities, therefore, the Chapekar Brothers assassinated both of them on 22nd June 1897 AD. The Chapekar Brothers were arrested and hanged.

Shyamji Krishna Verma and Establishment of India House in London –

Shyamji Krishna Verma was a resident of Kathiawar in western India (Bharat). He was educated in Cambridge University and became a barrister. After returning to India (Bharat), he was hurt by the corrupt nature of British political residents and he firmly decided to make India (Bharat) free by making London his workplace. Shyamji Krishna Verma was the first to take an initiative of setting up a revolutionary organization for freedom outside the country. In 1905 AD, he formed the Bharat Swashasan Samiti which is renowned by the name of India House. He published a monthly magazine called "India Socialism" and started six fellowships of ` one thousand each for the Indians (Bhartiyas) who went abroad. Shortly, India House became the centre of revolution for Indians (Bhartiyas) who lived in London. Revolutionaries such as V. D. Savarkar, Hardayal and Madan Lal Dhingra became its members. Noticing the activities of Shyamji Verma, the British government started taking action against him. He left England and went to Paris and continued his revolutionary activities from there.

Vinayak Damodar Savarkar

Veer Savarkar was a great revolutionary, nationalist and an organizer. His lifetime sacrifice for the freedom of the nation cannot be described in words. The public adorned Savarkar with the title of Veer. He was addressed as Veer Savarkar. Veer Savarkar was born on 28th May, 1883 in Bhagur village in Maharashtra. In 1901, after passing the Secondary Examination, he got admission in Fergusson College where he came in contact with Lokmanya Tilak.

Fig. 3.6: Veer Savarkar

During the Partition of Bengal, he formed an organization named “Mitra Mela" with his companions and made a bonfire of imported clothes. For this reason, he was rusticated from the college. Savarkar was the only Indian (Bhartiya) revolutionary who got two life imprisonments from the British government. British government had imposed a ban on his book,“The Indian War of Independence" even before it could be published. This book was later introduced in India (Bharat) with different titles. In 1904 AD, he established –“Abhinav Bharat". Savarkar was the first person who didn't term the revolution of 1857 as a revolt, but instead, called it as the First War of Indian (Bhartiya) Independence. Savarkar spent a long time in the Cellular Jail of Andaman. He become ill due to the hard work. These suffering from the upset are in the government before the mercy petion sent- First mercy petition was send on 30th August1911next on 04th Novermber 1913. In this letter Savarkar mention himself as a 'Prodial son'. He mention in his letter that he ready to serve the government in any capacity they like, his third mercy petition was send in 1917 & forth mercy petition was on 1st February 1918 after this petition. In 1920 the Indian National Congress and leaders a such as Mahatma Gandhi, Bal Gangadhar and Patel demanded his unconditional release. In 1924 British governement accepted Savarkar mercy petition & release him from Sulular Jail and 2nd May 1921 under stringent restrications & send to Ratangiri and letter to the Yerwada Central Jail. The restrication was that he will not participat in politics upto the five year. After finally released from jail in 1924 he joined Hindu Mahasabha in 1937 he became president of Hindi Mahasabha Savarkar comparing for keeping India to be a Hindu nation. At the time of second world war he asked Hindus to stay active in the work effort & not disobey the government he given slogan- "Hinduize all political and Militarize Hinduodom." Savarkar urges Hindus to enlist in the armed forces to learn the art of war.

When congress launched the Quit India Movement in 1942, Savarkar criticised it. He also assailed the British proposal for transfer of power. Assissnation of Mahatma Gandhi on 30th January 1948 Savarkar was also arrested on 7th February 1948. He was charged with the murder compracy to murder and abetment to murder. But due to lack of evidence Savarkar was acquitted.

Revolutionary Movement in Bengal

Mr P. Mishra started the revolutionary movement in Bengal by forming an organization named "Anushilan Samiti”. Political renaissance arose in Bengal after its partition. Now, the objective of this movement was not just forcing the Britishers to take back the order of partition, but instead, getting India (Bharat) freed from the clutches of the Britishers. In 1905 AD, Barindra Kumar Ghosh had written a book entitled "Bhawani Mandir" and gave detailed information about organizing various revolutionary activities. Magazines such as "Yugantar" and "Sandhya”- also started publishing anti-British opinions in their content. Another book named "Mukti Kaun Pathe" urged the soldiers to provide arms and ammunition to Indian revolutionaries.

Peasants' Movements

The ancient agricultural system was gradually destroyed by the new administrative system and agricultural policies formed of the Britishers. This new British system gave rise to a new breed of land owners which emerged in rural India (Bharat). The farmers continued to get trapped in the clutches of the moneylenders and traders due to excessive burden of government taxes and taxes imposed by the landlords. This new class of landlords and the outsider middlemen formed by the British government, greedy and corrupt moneylenders together made the life of common Indian (Bhartiya) farmer a miserable one. By the 19th century, the Indian (Bhartiya) farmers came to such a position that they wanted to confront ,break or weaken the hold or British administration, local exploiters and capitalists.

Reasons of Peasants' Movements

1. Administrative land revenue policies of the British Government.
2. Continuously occurring famines for a long time.
3. Extracting excessive land revenue from

farmers by the zamindars and moneylenders.

1. Preparation of fake documents by the traders and moneylenders.

Major Peasants' Movements-

1. Rebellion of indigo Farmers in Bengal- This revolt was against the British monarch. In this revolt, the farmers were assisted by zamindars, moneylenders, rich peasants and the rural folk. In the 19th century, some retired European officers obtained land from the zamindars of Bengal and Bihar and began growing indigo. They forced the farmers to grow indigo in conditions, which were unfavourable to the farmers. In April 1860 AD, the Barasat subdivision and all the farmers from Pawna and Nadia district went on strike and refused to grow indigo. This strike spread in various parts of Bengal. The government was forced to appoint an Indigo Commission in 1860 AD to avoid any major chaos.

2. Southern Rebellion during 1875 AD- The major causes of this revolt included-excessive land revenue, reduction in the price and collection of excessive tax from Maratha farmers. The greedy Marwari and Gujarati moneylenders manipulated the accounts by forging the signatures of illiterate farmers, through which the civil courts gave verdict in favour of these moneylenders and farmers got dispossessed of their land. In 1875 AD, the farmers attacked the houses as well as shops of the landlords in Poona and burnt those documents which the moneylenders had forced the farmers to sign. Later on this revolt spread to Ahmednagar and this could only be crushed after employing massive police and military force. To determine the reasons behind the riots, the government appointed a Deccan Riots Commission and passed the Agriculturists Relief Act in 1879 AD. According to the provision of this Act, if the farmers were unable to repay their loans, they could not be arrested or imprisoned.

3. Peasant Revolt in the Punjab- The reason of farmers' movement in the Punjab was the huge debts owed by common farmers and transfer of farming land into the hands of non-farming community. To curb this land transfer, the

government introduced the Punjab Land Alienation Act, 1900.

4. Peasant Revolt in Champaran- In Champaran district of Northern Bihar, Europeans used to exploit the indigo farmers. To oppose it , Gandhiji, with the help of Babu Rajendra Prasad evaluated the actual position. Farmers were asked to organize a non-violent movement, but later, an enquiry committee was constituted in June 1917. On the basis of its report, the Champaran Agrarian Act was passed. According to the provision of this Act, the farmers could not be forced to grow indigo.

5. Peasant Revolt in Kheda- This movement was against the Bombay government. In 1918 AD, the crops were damaged during the spring season. Even then, the Bombay government continued to demand taxes, while it was made clear in the land revenue laws that if the harvest was below 25 percent of the normal harvest, then the land

revenue will be waived off completely. But the government refused to provide this rebate. Gandhiji organized the farmers and performed Satyagraha. Finally, the government was forced to accept the demands made by Gandhiji.

6. Other Organized Efforts- Akhil Bharatiya Kisan Sabha was constituted in Lucknow, on 11th April 1936 AD to run a peasant movement on an all- India (Bharat) level. The Kisan sabha organized a movement opposing the land system of landlords in Andhra Pradesh. They also organized a movement against Bakasht land (lands claimed by the landlords from tenants who had held it for innumerable years) in 1936 AD in Bihar. On l8th October 1937 AD, the Kisan Sabhas celebrated the Farmers' Day against the atrocities committed towards the Satyagrahis.

Political Movements (1857 — 1919 AD)

After the failure of the freedom struggle of 1857 AD, the leadership of the freedom struggle came in to the hands of the modern educated landlords and aristocratic class from India (Bharat). These sections used to send reminders and applications to the Parliament for getting their demands fulfilled. They organized the educated class and made people aware of the atrocities committed by the

Britishers. The people who initially led these struggles had faith in the moderate class from England. These people wanted to convince moderates to understand the actual scenario in India (Bharat), to make them fulfil the ambitions of Indians (Bhartiyas) and prepare them to implement Constitutional and administrative reforms. Along with this, they also wanted to spread the movement by making aware the masses about the exploitation and atrocities of the Britishers and to unite people from all parts, sections and religions of the country.

Spread of Political Renaissance after 1858 AD-

Political ambitions of the Indians (Bhartiyas) started gaining momentum gradually. They desired not only to be employed in the Civil Services, but also to control it. A demand of government elected by the people and responsible towards the people started rising. In 1868 AD, one such demand was made by Kristo Das Pal who was the editor of a leading newspaper named "Patriot" published from Bengal. In 1874 AD, in an article titled "Swarajya", he talked about provision of a Constitutional form of government by Indians (Bhartiyas) and for Indians (Bhartiyas) in India (Bharat).

The political organizations which were present in India (Bharat) at that time were not ready for this kind of progressive demand and the struggle to achieve it. For it, several scholars and intellectuals from Bengal formed the Indian League in 1875. Its objective was to induct the feeling of nationalism and political awareness among the Indians (Bhartiyas). This was the first political organization which had been formed through public awareness.

Indian (Bhartiya) Association

This association was formed under the leadership of Surendranath Banerjee in 1876 AD in Albert Hall in Calcutta. Around 800 delegates participated in this event when it was decided that the organization will form a forum of people with similar political ideas and will unite the masses.

Indian National Congress-

Indian National Congress was the outcome of the political development which took place in India (Bharat) after 1858 AD. It was formed by Allen Octavian Hume, a retired British officer of Indian Civil Services. The objective of British government behind its formation was to collect information about the mindset of the Indians (Bhartiyas) and to form such an association in which the political leaders get a chance for venting their anger, so that the British government could prevent them from making concerted efforts to oust the Britishers from the country. On 28th December 1885 AD, its first meeting was held at Gokul Das Tejpal Sanskrit College in Mumbai under the Presidentship of Womesh Chandra Banerjee. In it 72 representatives participated. Four objectives behind the formation of the Congress were highlighted in the meeting as:

1. To provide an opportunity of mutual

interaction to people who were employed in the cause or nation's development.

2. Discussing the programmes for the coming years.

3. Keeping full faith and loyalty towards the British Empire and opposing the government's works which are performed against the principles framed by the Parliament of England.

4. This organization will indirectly take the form of Indian (Bhartiya) Parliament and give a suitable answer to the belief of the Britishers that the representatives elected by India (Bharat) are incapable to handle the administration. The period of Congress can be divided into two phases. The first phase from 1885 to 1905 AD is regarded as the period of Moderate politics or political beggary. The second phase from 1905 to 1919 AD is regarded as the period of Extremists or extremist politics.

In the Congress, moderate leaders of the first phase such as Dadabhai Naoroji, Pherozeshah Mehta, Dinshaw Wacha, Vyomesh and Surendranath Banerjee dominated the political horizon of the Congress. These people believed in moderate and reasonable politics. They interpreted their politics as the fusion of Liberalism and moderation. These people advocated end of religious and caste discrimination, professed equality among human beings, equality before law, extension of civil liberties of the masses and development of representative organizations. In this period, there was a predominance of wealthy, middle income group, and intellectuals that included doctors, engineers, journalists and litterateurs in the Congress. The representatives of Congress of this period hailed from big cities and had no connection with the masses. The moderates were in favour of maintaining and strengthening the British Empire. They feared that if the Britishers left India (Bharat), it would cause mismanagement. Colonial rule was a symbol of peace and good system according to them and they believed that it was important for India (Bharat) that the Britishers should remain here for a long time. The moderates believed that the Britishers were just and they would do justice with India (Bharat). The complaints of Indians (Bhartiyas) were due to British employees or because the Britishers did not have thorough knowledge about problems of Indians (Bhartiyas). This was the reason that the moderates paid more attention to cowards propaganda in England. In this period, the Congress did not demand independence for India (Bharat), rather they just demanded for certain concessions.

Second Phase: Beginning of Extremist National Movement

During the end of the Nineteenth century and the beginning of the Twentieth century, the influence of people with extremist views began to rise in the Congress. Split began in the Congress at the time when a conflict took place between the extremist reformers on Lokmanya Tilak's issue of social reforms. Tilak was of the view that there can be no social reform, development, purposeful education and provision of a life full of nationalism without Swarajya (independent rule). Four major Congress leaders namely Lokmanya Tilak, Bipin Chandra Pal, Aurobindo Ghosh and Lala Lajpat Rai headed this movement. In the programmes of the extremist movement, emphasis was laid on renouncing imported goods, adopting Indian (Bhartiya) goods, nationalistic education and Satyagrah. They also emphasized on promoting Indian (Bhartiya) industries so that the Indians (Bhartiyas) could get an opportunity to work and serve. They also believed that instead of government educational institutions, a national education policy must be formulated and the involvement of students in service of the nation was required.

Home Rule Movement-

From 1915AD, Mrs. Annie Besant declared to form the Home Rule League on the Model of Irish Home Rule League. In 1916, Tilak established his own Home Rule League in Belgaon. Both the organizations used to work in unison. Their objective was to spread the demand of freedom from British Empire for the people.

Political Movements from 1919 to 1947 AD-

Rowlatt Act- After the end of First World War, the British government assured that the Indians (Bhartiyas) would be given maximum benefits. But the reforms made after the end of the war were unsatisfactory, and on the contrary, economic exploitation, strict restrictrictions on press and other exploitative measures were introduced. The Indian (Bhartiyas) people were standing firmly in opposition to the Britishers. The government feared a conspiracy and finally it formed a committee under the Chairmanship of Sidney Rowlatt in 1917 AD. The Bill formed by this committee was passed by the legislature on 17th March, 1919 AD. Under this Act, any person could be arrested based on doubt. Such a person would have no appellate, argumentative, or legal aid rights. This was called a Black Law (Kala Kanoon).

Jallianwala Bagh Massacre-

On 13th April, 1919 AD, an assembly was organized at Jallianwala Bagh to protest against the Rowlatt Act. 20,000 women, men and children gathered there. General Dyer entered the assembly and ordered to open fire on the public. Firing continued till the cartridges were finished. According to official statistics, 379 people were killed, but the Congress committee claimed that number of people killed was around 1000.

Non-Cooperation and Khilafat Movement-

The Khilafat Movement was organized by Indian (Bhartiya) Muslims in honour of the Khalifa of Turkey. The Khalifa of Turkey was the religious chief of the Muslim society. This movement created the atmosphere of national unity in India (Bharat). Khilafat Day was celebrated in the country on 17th October, 1919 AD. Gandhiji also participated in this movement and returned the honour of "Kesar-e-Hind". This movement ended on 10th August, 1920 along with the Treaty of Sevres. According to the provisions of this treaty, Turkey was divided and declared as a Democratic nation and the post of Khalifa was abolished.

Non-Cooperation Movement -

Gandhiji was deeply pained by incidents such as Rowlatt Act, Jallianwalla Bagh massacre, Hunter Committee's report, partition of Turkey, abolition of the post of Khalifa, etc. In 1920 AD, the Congress passed a resolution to non-cooperate with the unjust government. Under this resolution, there was a provision of renouncing government titles, renouncing the legislatures, courts, government educational institutions, discard imported goods and not to pay taxes. On the contrary, people had to keep themselves in discipline, national educational institutions were to be established, mutual conflicts had to be resolved through panchayats and hand woven clothes were to be used. In 1921 AD, around 30,000 people went to jail under this movement. This was for the first time in the history of India (Bharat) when so many people participated for the cause of an independent nation. But when the movement was at its peak, on 5th February, 1922 AD, police committed atrocities on the peaceful march which took place at Chauri Chaura in Gorakhpur. As a result, public set the police station on fire, 21 sepoys and 1 inspector were burnt to death. Observing that the movement was transforming into a violent one, Gandhiji called it off on 12th February, 1922 AD. Major leaders of the country were surprised by the decision taken by Gandhiji. Subhash Chandra Bose interpreted this as extremely painful. Motilal Nehru and C. R. Das formed the Swaraj Party under the banner of Congress, through which they participated in Vidhan Parishads and hampered the smooth functioning of the government.

Simon Commission

For evaluating the working of reforms of the Indian (Bhartiya) government in 1919 AD, the British government formed a Commission in 1927 AD under the Chairmanship of Sir John Simon. There were 7 members in the commission but none of them was an Indian (Bhartiya). When this commission reached Mumbai on 3rd February, 1928 AD, it was rigidly opposed by the people. In Lahore, it was initially opposed under the leadership of Lala Lajpat Rai. The police lathi charged the mob, consequently Lala Lajpat Rai suffered injuries on head and died within a month. This commission gave its report in 1930. There was

no mention of establishment of colonial self rule in the report.

Civil Disobedience Movement-

In the Congress meeting held on 30th December 1929 AD, the Congress passed the resolution to obtain complete Swaraj under the leadership of Jawaharlal Nehru. In order to achieve the objective of complete Swaraj, Gandhiji, along with 78 companions, marched on foot towards Dandi village situated on the sea coast in Gujarat, around 358 kms away from Sabarmati Ashram. On 6th April, 1930 he reached Dandi and broke the law by making salt without any order. Through this movement, Gandhiji urged the people to form salt without permit, he urged women to perform Dharna in front of liquor shops, opium outlets and shops that sold imported goods. He also asked people to burn imported goods, use charkha and abolish untouchability. He asked the students to leave government schools and colleges and urged the government employees to resign from their jobs. This movement spread rapidly across the country. People across the entire nation participated in strikes, campaigns and boycotted imported goods. A unique feature of this movement was the participation of women in large numbers. In a short period, 60,000 people were imprisoned.

On 5th March, 1931, Gandhi-Irwin Pact took place between the government and the Congress. The Viceroy declared that the objective of development of Indian (Bhartiya) Constitution is giving a Dominion Status to India (Bharat). Gandhiji participated in the Second Round Table conference which was called for Indian (Bhartiya) Constitutional reforms. He returned unsatisfied and started the Second Civil Disobedience Movement again in 1932 AD. In 1933 AD, Gandhiji accepted the failure of his movement and resigned from the membership of the Congress.

Personal (Vyaktigat) Satyagraha-

The Second World War had started. Strikes and campaigns were taking place in the country to oppose India's (Bharat's) inclusion in the war. At that time, Gandhiji proposed to perform a personal satyagraha instead of a satyagraha,, which was accepted by the Congress. On 17th October, 1940, the Congress started a personal Satyagraha Movement. It was decided that the Satyagrahis selected by Gandhiji will proceed towards public places one by one, give speeches against the war and get arrested. Vinoba Bhave was the first Satyagrahi who was sentenced to three months imprisonment. Jawaharlal Nehru was the second, while Brahmadutt was the third Satyagrahi. 30,000 people were arrested in this Personal Satyagraha.

Quit India (Bharat) Movement

Due to failure of Cripps Mission, fear of Japanese attack on India (Bharat), decisions in Wardha Congress meeting of I4th July 1942, Gandhiji's proposal of "Quit lndia" (Bharat) was accepted by the All India Congress Committee in its meeting, which was held in Mumbai on 8th August, 1942. Gandhiji said, "I am giving a short mantra to all of you- 'Do or Die'. We all will either get India (Bharat) freed or die for this cause, but we will not remain alive to be dominated". Even before the dawn of 9th August, Gandhiji was arrested along with several other Congress leaders and the Congress was declared to be an illegal or invalid association.

No action plan was fixed for this movement. In this movement, it was decided to observe peaceful strikes, organize public assemblies, refuse to pay land revenue and non-cooperate with the government. Gandhiji called this movement the Final Struggle. Therefore, the public reacted in the manner they thought it to be right. A self generated movement spread in the whole country. Strikes and refusal to perform work in factories, schools and colleges. police stations, post offices and railway stations were attacked. Most of the leaders of Congress Socialist Party managed to save themselves from being arrested. These leaders remained underground and continued the movement. Among such leaders, Jayaprakash Narayan, Ram Manohar Lohia, Achyut Patwarrdhan, Ramanand Mishra and S. M. Joshi were prominent. Jayaprakash Narayan played an important role in this movement. Aruna Asaf Ali

led this movement successfully in Mumbai. The revolutionaries of this movement were also successful in forming a parallel government at various cities, towns and villages. This movement was also crushed. During firing in this movement, more than 10000 people were killed. The revolting villages had to pay a large amount as a fine. The government blamed Gandhi ji for the violence that took place during this movement.

This movement paved the path for independence of India (Bharat). It infused the spirit of bravery, excitement, strength and sacrifice for the nation among the Indians (Bhartiyas). A new generation of leadership emerged in the country, due to which the strength and power to resist the colonial rule increased among the people. Now, India (Bharat) demanded nothing less than complete independence.

Tribal, Peasant and Praja Mandal Movements in Rajasthan-

Tribal and Peasant movements in Rajasthan-

Political awareness began in Rajasthan with the efforts of the farmers and tribals. When exorbitant burden of taxes was imposed on farmers, they opposed and challenged the contemporary political system. In tribal areas of Rajasthan, such movements were self-motivated, and became a source of inspiration for the future movements which had started against injustice and unnecessary exploitation. Bhils used to reside in the Southern regions of Rajasthan, mainly Dungarpur, Mewar, Pratapgarh, Banswara and Kushalgarh. Bhil is an extremely traditional tribe which is aware of its social and economic status. When their traditional rights were violated, they started opposing the rulers and the Britishers.

Bhagat Movement

For social and moral upliftment of the Bhils, Govind Guru established the Samp Sabha and formed the Bhagat Movement to keep them in Hinduism. The administration was concerned about the social renaissance sponsored by the Samp Sabha among the Bhils from Mewar, Dungarpur, Idar, Gujarat, Vijaynagar and Malwa. Therefore, it forced the Bhils not to participate in the Bhagat Movement. When the Bhils were forced to perfom Begar (forceful work in fields) and deprived them of their Fundamental Rights, they began a movement. The Britishers felt that the objective of this social reform movement run by Govind Guru is the formation of a Bhil state. Govind Guru was arrested by Dungarpur state in April 1913, but released later. Govind Guru proceeded towards Mangarh hills with his companions. In October 1913 AD, through a message, urged the Bhils to assemble on Mangarh hill. The Bhils assembled in large numbers with arms and ammunition. Scared by the unity of Bhils, the British sent a massive army, that reached the Mangarh hills and opened fire on the Bhils in order to disperse them. According to official estimates, 1500 Bhils were killed.Thus, the Bhagat Movement was crushed mercilessly and Govind Guru was sentenced to 10 years of imprisonment.

Eki Movement

Even after crushing the Bhagat Movement, the government policies against the Bhils continued. In 1917, the Bhils and Garasiyas jointly sent a letter to the Maharana and expressed their protest against the exploitative policies and begar. When the expected results were not obtained, the Bhils began a movement under the leadership of Motilal Tejawat. This movement came to be known as Eki Movement.

Peasant Movements in Rajasthan-

The political, social and economic structure of Rajasthan was feudalistic. This structure was three-tier, in which rulers, jagirdars and farmers were included. This system was based upon the mutual coordination of all these people. Till the end of the 19th century, their relations remained cordial, but after that the scenario of Rajasthan began to change. As a consequence, different parts of Rajasthan had to face several peasant movements. Following were the major reasons behind these movements:

1. Due to the influence of the Britishers, the rulers did not pay attention to their subjects. The rulers and the jagirdars assumed that their mere existence depended on the British rule. Therefore, the

dependence of the rulers on the jagirdars and the dependence of the jagirdars on the farmers continued to weaken.

2. In addation to with collecting excessive revenue, the Begar and Lagaan taken from farmers was increasing significantly. In some states, the number of such taxes was even more than 300.

3. In this period, the number of agricultural labourers increased significantly as many people depended on agriculture after being displaced from other occupations. Due to this increase in number of agricultural labourers, the jagirdars started acting more arrogantly.

4. The swing out in agricultural prices was not beneficial for the farmers. Due to decline in prices the savings of the farmers were reduced, whereas, in case of increase in prices, they could not get any profit because the jagirdars used to collect land revenue from them in the form of commodities.

5. After adopting the British administration system, the kind and paternal outlook of the jagirdars towards the farmers changed.

Bijolia Peasant Movement (Bhilwara)

Bijolia Peasant Movement was the pioneer of other peasant movements of Rajasthan. Most of the farmers of this region were from Dhakar caste. In 1894 AD, till the time of death of Rao Govind Das of Bijolia, the farmers were not in extreme opposition of Jagirdars. But in 1894 AD, the newly appointed jagirdar Krishna Singh (Kishan Singh) introduced several changes in the thikana (estate) and jagir (ancestral) policies. In his time, around 87 per cent of the income of the farmers was taken away by the jagirdars through 84, taxes and revenues. Even after this, they were forced to do additonal begar.

It 1897 AD, during the death feast of Gangaram Dhakar's father in village Girdharpur, thousands of farmers openly discussed their gievances and informed the Maharana of Mewar about their condition. After hearing it, the Maharana appointed an assistant revenue officer named Hamid Hussain to examine the complaints related to land revenue and begar. Hamid Hussain reported against the estate in Mahkamah Khas, but without any result. The state instructed the estate to reduce merely one or two taxes. This increased the influence of Rao Krishna Singh.

The situation of Bijolia farmers was already miserable due to various types of taxes and severe famine (Chhappania Akal) of 1899- 1900 AD. Even after this, Rao Krishna Singh imposed a new tax named "Chanwari tax" on the farmers in 1903 AD. Under this, every person had to deposit five rupees. in the estate treasury on the occasion of his daughter's marriage. Chanwari tax was not only a form of economic burden on the residents of Bijolia, but also extremely offensive from social view point. The farmers opposed this tax peacefully and did not get their daughters married for two years. Due to the opposition of the farmers, Rao was forced to remove Chanwari tax, collecting $2/5^{th}$ part from the produce in lieu of the estate, and stopped sending armed men along with the Alahakars who used to collect the produce (Kunta).

In 1906 AD, the newly appointed jagirdar Prithvi Singh of Bijolia not only ended the existing old concessions, but also imposed a new tax named "Talwar Bandhai" on his subjects. During the time of Prithvi Singh, when plunder and exploitation had reached its height, in 1913 AD, under the leadership of Sadhu Sitaramdas, Fatehkaran Charan and Brahmadeo, the farmers refused to plough the fields in the jagir region. As the fields of jagir region remained uncultivated, the estate incurred huge loss. After this, the atrocities and exploitation committed by the thakurs increased. Fatehkaran and Brahmadeo got terrified by all this and left Bijolia and Sadhu Sitaramdas was deprived of his job in the library.

After being invited by Sadhu Sitaramdas, Vijay Singh Pathik led the movement and in 1917 AD on the day of Haryali Amavasya, he formed an association named "Uparmal Panch Board" in village Bairisal and under this banner the movement was inaugurated. Impressed by the bravery and unity of the farmers, Tilak not only wrote a newspaper column in his newspaper "Kesari", but also wrote a letter to Maharana Fateh

Singh of Mewar that the royals of Mewar made immense sacrifices for independence. He further stated that "You yourself are the worshipper of freedom and it is a dishonor that the worshippers of freedom in your state are being put in the prison". On one hand, in order to revive the Bijolia farmers, a song "Panchira" composed by Manikyalal Verma was sung, while on the other hand, Pragyachakshu Bhanwarlal Swarnakar was also going from village to village to infuse the flame through his poems. With the objective of inducting the spirit of nationalism in Bijoliya's young men, Pathik established an association named "Uparmal Sewa Samiti" and published a Panchayat paper named "Uparmal Ka Danka". In order to promote the movement across India (Bharat), Pathik sent a silver bracelet to Ganesh Shankar Vidyarthi, the editor of newspaper 'Pratap' published from Kanpur on behalf of the farmers. Ganesh Shankar Vidyarthi accepted the bracelet and promised to support the movement. 'Pratap' newspaper provided a national identity to Bijolia Peasant Movement. The representation of public movement of Mewar in Premchand's novel 'Rangbhoomi' is a reflection of the Bijolia Peasant Movement itself.

In April 1919 AD, the Udaipur state government formed a commission under Chairmanship of Mandalgarh hakim Bindulal Bhattacharya in order to listen to the complaints of Bijolia farmers. The commission advocated various recommendations for the benefit of the farmers but as the Mewar government didn't pay attention to them, the movement continued, to function as usual. Officers of the Foreign Ministry of Indian (Bhartiya) government believed that a quick alliance should be made with the Bijolia Kisan Panchayat, otherwise the peasant movement may take a violent form in Rajputana. In order to pacify and weaken down the Bijolia Movement, a high level committee was formed under the Chairmanship of Robert Holland the AGG of Rajasthan. In February 1922, Robert Holland held a meeting with the farmers and waived off 35 taxes. Unfortunately, due to complications in the estate, this alliance could not take a permanent form.

In 1927, in opposition to the new arrangement of high rates of land revenue, the farmers left their cultivable land as advised by Vijay Singh Pathik to pressurize the state government. But contrary to the farmers' belief, when the estate sought to auction this land, it got new farmers who were ready to claim that land. Pathik was blamed be responsible for making the farmers leave their cultivable land, after which he detached from the movement. The farmers continued the movement to get their land back. It continued till 1941 AD .

Sikar Peasant Movement-

This peasant movement started when the new Rao of Sikar estate Raja Kalyan Singh increased the land revenue by 25 to 50 per cent. On pretext of over-expenditure at the time of funeral of the previous Rao Raja in 1922 AD and during his own coronation ceremony, he increased the land revenue by promising a tax concession from the following year, but in 1923 AD, Rao Raja backed out from his promise of giving concession in land tax. Under the leadership of Minister Ramnarayan Chaudhary of Rajasthan Sewa Sangh, the farmers raised their voice against it. A London based newspaper 'Daily Herald' published articles in support of the farmers and in 1925 AD, the Labour member Sir Pathic Lawrence from Leicestor (west) raised his voice in support of the farmers in the Lower house (House of Commons) of the British Parliament .

After the formation of "Rajasthan Jat Kshetriya Sabha" in 1931 AD, the peasant movement was infused with renewed vigour. To organize the farmers on religious basis, Thakur Deshraj decided to perform "Jat Pragyapati Mahayajna" after holding a meeting in Pathena. On 20th January 1934 AD, on the day of Basant Panchmi, this yajna was performed under the guidance of Yagnacharya Pt. Khemraj Sharma in Sikar. After performing the yajna, the farmers wished to seat the yagnapati Kunwar Hukam Singh on an elephant and organize a procession. But, Rao Raja Kalyan Singh and the jagirdar of the estate were in opposition of this. The reason behind this was that the ruler of the estate and the jagirdar regarded the farmers to be socially

inferior in status and regarded the right of riding an elephant as their sole right. For this reason, the Sikar estate stole the elephant on the first night of the yajna. This incident of stealing the elephant agitated the public and the situation became intense. A renowned farmer named Choturam sent a telegram to Jaipur Maharaja warning him that if anything unfortunate happened to even a single farmer, there would be immense loss at other places and the Jaipur state will have to suffer serious consequences. Finally the Sikar estate bowed in front of the persistence of the farmers and the estate itself provided a well decorated elephant for the procession. In this yajna programme which continued for seven days, around three lakhs people participated from areas as for as Uttar Pradesh, Punjab, Loharu, Patiala and Hisar. This was the biggest yajna which took place in the Rajputana in the twentieth century.

Women played a significant role in Sikar Peasant Movement. Thakur Nam Singh of Sihot organized a massive women's meeting under the Chairmanship of Mrs Kishori Devi at Katrathal on 25th April, 1934 AD to protest against atrocities committed towards the peasant women in a village named Sotion-ka-Bas. To stop this meeting, the Sikar estate imposed section 144. Even after this, women's meeting took place after breaking all rules. In this meeting, women participated in large numbers. Mrs Durgadevi Sharma, Mrs Phulandevi, Mrs Ramadevi Joshi, Mrs. Uttamadevi and several others were among the prominent participants in this meeting. On 25th April 1935 AD, when a group of revenue officers went to Kudan village to collect land tax, on being provoked by an elderly woman named Dhapa Dadi the farmers united and refused to pay the tax. To suppress the peasant revolt, the police opened fire. Four farmers- Chetram, Tikuram, Tulcharam and Asharam became martyrs and 175 other farmers were imprisoned. After this terrible massacre, the echo of Sikar Peasant Movement was once again heard in the British Parliament . By the end of 1935 AD, most of the demands of the farmers were accepted. Sardar Harlal Singh, Netramsingh Gaurir, Pannesingh Batdanau, Harusingh Palthana, Gorusingh Katrathal, Ishwarsingh Bhairunpura, Lekhram Kaswali, etc. were among the prominent leaders of this movement.

Begoon Peasant Movement (ChIttorgarh)-

Inspired by the Bijolia Peasant Movement,, the farmers of Begoon estate too started a movement in 1921 AD, because the residents of that region were also suffering from excessive land revenue and the atrocities of other sub taxes. Just like the Bijolia farmers, most of the farmers of Begoon estate were from Dhakar caste. They were suffering from the vicious circle of various inputs, begar, high rate of land revenue and the atrocities of the estate. After sustained efforts of the members of Rajasthan Sewa Sangh, Vijay Singh Pathik, Ramnarayan Chaudhary and Manikyalal Verma, the farmers were inspired and war awakened.

In 1921 in Menal, the lease farmers of Begoon assembled at Bhairon Kund and had a meeting. Influenced by the power of Bijolia Movement, the farmers contacted Pathik and requested him to lead a movement against sub taxes, begar and high rate of land revenue. Pathik appointed Ramnarayan Chaudhary a minister of Rajasthan Sewa Sangh, as the leader of this movement.

After two years of struggle, Begoon's Thakur Rawat Anup Singh was forced to give in. He accepted the demands of the farmers and entered into an alliance with them. But the Mewar government and resident did not approve of all this. They interpreted the alliance which had taken place between the Rajasthan Sewa Sangh and Rawal Anup Singh to be a "Bolshevik" decision and

interned Anup Singh in Udaipur and placed a Munsarmat upon the estate.

To solve the complaints of the farmers of the estate. a commission was constituted under the leadership of Mewar's additional commissioner Trench. Begoon farmers assembled in Govindpura to discuss the decisions of Trench. About 600 farmer heads (panchs) were present at that place for five months. Trench and Lala Amritlal reached there and ordered the farmers to accept the decision of the commission and disperse from there, but the

farmers did not disperse. On l3th July, 1923 AD, the farmers had to face firing, in which two farmers. named Rupaji and Krupaji Dhakarwere martyred. The women were insulted and more then five hundred farmers were imprisoned. When Pathik felt that the morale of the farmers was declining due to atrocities of the state, he secretly reached Begoon and himself took command of the movement. He was arrested by Mewar government on 10th September, 1923 AD after which the movement gradually ended.

Barad Peasant Movement (Bundi)-

Just like the farmers of Bijolia and Begoon, the farmers of Bundi were suffering from various burdens, like begaar - and had to pay high rates of land revenue. Suffering from all this, the farmers of Barad region of Bundi slate which has common borders with Bijolia; started a movement against the Bundi administration in April 1922 AD. The leadership of this movement was in the hands of three dedicated workers i.e. Nyunram Sharma of Rajasthan Sewa Sangh. On 2nd April 1923 AD, a meeting of farmers was hold in village Dabi under the Chairmanship of Nyunram Sharma when the sepoys opened fire under the leadership of police commissioner lkraam Hussain. In this, Nanak Bhil and Devlal Gurjar were martyred. On 27th September, 1925 AD, Pt. Nyunram Sharma was authorized to aprise the administration with the problems of the farmers, for which a meeting was organized in Hadoti branch of Rajasthan Sewa Sangh. After 1927 AD, Rajasthan Sewa Sangh closed down due to mutual conflicts. Thus, along with the closure of Rajasthan Sewa Sangh, the Barad Peasant Movement of Bundi also ended.

Neemuchana Peasant Movement (Alwar)-

Killing of pigs was banned in Alwar as pigs would destroy the crops. Vexed by the nuisance of pigs, the farmers of Alwar began a movement in 1921 AD. Being pressurized by this movement, the Maharaja was forced to give permission to kill pigs. After the third land arrangement in Alwar in 1922 AD, new rates of tax revenue were imposed from 1923 — 24 AD. Before this new arrangement, lower land revenue was collected from the Brahmins and Rajputs as compared to other castes. But according to the provisions of this new arrangement, this exclusive right of these castes came to an end, which obviously resulted into dissatisfaction among these sections. Although the farmers of other castes were also dissatisfied by the new arrangement, yet the Rajputs played the role of leading this opposition. Rajput Vishvedars from Bansur and Ghazi-ka-Thana of Alwar opposed these taxes which were imposed in the name of land arrangement and also made complaints to the resident. Maharaja Jaidev Singh was angry on such type of complaints.

On 14th May, 1925 AD, the farmers gathered in Neemuchana village of Bansur tehsil in Alwar district to discuss about the loot which was made in the name of collecting land revenue.All of a sudden, the state army surrounded these farmers and opened fire on them under the leadership of army commander Chajju Singh and also put their houses on fire, 156 people were killed in this incident and around 600 people were injured. A newspaper, "Riyasat" compared this massacre with the Jallianwala Bagh massacre, while Mahatma Gandhi addressed this massacre as "Dohari Dyershahi" in "Young India" and described this massacre as more violent than the Jallianwala Bagh massacre.

Praja Mandal Movement in Rajasthan-

In the initial decades of the Twentieth century, several movements had started in different parts of Rajasthan in opposition to the atrocities committed by the feudals, but the sole objective of these movements was concession in land revenue and freedom from feudal atrocities. In 1920 AD, the nationalistic people of the Rajputana became desperate when the Congress passed a resolution of not interfering in the internal affairs of princely states. In 1927, after the formation of Akhil Bhatatiya Desi Rajya Lok Parishad, the political workers received a platform through which they could raise their voice. This association was formed and its first meeting was held from 16th to 18th December 1927 AD under the Chairmanship of Diwan Bahadur Ramchandra Rao in Mumbai.

Among the executive members of this association, seven members were nominated from Rajasthan. These included- Nyunram Sharma (Kota), Shankarlal Sharma (Ajmer), Jai Narayan Vyas and Kanhaiyalal Kalyantri (Jodhpur), Ramdev Poddar and Balkrishna Poddar (Bikaner) and Trilokchand Mathur (Karauli). Vijay Singh Pathik was elected as the Vice President and Ramnarayan Chaudhry was elected as the Provincial Secretary of Rajasthan and Central India. The major objective of formation of this association was to establish a responsible government in the princely states under the leadship of their rulers through legal and peaceful ways.

After a resolution of supporting the movements of the princely states was passed Haripura summit of the Congress in 1938 AD, Praja Mandals were systematical organized in various princely states. Those political organizations, which were formed to establish a responsible government in the princely states, to oppose atrocities and exploitation by the feudals. They also infused political awareness in the princely states and provided fuel to the nationalistic movements taking place in the country. They were called Praja Mandel. All the riyasats of Rajasthan had their individual Praja Mandals. which initiated several movements on the above mentioned issues at different times till independence.

1.	Jaipur Praja Mandal	1931	Jamnalal Bajaj and Kapurchand Patni
2.	Bundi Praja Mandal	1931	Kantilal
3.	Hadoti Praja Mandal	1934	Pt. Nyunram Sharma
4.	Marwar Praja Mandal	1934	Jainarayan Vyas
5.	Sirohi Praja Mandal	1934	Vridhishankar Trivedi
6.	Bikaner Praja Mandal	1936	Magharam Vaidya
7.	Kota Praja Mandal	1939	Pt. Nyunram Sharma
8.	Mewar Praja Mandal	1938	Manikyalal Verma
9.	Alwar Praja Mandal	1938	Harinarayan Sharma
10.	Bharatpur Praja Mandal	1938	Kishanlal Joshi
11.	Shahpura Praja Mandal	1938	Rameshchandra Ojha
12.	Dholpur Praja Mandal	1938	Jwalaprasad Jigyasu
13.	Karauli Praja Mandal	1938	Trilokchandra Mathur
14.	Kishangarh Praja Mandal	1939	Kantilal Chothani
15.	Jaisalmer Praja Mandal	1945	Mithalal Vyas
16.	Kushalgarh Praja Mandal	1942	Bhawarlal Nigam
17.	Dungarpur Praja Mandal	1944	Bhogilal Pandya
18.	Banswara Praja Mandal	1945	Bhupendranath Trivedi
19.	Pratapgarh Praja Mandal	1945	Amritlal Payak
20.	Jhalawar Praja Mandal	1946	Mangilal Bhavya

Establishment of Major Praja Mandals in Rajasthan–

The most significant achievement of Praja Mandal was that it led the women out of their homes and made them stand equally with men. Many women started to participate actively in these movements and were arrested. Women folk participated in the movements organized by Jaipur Praja Mandal.

Ramadevi Deshpande, Sushila Devi, Indira Devi, Anjana Devi Chaudhary, etc. were among the prominent women of Jaipur Praja Mandal. At the time of Quit India Movement, Gorja Devi, Savitri Devi Bhati, Sirekanwal Vyas, Rajkaur Vyas. etc. were arrested in Jodhpur, while in Udaipur, Manikyalal Verma's wife Narayan Devi went to jail along with a six month old son. The workers of Praja Mandal also gave attention to social reforms, spread of education, abolishing beggary and welfare of the dalits and tribals. These associations started movements and struggles due to which spirit of nationalism was infused among people who were suffering from atrocities committed by the royals and feudals. Before 1938 AD, direct coordination between the public of princely states and the national movement was absent, but after the formation of Praja Mandals, the local movements became a part of the national movement during the Quit India Movement of 1942. The National Movement got fillip by it.

EXERCISE

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. When was the East India Company established?
2. When and between whom did the Treaty of Surjigaon take place ?
3. Which region did Tipu Sultan rule?
4. When did the Treaty of Amritsar take place?
5. Why were the Sanyasis dissatisfied with the Britishers?
6. Vasudev Phadke was from which province?
7. Who led the revolution in Bihar in 1857 AD?
8. Who was the first Satyagrahi of Personal Satyagraha?
9. When did the Begoon Peasant Movement start?

Short Answer Type Questions-

1. Describe the First Anglo-Maratha War.
2. What were the consequences of the Fourth Anglo-Mysore War?
3. What is the contribution of Vinayak Damodar Savarkar in freedom struggle?
4. Write a note on Champaran Peasant Movement.
5. When and how was the Indian National Congress formed?
6. Which movement was started by Govind Guru?
7. Explain the Bijolia Peasant Movement.
8. Why did the Indians (Bhartiyas) oppose Simon Commission?
9. Why were Praja Mandals formed in Rajasthan?

Essay Type Questions-

1. Describe the struggle that took place between the Britishers and the Marathas and Mysore
2. Describe the First Freedom Struggle of 1857 AD.
3. Describe the public movements conducted between 1919 AD and 1949 AD.
4. What was the contribution of revolutionaries in the freedom struggle of Bharat? Elucidate.
5. Describe the peasant movements of Rajasthan.

Chapter - 4

HISTORY OF THE WORLD

Rise of Nationalism In Europe

Nationalism is a feeling in which a person's complete devotion is dedicated to his country. The strong desire of freedom and expression of becoming a nation can be seen in the American War of Independence .The first clear expression for becoming a nation state in Europe is visible in the revolution of France in 1789 AD. This revolution played a significant role in spreading Nationalism in Europe. Taking a look at the map of mid 18th century Europe, there seems no Nation state present in it. Europe was divided into various royalties, douchis, cantons and several small political units having religious base, and whose rulers had their autonomous status. Eastern and Central Europe was ruled under the autocratic monarchy, and different types of people lived there. They did not consider themselves to work under any collective identity or similar culture. They spoke different languages and were the members of different racial groups, for example in the aristocratic section of Habsburg the number of German spoken people were in majority and the people of Lombardi and Venetia spoke Italian with half of the population of Hungary used Magyar language while rest of the people spoke various dialects. The aristocratic class in Galicia used to speak Polish language, this type of difference was not supportive for the political unity with ease. The loyalty towards the king was the only element to keep the different groups tied together.

Reasons of Nationalism in Europe:-

1. Rise of middle class :-

In Europe the landlord aristocratic class was the most dominating one from social and political point of view. This group was a small one regarding to the population, while most of the people of Europe were farmers. In Western Europe tenants and small farmers used to do farming on most of the land area. While the land in Eastern and Middle Europe was divided amongst big manors where the slaves performed cultivation. In Western and Central Europe, a new social group emerged with the development of cities and the rise of trading class, which comprised labour class, middle class, industrialists, traders and people of service sector. The sentiments of national Unity were popularised among these groups after the end of the privileges for aristocratic people.

1. Liberal Nationalism:-

I. The feeling of nationalism in Europe was nurtured by Liberalism and Democracy. Dignified freedom and equality is the general meaning of Liberalism. To make almost all the regions free was the goal of Liberalism. The Liberalists wanted to ensure personal freedom of speech, writing, assembly- organisation and safety of private property. Politically Liberalism emphasizes on a government which is formed with consensus. In economic field, Liberalism was associated with the powerful demands of middle class for freedom of market and removal of the control imposed by state upon the transportation of goods and capital. In the first part of the century due to administrative steps of Napoleon a confederation of 39 States was formed by the union of numerous small German spoken states in which every state had its own currency and weight- measurement system. In 1833 AD, a businessman while travelling from Hamburg to Nuremberg to sell his goods had to pass through 11 excise duty stations. Considering it as a barrier in the economic exchange, the new trade group was giving a logic in favour of the formation of such an integrated economic zone,

where transportation of goods, people and capital remained free. In 1834 such an economic zone was formed by the initiative of Prussia, in the form of Tariff Union Zollverein in which almost all the German States were Included. This union abolished the barrier of tax and reduced the number of currencies to two which was earlier more than thirty. This union facilitated economic interests supportive for the National Unification , and the comprehensive national sentiments were strengthened by the waves of economic nationalism at that time.

3. Revolutions of England and France:-

The glorious revolution of England gave birth to the belief that, there is no justification for the divine right in any kind of governance. And in the same order the revolution of France gave birth to the notion that- the individual freedom is so sacred that no regime can ignore it.This concept was the victory of nationalism. Nationalism was born in response to that monarchical power which claims that the power of a king is despotic due to his godly rights.

4. The new Conservatism after 1815 AD:-

In 1815 the representatives of European powers like Britain, Russia and Austria who had defeated Napoleon, met in Vienna to prepare a settlement. The politicians assembled in Vienna Congress, had reiterated their pledge of rebuilding Europe according to their understanding and experience by re-establishing the archaic system, while keeping away Europe from the symptoms of new era like - Nationalism, Liberalism and democratic sentiments, but they had not identified the new sentiments.This was the only reason that the establishment of those arrangements tried at Vienna Congress kept deteriorating during the next one hundred years.

5. Revolutionaries-

In the years after 1815 AD, due to fear and suppression many liberalists and nationalists went underground. To get the revolutionaries trained and to diffuse the ideology, secret organizations were formed in several European States. The meaning of a Revolutionary at that time was one who opposed monarchical System which was established after the Vienna Congress. simultaneously to remain committed to Freedom and liberation, it was necessary to be a revolutionary. Most of the revolutionaries considered the establishment of nation States a mandatory part of this struggle for freedom.

6.Contribution of Languages and Folklore:-

Nationalism was developed not only by the wars and regional expansion but arts, epics folktales and music also contributed in expressing the feeling of nationalism. The feeling of nationalism was kept alive by communicating nationalistic messages to a large number of people with the help of dialects and folk literature. Languages also played an important role in developing the feeling of nationalism. After the Russian domination Polish language was forcefully removed from schools and the Russian language was forced upon at every place . In 1831 AD, there was an armed revolt took place against Russia, that was finally suppressed. Several members of this revolt used language as a weapon for the revolt. In church events and in the entire religious education, Polish language was used. Polish Language was seen as a symbol of struggle against the Russian domination.

INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION-

Since the beginning of the human civilization to the 19th century, the entire activities across the world were performed by tools that were operated by hands. Man invented new sources of energy that resulted in limitless power of their working capacity. Steam power, electric combustion, gas and various other areas were the symbols of progress, which resulted into the invention of atomic energy.

In the whole world India was a country with cottage industry, where high quality steel was produced, using iron furnaces since ancient times. One of its major examples is the Iron Pillar of Delhi which is still standing without getting rusted. Varieties of seeds in agriculture and swapping and mixed farming is the gift of India. Construction of dams and bridges in India has played a significant role in giving basic infrastructure to industries and

guidance to the entire world. Thousands of years ago the Rama Setu built between Sri Lanka and India is an example, and its construction method is also described in our Shastras. Before 19th century, an excellent set up of agriculture, industry, trade and Commerce was present in India, while thousands of the so called developed nations started new experiments in 19th century.

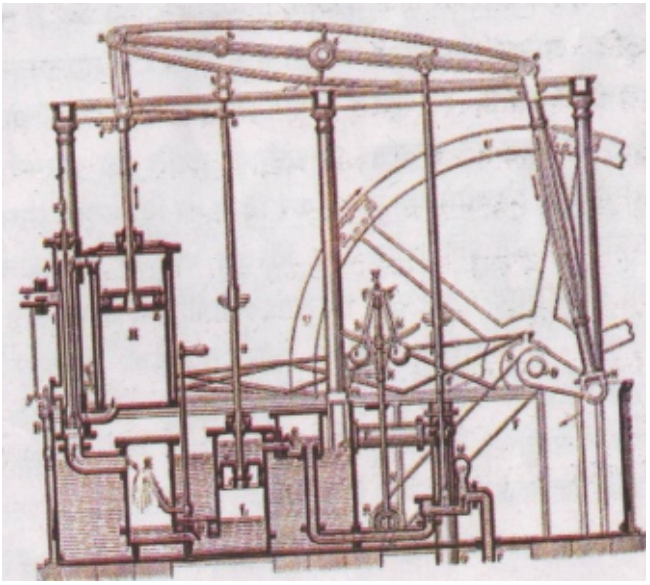


FIGURE 4.1 INDUSTRIAL MACHINE

Meaning of Industrial Revolution

The Industrial Revolution refers to those basic changes happend in the production system due to which people got the opportunity to work in large scale industries using modern means of transportation instead of doing traditional farming, business and working in cottage industries . The word Industrial Revolution was used by European Scholars named Jarjis Mishley of France and Kaidric Angem of Germany. Arnold Toynbee in his book- "Lectures on Industrial Revolution" clarified that Industrial Revolution is not a sudden event, rather it is a continuous process of development. According to historian "G W Southgate "Industrial Revolution was a change in industrial process in which handicraft was replaced by mechanical tools, which were operated by power and thus a change occurred in industrial organisation. In place of cottage industry the work started in factories. According to historians CD Haijon, Industrial Revolution refers to the mechanization of cottage industry. According to Divij "Industrial Revolution is referred to those changes which had made it possible for the man to leave the traditional methods of production and start producing goods in factories on a large scale. According to encyclopaedia of sciences part 8 , 'The economic and technical development which had become more powerful and rapid in 18th century through which the modern entrepreneurship was born is called the Industrial Revolution'. We can conclude that Industrial Revolution refers to an economic system, which enters in the modern Industrial sector after coming out from the stage of traditionally low production and development, where as in Industrial Revolution the production, lifestyle and per capita income increases and production rate keeps increasing eternally, which in turn has a significant impact on an individual, society and the state.

Changes after Industrial Revolution-

1 Production work that was earlier accomplished by hand, now started to be done by machines that ran on power.

2. Steel manufacturing industries were started to meet the increasing demand.

3. Due to the use of power run machines in agriculture, farming started on large farms instead of smaller ones.

4. The banking system developed due to the constant use of currency
5. Due to the invention of steam engines and mechanised ships, there was a drastic change in the transport system.
6. To promote international trade, an organised trading mechanism was developed.
7. The principle of less human labour and maximum production was adopted.

Why did Industrial Revolution start from England ?

England was the first country that experienced modern industrialisation. In comparison to other countries of Europe, England held several conditions which made Industrial Revolution

possible in that country.

1. Large colonial empire of England-

Raw material and a new market were available in the colonial empire of the 18th century while other European countries did not have such colonies.

2. Availability of iron and coal mines at nearby areas In England-

The availability of iron and coal mines at nearby areas facilitated the production of iron. Solid iron was necessary for the manufacturing of machines.

3. Production in accordance with the consumption-

The export business of France was based on luxurious goods. The consumption of luxurious goods always remains limited while the exports of England were based on the kind of goods that always remained in high demand. England believed that if the sources of the manufacturing of such goods in a cheaper way are discovered, then their market could be increased further. Hence England was ready to adopt such ways by which it could produce the goods on large scale.

4. Availability of Semi - skilled Labourers-

When the feudal system was abolished in England the semi skilled labourers started settling down in cities in large numbers. After the Revolution started, they became available to work on machines

5. French Revolution and War-

French Revolution and the wars of Napoleon contributed significantly to the development of Industrial Revolution in England. During the War, England felt the need of improved ways of production to meet the demands of its soldiers and the soldiers of its allied countries.

6. Availability of Capital-

England had more capital to set up large scale industries compared to other countries of Europe. The contemporary situation was supportive of collecting money and to promote its use. In 18th century the businessmen of England got the facility of procuring loan and also accumulating the capital.

7. SuitableGeographical Location of England-

The geographical position of England was favourable from business point of view. England was surrounded by coastal borders from all four sides, therefore it remained safe from external invasions and losses of war, thus it could promote the development of industries.

8. The Agricultural Revolution which took place in England also promoted industrial development.

9. Promoting scientific inventions-

England compared to other European countries gave more freedom to its scientists regarding political and religious interference, and gave encouragement to scientific associations, as a result of the conducive situation, scientific inventions largely took place in England.

Inventions and reforms in various sectors during the Industrial Revolution.

Farming Sector-

During the Industrial Revolution agriculture was the first sector to experience reforms. It is believed that Industrial Revolution was not possible without agriculture. Usually the same traditional methods and equipments were being used till the 17th century, which were in use several centuries ago. Since due to no change in agricultural techniques, the demand of agricultural goods was not more than their consumption in the state, but with the development of factory system, the population in cities increased, so the demand for grains and cotton for industrial purpose also increased. To fulfil this demand of agricultural products, the need to introduce scientific methods in agriculture and manufacturing sector was felt. Second reason was that, in order to get more profit, people had started investing capital in agriculture. In fact the investment in the field of agriculture brought the revolution in agriculture,. first of all, Jethro Tull a landlord of Yorkshire invented the seed drill machine to sow seeds, so the work of sowing seeds became more systematic and easy. An English landlord named Townshend gave the principle of crop rotation so that, by sowing different type of crops in rotation the fertility of the soil could be maintained. Now there was no need to leave the land unused and the per acre production of crops also increased. Around 1770 AD Robert Bake Well made animal husbandry a profitable occupation. With agriculture he started experiments to improve the breeds of sheep and cows. He became successful in developing a breed of sheep three times heavier than the previous one by implementing the new technique of scientific

breeding. In 1793 AD an American native Whitton made a machine to separate grains from the straw and in 1834 AD Cyrus Hall Mecormik invented harvesting machine, with the passage of time mechanization in agriculture and the invention of machines operated by power resulted in agricultural revolution.

New Inventions in Textile Industry-

The Industrial Revolution began mainly from the textile industry. Till mid 18th century the traditional system of making clothes in European factories had become incapable of fulfilling the demand of clothes. Earlier cotton clothes were imported from India in England but when East India Company set up its control over India, England also began to import cotton along with clothes. To fulfil the growing demand of European markets, new inventions were made in this sector. In 1733 AD John Kay invented the Flying Shuttle Loom which made it possible to make wider cloth in lesser time. James Hargreaves invented the spinning Jenny in 1765 AD through which one person could spin several threads together. In 1769 Richard ArkWright invented the Water Frame by which stronger thread was made compared to the earlier one. In 1779 Samuel Crompton invented Spinning Mule. The thread spun by this mule used to be very strong and fine. In 1787 AD the Power Loom operated by electric power was invented by Admund Cartwright.

New Technical Changes in Iron Industry-

Coal and Iron ore the major raw materials used in mechanization were available in plenty in England. Apart from that, the other minerals used in Industry such as Zinc, Copper and Tin were also available in abundance. But the demand of iron ore could not be met with the old methods, hence the discovery of various new methods to purify Iron ore were started. in 1709 AD Abraham Darby invented the Blast Furnace in which the Coke (solid coal) was used as fuel for the first time, by which the smelting and refining of iron ore became easier. This invention brought about a revolution in the industry of metallurgy. Abrahm Darby (1711 to 1768 AD) invented wrought iron from pig iron.

Henry Court (1740—1873 AD) invented the Puddling Furnace (by which impurities could be removed from smelted iron) and Rolling Mill which made it possible to make pure and refined iron. The Machines made up of iron were very heavy and they used to get rusted so discovery of steel was made to solve this problem. To make Steel, some quantities of Carbon, Manganese and other elements were mixed in iron. Steel was lighter and stronger than iron, and also had resistance against rusting with more flexibility . Henry Bessemer discovered a new method of steel making, which is known as the Bessemer Process. In this method, the steel could be made directly from pig iron, which brought another revolution in the iron industry.

New Inventions in Transport Sector-

With increasing trade and industry the need of reforms in the modes of transport was felt to make transport easier and cheaper. Scottish engineer John Mac Adam discovered a new method of road construction in which a layer of heavy stones was laid at the lower part of the road, after that a layer of small stones was laid followed by soil on the upper part.

The transportation of heavy goods by roadways used to be expensive and inconvenient. So in order to make transportation of heavy goods convenient and cheapper, canals were built. The first Canal named "Worsley Canal" was built by James Brindley in 1761 AD. With this the cost of transportation of goods was reduced to half. In England from 1788 to 1796 AD several canals were built. So this period was known as "Canal Mania". In 1869 AD French engineer Ferdinand De Lesseps built the Suez Canal which joins the Mediterranean and the Red Sea.

Due to the Suez Canal the distance between Europe and India was reduced to one third as compared to the previous one .To make transportation cheaper and easier the power of steam was used. An American named Robert Fulton invented the first ever successful steamboat in 1807, that was floated for the first time in the Hudson river. The invention of rail engine which runs on a path of iron on land, brought another revolution in the transport sector.

In 1814 AD George Stevenson invented Steam Locomotive named "Rocket".By this invention the Railways became such a means of transport that was perennially available to all. In 1830 AD the first railway started between Manchester and Liverpool. The invention of Railways made the transport of coal and iron easy with other Industrial Products from one place to another in lesser time, and at lesser cost.

New Experiments in Communication Sector-

In 1844 Samuel Morse invented the viable telegraphic equipment. This telegraphic equipment worked in connecting the continents with each other. in 1876 Graham Bell invented the telephone that brought a revolution in the world of communication

Results of the Industrial Revolution-

The results of the Industrial Revolution can be divided into 4 parts in view of study.

1.Economic

2.Political

3. Social

4.Conceptual result

1.Economic Consequences:

Production and Commerce grew on a large scale nd economic imbalances took place.Development in urban areas was greater than in rural. Cottage industries were destroyed. The national markets got state protection and industrial capitalism was developed.

2.Political consequences:

The demand for a democratic set up increased in politics and political ambitions of the Middle Class arose. The colonial competition gained momentum through industrial revolution.The labourers became organised and resorted to movements for their demands.

3.Social consequences:

A new Social Class emerged, moral values declined and the conjugal family system scattered, a new culture immerged and human relationship got declined, the problems of slums cropped up due to the increased population of labourers in the cities.

4. Conceptual consequences :

Economic Liberalism was welcomed and Socialism emerged.

The Unification of Germany and Italy:

Unification of Germany

Germany at the end of 18th century was divided into more than 300 small and big estates. From the geographical point of view, Germany can be broadly divided into three parts, i.e. Northern, Central, and Southern. The states of Prussia, Saxony, Hanover, Frankfurt were in Northern part while Rhineland was in the central part, and Wurttemberg Bavaria, Baden, Palatinate, Hesse-Darmstadt etc were in the Southern Part. Prussia was the most powerful in reference to size and military power, but even after being divided politically, two factors were responsible for the German states to remain united, the first thing was the ideological spirit of respect towards the Roman Emperor, and the second was the existence of Diet, where representatives of all states remained present on a single platform. According to a French "Lipan" in 19 th century , the reason of building Nationalism in Germany—"This is one of the jokes of history that Napoleon was the Father of modern Germany".

Major obstacles in the Unification of Germany:

1. Interference of Austria in the problems of Germany.
2. The economic, communal, social and political differences in German States.
3. Like France England was also taking interest in German states .In the name of Hannover Province , it had kept interfering in the Northern States.
4. Soft military power of most of the states.
5. Lack of awareness in the common man.
6. Influence of the Pope in Southern States of Germany, which was an obstacle in the Unification of Germany.

Supportive elements in the Unification of Germany:-

1.Zollverein-

Before the beginning of political Unification of Germany, its economic Unification had begun. It began in 1818 AD through the Custom Duty Toll Treaty made with small states named Schwarzeburd-Sonder Shausen by Prussia. Toll was removed between both the states and the trade had started without any difficulty. This economic treaty weakened the state and regional influence which was an obstacle in the Unification of Germany. According to Catle Bee " The formation of zollverin had paved the way for the Unification of Germany in future under the leadership of Prussia. Robert Irgage wrote that-- "Zolverein suppressed the regional sentiments and gave priority to the stronger German national elements". Till 1834 AD all major states of Germany became its members. Initially there was no political aim of Prussia behind zolverein, but gradually by the means of leadership of zolverein, Prussia was secretly preparing itself for taking the responsibility in the political leadership for Unification of Germany.

2. The Intellectual Movement-

Philosophers, Historians, Literary persons and Poets played a significant role in the Unification of Germany. Major philosophers named Lifte, Eagle, Dolmale, Haurdenburg Heting ,Hine played main role, who filled the German hearts with the feelings that "German Race is Supreme in human beings" Fichte ignited nationalist feeling in Germans by providing proper guidance to the anti France sentiments. By 1815 AD in the Jena University of Germany a patriotic organisation named "Burschenschaft" was formed. This organisation emphasized on the moral upliftment of German people. This Institute stowed up the feelings of Justice, Freedom and Unity amongst the countrymen.

3. Industrial Development-

With the establishment and extension of Zolverine, trade and industry got a chance for development in Germany. At that time Prussia and Russia both were considered to be the foundation stone of every industry. Thus with these resources, industrialisation took place at a quick pace in Prussia. Cotton mills were established at many places, Construction of Railways got an extension and many German towns were linked with Railways. Till 1860 AD Germany was counted amongst the major industrial States of Europe while Austria was facing a bitter economic crisis due to war with Prussia and also because of its Orthodox policy,while Prussia was making progress due to its increasing trade, commerce and industry.

3.Contribution of Bismarck-

After the death of Prussian ruler Frederick IV in 1861 AD, 64 years old William I became the ruler. William-I did not possess the intellectual mindand sharpness required but he had the amazing power of figuring out wise people . He believed in the liberalistic ideas, but he also had the belief that, only Prussia can unite Germany by it's monarchy and powerful military. In order to make the army powerful Vonroon was appointed War Minister and Vonmoltke was appointed as the Chief commander. When a Constitutional crisis cropped up on the issue of military reforms, William-I appointed Bismarck as his Chancellor to get rid of this crisis . Bismarck was a clever politician, he had the knowledge of international matters and was a man of rich diplomatic skills. Bismarck had the opinion that the time between 1848 to 1849AD, which was wasted in mutual debates by the Nationalists, was a mistake. He quoted "The great questions of the time will not be resolved by speeches and majority decisions—that was the great mistake of 1848 and 1849—but by iron and blood". Due to this reason, to make Prussia a powerful state, Bismarck showed his toughness by getting the military budget passed by the Upper House when it was rejected earlier by the Lower House of Parliament . The Unification of Germany took place in three phases.

1.War with Denmark and Treaty of Gestiene-

The two Duchies Schleswig and Holstein were under the control of Denmark but these were not the unseparable parts of Denmark. The majority population of Holstein was German, and Holstein

was a member of German Union too, the Germans were in majority in Schleswig but the Den people also lived there who were in the opposition of the Integration of Germany. In the conference held at London in 1852 AD, the European rulers accepted the authority of Denmark on these Duchies only on the condition that Denmark will not merge them in its territory in future. But only 10 years later in 1863 AD, the ruler of Denmark Frederick took control of these States .

On this issue, Bismarck got an opportunity to show his political ability and diplomatic skill .By using this opportunity Bismarck wanted to put an end to the German Union by getting Austria out from Germany.

[FIGURE: 4.2 BISMARC]

He succeeded in his efforts and an agreement was signed between Prussia and Austria regarding both the Duchies. Accordingly Denmark's Supremacy on both the states was rejected and it was decided to give a final warning to it . This pact was a victory for Bismarck. The joint forces of Austria and Prussia defeated Denmark in February 1864 AD. A pact was signed by William and Francis Joseph at a place called Gastine on 14th August 1865 ADregardingthe possession of both the Duchies. According to this pact, Holstein was given to Austria and Schleswig was awarded to Prussia, and the Duchies of Ladenburg was sold to Prussia.

Prussia got the right of barricading the Port named Keil. The Gastine Pact was a political error of Austria and a big diplomatic victory for Bismarck . Bismarck had prepared the background for war on the next issue of Holstein with Austria.

2.Treaty of Austria Prussia and Prague:-

The second step of Bismarck after the pact of Gastine was to make preparations for the war against Austria . On one side Bismarck started the preparations for war and on the other hand by the means of diplomacy he started making efforts to stop any assistance for Austria from the European Nations . The international scenario was also conducive at this time for this work. England was following the Policy of Non-Interference in the European states. The sympathy of Russia was obtained by providing assistance at the time of revolt in Poland .France was persuaded to remain neutral on the promise of getting a certain part of the territory of Rhine . Austria was an obstacle in the Unification of Italy. A pact was signed between Prussia and Sardinia in 1866 AD , according to which, Venetia would be handed over to Sardinia in case Sardinia initiated a war against Austria . When the Germans were revolting against Austria in Holstein, Bismarck was giving secret assistance to them. On the other hand, Austria was promoting the movement going on in favour of the Duke of Augusts in Holstein. A war broke out between Austria and Prussia on this issue. But the decisive battle of Sadowa- konnigratz took place on 3rd July 1866 AD in which Austria was completely defeated and the Treaty of Prague was signed between Austria and Prussia on 23rd August 1866 AD. Duchy of Holsteinwas merged into Prussia and the North German Union was formed under the leadership of Prussia, in which Austria was not included.

3. Franco Prussian war and the Frankfurt Treaty:-

France had the expectation that it would get a part of Rhine, if Prussia and Austria remained neutral, thus it's border could extend up to Rhine river , but Bismarck ignored this, the victory of Prussia and formation of Northern German Union gave a set back to the international image of France . The

French politicians were demanding for the revenge of Sadowa on other side, Napoleon III wanted to regain his lost prestige so both of the nations were looking at the war as the ultimate solution to their respective problems. Napoleon III had proposed to purchase Luxembourg .The German nationalists, newspapers and politicians refused to give Luxembourg to France , the second issue cropped up due to the kingship of Spain, which had made the relations bitter between both the countries and the war trumpets started blowing in the end. The war broke out between France and Prussia on 15th of July 1870 AD . The German Army attacked France from three sides . France was defeated in the wars of Bisenberg and Gravlaat . The most important war was fought on 2nd September 1870 AD in which the Prussian commander Bon Moltech completely defeated the French Army . Napoleon III surrendered . Bismarck performed the coronation of the German King William I on 18th January 1871AD in the renowned palace of Versailles. The war between Prussia and France ended on 28th February 1871 AD . The representatives of both the countries signed the Treaty of Frankfurt on 21st February 1871AD. Under this treaty, France had to hand over the territories of Alsace and Lorraine with Maize and Stromberg to Germany. France was compelled to give 20 crore pounds as war compensation, which it had to pay in 3 years. It may be said that, the Unification of Germany was possible due to the policy of blood and iron with the determination, extreme courage and diplomatic skills of Bismarck.

Unification of Italy-

Victories of Napoleon had a great impact on the Unification of Italy. After the Italian victory, Napoleon established Republic in Italy and after becoming emperor, he dissolved several small and big states and merged them into three parts. He dismissed the Feudalistic Arrangements and ended up the restrictions on internal trade. Uniform laws were imposed in Italy. When Napoleon used Italy as a settlement, it fired the national sentiments of the Italian people. For these reasons, Napoleon is known as the Father of Nationalism in Italy.

According to Marriott, "Napoleon was the first person who initially provided unity to Italy.

Major Obstacles in the Unification of Italy-

1. The presence of reactionary foreign supremacyin Italy was a major obstacle.

   Lombardi and Venetia were in direct control and Modena and Tuscany were controlled by the Princess of Austria.

2. Pope wanted to maintain his rule on his own state of Rome.

3. Italy was mainly divided into three political units, which was a major obstacle in The Unification .

4. After the fall of Napoleon, the feudalistic and nobility sections of Italy wanted to re-establish Feudalism and Land Tenancy System, because the nobility had the fear of losing their influence after Unification .

5. National consciousness was not awakened in Italy so far . All the states had their own traditions and customs. No state would like to stay in communion with another.

6. Another obstacle in the Unification of Italy was that, there was no single opinion on the fact that,. Under what ideology the Unification should be performed ? Mazzini and Garibaldi wanted the unification of Italy in the form of a Republic, while Geoberty was in favour of the Union of the States under Pope.

Major Organisations and the People who supported the Unification of Italy:

1. Carbonari- This secret institution was set up in 1810 AD in Naples. People of all sections were included in it. This outfit had two major objectives-- To root out foreigners from Italy and to establish legal Independence, but it failed in its objectives due to the absence of influential leadership and decisive aims .

2. Young Italy--Young Italy was established in 1831 AD by Mazzini, which soon took the place of coronary in the nationalmovement of Italy. Mazzini trusted the youth of Italy. He said

"If Revolution is to bring about in society, the leadership should be handed over to the youth, because they have immense power in their hearts". This organization had three slogans, 'Have faith in God' 'Bring all the brothers together', and, 'Get Italy free'. The objectives of this society were clear to achieve the unity and freedom of Italy and to establish a state based on the concept offreedom, equality and public welfare. This institution infused in the people of Italy the spirit of Patriotism, Struggle, Sacrifice and Freedom. Mazzini urged the people of Italy and said, "Don't run behind anything except the ideal of United Italy". Italy will become a nation. In the opinion of Patriots, Mazzini was an angel, who came to build the future of Italy. In fact Mazzini laid the foundation of Unification of Italy. South gate writes, "It was Mazzini who developed the spirit of freedom in his countrymen. Though he was not a military hero of the kind of Cavour, he was a poet, idealist thinker and the harbinger of the revolution .

Count Camillo-

De Cavour was born in an elite family in 1810 AD. Havingtrained in military education, he worked as an engineer in the army . He was a supporter of liberal thinkers. He also studied Parliament ary system during his journey to England. He wanted to establish the same system in Italy. Cavour believed that Unification of Italy can only be completed under the leadership of Piedmont . For diffusing his views in this direction, he became the finance and industry minister in 1847 AD,and Victor Emmanuel appointed him as Prime Minister in 1852 AD. Cavour was an earthly minded diplomat, he was not only a politician but also a supporter of Monarchy . He was well aware of the power and strength of Italy. That is why he believed that Unification of Italy is not possible unless foreign assistance is received . For the same reason he wanted to internationalise the issue of the Unification of Italy. Internal policy, reforms and foreign policy of Cavour made the Unification of Italy complete.

Contribution of Cavour in the Unification :--

Cavour was the person without whom the idealism of Mazzini and the bravery of Garibaldi would have been pointless.

He believed that-

1. Only Piedmont Sardinia is capable for the Unification of Italy

2 .Austria is the biggest obstacle in Unification .

3 Austria cannot be rooted out without foreign assistance. Cavour believed in realistic, plaintiff and practical politics . He wanted to Internationalise the issue of Italy in order to attain active help and sympathy of foreign powers .There were only two powerful nations in Europe at that time-- France and England .There was no help expected from England, because it had adopted the policy of Non- Interference in European Nations. The French Emperor had a sympathetic attitude towards Italy on the issue of Unification . Hence, Cavour wanted to proceed in this direction. Cavour achieved the sympathy and friendship by sending military assistance inCrimea. Cavour got the benefit of this friendship in Paris Conference (1856 AD). Despite the opposition of Austria, the state of Sardinia was invited in Paris Conference . In this conference Cavour held Austria responsible for the unfortunate condition of Italy. Cavour gained an moral victory on the question of Italy in Paris Conference

Assistance of Napoleon and attainment of Lombardi-

Emperor Napoleon-III stayed for a month near the border of Sardinia for enjoying vacation . Without any formal invitation Cavour reached Plombieres . A pact was signed as a result of the meeting of Cavour and Napoleon. In which following decisions were taken:

1. France would provide a military assistance of two lakh soldiers in case of a war between Austria and Sardinia.

2. Naples and Sicily would remain states of the Pope as well.

3. Lombardi and Venetia will be given to Sardinia.
4. The territories of Niece and Savoy will be given to France as a reward for its assistance.

5. Victor Emanuel will marry his daughter to Prince Jerome Bonaparte.It was decided in this pact that, very soon by abetting Austria, war will be initiated so that Austria may seem aggressive and Sardinia appears to be fighting in self defence. In order to abet Austria, Cavour caused revolt in the provinces of Mass and Karrata. Austria reacted in the expected manner, as Cavour wished. On April 23 ,1859 AD Austria gave an ultimatum of 3 days. France proclaimed the war in favour of Italy on April 29, 1859 AD. Austria was facing constant defeat, but France withdrew itself from the war without asking Sardinia. And Napoleon III signed a pact for putting an end to the war, meeting with the emperor of Austria Joseph at a place called Villafranca on July 11, 1859 AD .

Its conditions were as follows-

1. Lombardi was given to Sardinia

2. Venetia was given to Austria .

3. Parma, Modena and Tuscany were again made independent states.

4. Union of Italian States was made under the Pope. The people of Italy and Cavour got disappointed by this treaty.Cavour was annoyed by this treaty, and he resigned. Victor Emmanuel signed the Treaty of Zurich on November 10, 1859 AD, with Austria and France.

The Treaty of Zurich confirmed the ceasefire Treaty of Villafranca .

With this the first phase of Unification of Italy was completed

Merger of Mid Italy-

After the end of war, people revolted in the States of Parma, Modena, Tuscany, Bologna and Romagna of mid Italy. They were eager to get merged with Italy. The non interference policy of England and sympathy towards Italy was motivating these States to get integrated with Italy. Austria wished the old rulers to be re-established . Taking that advantage of the situation Cavour linked France on his side by promising it to give the states of Nice and Savoy. A referendum was conducted in Middle East states in March 1860 AD. In this referendum Parma, Modena, Tuscany Bologna and Viyokenza voted to merge with Sardinia, and Nice voted to go with France .England had sympathy towards Italy, so it favoured Italy along with France, on the question of referendum in these states of mid-Italy. With this, the II phase of Italy was completed.

Garibaldi, and Merger of Naples and Sicily

Giuseppe Garibaldi was born in 1807 AD in the town of Nice. His father wanted him to go for higher education but Garibaldi was not much interested in education. He got only formal education just to be able to read books so that he may satisfy his adventurous activities.

[FIGURE 4.3 GIUSEPPE GAIRIBALDI]

At the time of his journey to the Mediterranean sea he came in contact with the Patriots of Italy. He had also become the member of Mazzini's Young Italy. In 1833 AD, he took part in the Naval Conspiracy, and was caught and sentenced to death but he went away to South Africa where he got trained in Gorilla strategy of Warfare. In 1854 AD he returned. He formed the organisation of Patriots named "redshirts" and with its power, he entered Sicily. The rulers of Naples and Sicily were foreigners and they were not able to rule. Mazzini, Francil Chrischy and Garibaldi made a plan to

revolt. Garibaldi formed a group of 1000 Redshirt Volunteers and attacked Sicily on 5th May 1860 AD. Garibaldi got the victory and declared himself as the dictator. Victor Emmanuel himself also moved forward to Naples. Garibaldi and Victor Emmanuel met at a place called Teano. Garibaldi accepted Victor Emmanuel as the ruler of Italy. After that Garibaldi surrendered the army and all his rights to Victor Emmanuel .After the merger of Southern states the third phase of the Unification of Italy was completed .

The Last Phase Of Unification Of Italy - Merger Of Venetia-

During the war between Prussia and Austria in 1866, Italy provided military support to Prussia against Austria. On 3rd July 1866 AD Prussia defeated Austria. The Treaty of Prague took place between Prussia and Austria in which Venetia was handed over to Italy.

Merger of Rome -

The position of Italy without Rome was just like a body without heart. Rome was under the control of the Pope and the French armies were present for the security of Pope. The dream of Italy to get control over Rome came true when the international circumstances proved adverse to France. A war took place between Prussia and France in 1870 AD. In which France had to use its entire potential against Prussia. It recalled armies from Rome. Despite all it was defeated. Italy took the advantage of this situation and occupied Rome . Referendum was held in Rome and the decision came in favour of Italy. Rome was made the capital of united Italy. On 12th June 1871 AD, Victor Emmanuel,on the inauguration of the Parliament of united Italy, said, " The work for which we all sacrificed our lives , has now been completed. Our national Unity has been established. Now we have to make our nation happy and prosperous. We are in Rome and would remain in Rome. With getting Rome, Italy has not remained merely a geographical expression,rather it has become an independent self ruled sovereign country now" .

Thus the Unification of Italy became possible only by the sacrifice of innumerable patriots, comprising moral power of Mazzini, sword of Garibaldi, diplomacy of Cavour and understanding of Victor Emmanuel.

Exercise

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. When was the custom duty union Zollverein established?
2. In which sector the first Industrial Revolution took place ?
3. Who discovered the Blast Furnace ?
4. Who was appointed as the war minister by William I ?
5 Between which countries the Treaty of Gastine took place ?
6. When and where was Carbonari formed ?

Short Answer Type Questions:--

1. When and by whom was Young Italy formed ?
2. Write the contribution of Bismarck in the Unification of Germany.
3. Write a short note on the Treaty of Prague?
4. Write the changes occurred during the Unification of Italy
5. Write the changes that took place in the textile industry during the Industrial Revolution.

Essay Type Questions:--

1. Mention the causes of the rise of Nationalism in Europe
2. Describe various inventions made in different sectors during the Industrial Revolution.
3. Describe major hurdles and support elements in detail, during the Unification of Germany.
4. Explain the process of Unification of Italy in detail..

Chapter 5

DEMOCRACY

MEANING AND VARIOUS FORMS OF DEMOCRACY

(A) Meaning of Democracy

The English word Democracy means 'Loktantra', 'Prajatantra' or 'Jantantra'.The word 'Democracy' is the combination of two words of Greek language Demos and Kratia. Though the basic meaning of Demos is- 'Mob' but in modern times its meaning is being taken as Public, and Kratia means Power .Thus semantically Democracy means the power of public. So the meaning of Democracy is" A System of governance based on power of public. It contains following related meanings :

1. This is a method of taking decisions .
2. This is a group of concepts for taking decisions, and :
3. This is a concept related to normative values .

In modern times ,Democracy is perceived as nothing but a form of only governance .Democracy is a word that has different meanings and an emotional meaning is also attached to it. It is necessary for us to get familiar with the concepts attached to its various forms.

(B) Various Forms Of Democracy

Various forms and concepts recognised in modern times related to Democracy are as follows:

1. Political Democracy
2. Social Democracy
3. Economic Democracy
4. Moral Democracy

(1) *Political Democray*

It was called Individualist Democracy in the past but in modern era it is called Liberal Democracy. In modern times Political Democracy originated in western countries, so sometimes it is also called Western Democracy. The Marxists liked to call it Capitalist's Democracy .

Liberal thinkers have mentioned two forms of overall political Democracy

1) Democracy as a kind of state

2) Democracy as a kind of governance.

As a kind of state, Democracy means – A DEMOCRATIC STATE.According to the concept of a democratic state -The sovereignty lies with people, and that's why the people hold the full and ultimate power to form, control and demolish government. In the form of governance the meaning of Democracy is: Democratic Regime. In fact the concept of democratic regime is taken as developed and practical form of the theoretical side of the idea of democratic state. It is notable that these two concepts related to political Democracy accept the superiority of political sovereignty over the legal one. In essence both concepts believe that the legal sovereignty should be controlled by the political one.

As a part of Political Democracy there are two strains of democratic rule.

1) Direct or Pure Democracy

2) Indirect or Representative Democracy.

It is noteworthy that there are two forms of representative democracies prevalent in modern times

1) Parliamentary Democracy

2) Presidential Democracy

The Democratic State i.e. the democratic governance or the whole political Democracy has

some prevalent basic assumptions;

1) Political Democracy believes in liberal Constitutionalism.

2) It believes in the sovereignty of people .

3) Democratic state is the theoretical part of Political Democracy while the democratic governance is the practical manifestation of it.

4) People elects and controls the government, can also change the government.

5) Political Democracy is not a goal in itself, but it is a means to achieve the Democratic political goals and values.

2. Social Democracy

Democracy as a type of society is called Social Democracy.The realization of social equality is the key goal of social Democracy. In short social Democracy means that the individuals should not be discriminated against in society on the basis of race, colour ,caste, creed, gender,wealth and birth etc and all should be considered equal in person.According to Hernsha-'The democratic society is a society which holds the strength of the idea of equality, and also the principle of equality prevails in it.

The concept of social Democracy primarily emphasises on the right of social equality .Its general meaning is that people should get equal importance in society and no one should be deemed as the means of pleasure for any other person. In practice two things are necessary to establish social Democracy:

I) The privileges based on religion, race, breed, language, gender,money etc. in the society should be removed.

ii) All people should be given equal opportunities for social progress.

3. Economic Democracy:

Democracy as a kind of economy is called economic Democracy. In present century the idea of economic Democracy is presented by Marxists and Socialists. In 18th and 19th century, individualists also discussed Democracy in the economic realm, which was totally different from the economic Democracy of Marxists and Socialists.

4) Moral Democracy-

Some scholars have accepted Democracy as a philosophy of moral and spiritual life. This very moral approach towards Democracy is called as 'ethical Democracy'. Ethical Democracy is a practical form of all democratic philosophies in which human values are perceived as the basic foundation of society and governance. The best expression of moral democracy in this form was seen in the slogan 'liberty, equality, and fraternity' of the liberal democratic revolution of France in 1789. Here fraternity among all three has more significant, because equality cannot be found without brotherhood amongst individuals,and without equality freedom too cannot be achieved.

II. VARIOUS THEORIES AND CONCEPTS OF DEMOCRACY-

Democracy holds a broad ideology in itself and scholars have different opinions on this question Who uses the power in Democracy? Or by which class the real use of power should be exercised in the society? What kind of relations are there in between the ruler and the ruled? And what should be the value system of Democracy? Due to the same sort of contemplation various theories and approaches of Democracy are presented as such:

1. The Traditional liberal theory of Democracy.

2. The Pluralist theory of Democracy.

3. Elitist theory and approach of Democracy.

4.TheMarxist theory and approach of Democracy.

5.The Socialist theory and approach of Democracy.

1 .TheTraditional Theory of Democracy-

This theory was developed in the Western world according to liberal political thinking in previous three centuries.This is often called as the Western Theory of Democracy or the Popular Theory of Democracy. Hobbes, Lock, Rousseau , Bentham, JS Mill, TH Green, Montesque, Abraham Lincoln, Jefferson, Herbert Spencer etc are perceived as the

major thinkers of Traditional Liberal Theory of Democracy. All these scholars have presented their ideas related to Democracy in the context of Individual happiness, liberty, Rights etc.
Basic beliefs and features of Traditional Theory of Democracy are as follows:

1. Man is an intelligent creature, therefore the ability to understand the self interest is inherent in him.
2. All persons are basically equal.
3. The government should be formed according to the liberal and democratic Constitutionalism, meaning that the principle of limited governance should be followed .
4. The will of people is the basis power of government, so the government is merely a trustee of political power.
5. There are definite and fundamental rules of governance,such as:
   I. Government should be run by the representatives of people.
   II. The principle of majority should be followed in the formation and operation of government.
   III. Government should be responsible to people.
   IV. protection of people should be the purpose of governance.
6. People should enjoy civil liberties, and to protect them a free and fair judiciary must be established.
7. Free and fair elections must be held after a certain fixed period of time, and more than one political party should remain available to contest the election.
8. Government should respect the public opinion.

(2) The Pluralist Theory and Approach of Democracy-

The basic premise of the Pluralistic Theory and Approach of Democracy is the pluralistic ideology which believes in the federal form of society. This theory of Democracy is developed by HJ Laski, Ernest Barker, Miss Folette, GDH Cole, Digvi etc. After World War II Robert Dahal also contributed in its development. He preferred to call it Multiculturalism.

According to Robert Pristhus "The Pluralist Theory of Democracy is a kind of socio political system,in which many private groups and interest groups play their part in the power of state".

(3) The Elitist Theory and Approach of Democracy-

The Elite clan is the centre of this theory of democracy. Robert Michelle, Mosca, Pareto, Bernham, C Right, Mills etc are the main exponents of this theory . Robert Michelle is a German thinker and he has presented his thoughts in the book named the 'Political Parties'. Mosca is an Italian scholar who has put his thoughts in his book named 'The Ruling Class'.

(4) The Marxist theory and approach of Democracy-

The Marxist theory of Democracy presents a unique form of Democracy which is a kind of economic Democracy by its nature but Marxist liked to call it People's Democracy. The root idea of Marxist Democracy is seen in the ideology of Karl Marx and fredrick Angels and it has been given a practical form by Lenin, Stalin Maotse Tung etc.

(5) The Socialist Theory and Approach of Democracy-

The theory of Socialist Democracy is made by the coordination of Liberal and Marxist theories. It wants to achieve both the ideals, the practical freedom of a person is vested in liberal Democracy and the ideal of economic equality is contained in Marxist Democracy. The form to which socialist theory of Democracy gives stress is often called democratic socialism. This theory believes in the evolutionary and developmental means rather than the means of revolution and violence .Accordingly by the means of liberal Democracy and Parliament ary system, it is possible to protect the political freedom of an individual, and the ideal of economic equality can also be achieved.

3. Kinds of Democratic Government-

The overall liberal Democracy and the related

democratic governing system are recognised in two major forms:

{A} Direct or pure Democracy.

{B} Indirect or representative Democracy.

(A) Direct Democracy-

Under the Direct Democracy public enjoys the sovereign power of state itself .It takes the decisions related to policies, makes laws and appoints administrative officials. Hernsha states that the democratic governance is a rule in which the public itself directly exercises the sovereignty without caretakers or representatives in the true sense. Hernsha's statement is fully applied to direct Democracy. It is noteworthy that this type of democratic government was found in the ancient states of Greece and currently it is found only in the five cantons (states) of Switzerland in the entire world.In fact the system of direct democratic governance is only possible in small and under populated states, but presently most of the states are bigger in terms of size and population,that's why it is not possible to implement this system.

(B) Indirect or Representative Democracy-

Indirect Democracy is found almost in all democratic states in modern times, under this system public itself does not use the power of governance but exercises the power through its representatives. According to JS Mill- Direct or Representative Democracy is an arrangement in which the whole public or the majority of public entertain the power of governance through its representatives which are elected time and again. Some other scholars have also given the definitions similar to Mill. Some major

definitions in this regard are as follows-

(a) Democracy is a form of rule in which the governing power of the state is not vested in any special class or classes but in the members of whole society-Lord Bryce.

(b) Democracy is a kind of governing system in which most part of a nation acts as a ruler—Dycee.

(c) Democracy is a kind of rule in which everyone takes part.--Seeley

(d) Democracy is a government of people, by the people, for the people--Abraham Lincoln.

After studying the definitions presented by various scholars, we come to the conclusion that democratic governing system comprises some special characteristics.

Key features of Democracy

1. Governance of People-

As a system of governance Democracy is the rule by whole public .The word public here is used for the entire mass of people and for each individual .Thus this rule does not belong to any particular class, creed, language and or culture etc.

2. Government Made by People-

In this Democracy the government is made by people. Public elect its representatives and the representatives make the government in this system.

3. Democratic rule is a means only it is not the accomplishment – in Democracy the governance is not considered as an accomplishment ever ,it is considered as a means only, in fact the Democracy is considered as a means to achieve following democratic accomplishments in a regime;

I) Protection of individual freedom and dignity.

ii) Strengthening general welfare.

4. Governance accountable to People-

Democratic governing system accepts the principle of public dominance. Thus the system is accountable to public for its functions in Democracy .It means, if the government seizes individual freedom or doesn't respect public or doesn't work in public interest, then the public can change it.

5. Democracy is a Developing Governance-

In the modern era democratic system of governance has gone through many stages of evolution, initially it was an Individualistic

Democracy that was later turned into Liberal Democracy and currently it has been attached to the concept of public welfare state .The result of this development is that, in the beginning where Democracy had given stress over the political freedom and equality of a person and the Constitutional rule of law ,but now it has started accepting the principle of equality and Justice in the social and economic sphere and thus the development of Democracy has increased its level and scope.

In modern world there are two main forms of representative democracy prevalent- 'The Presidential rule and the Parliamentary rule'.

The British system is the ideal example of Parliamentary Democracy while the system in US is best in Presidential rule. Switzerland is a nation where both systems of governance are accepted in a mixed form at the federal level.

4. Critical examination of Democracy

Scholars like Berk have considered total Democracy ashypocrisy, on the other hand scholars like Loyall have considered it as the best ruling system, so to arrive at a conclusion it is necessary for us to study its merits and demerits.

Merits of Democracy-

The chief merits of Democracy are as follows-

1. Growth in Public Interest –

The democratic rule is governed by the representatives of public. They win elections on the promise of improvement in public welfare and they have to contest elections in future too. So these public representatives rule in the interest of public. The government is accountable to the public in a Democracy.

2. Effective Governance-

Democracy is considered to be the best governing system. There are enough reasons for the efficiency of Democracy, as policies are framed according to the public opinion in this system, so the public support is always available to implement them. Democratic rule is accountable to public, so it tries to maintain the efficiency of governance.

3. Means of Mass Education-

In a Democracy public display its opinion on common issues. The common man expresses his notions on various problems through general elections and also by several other means of public opinion. People are aware about their rights and duties, and they learn to sacrifice their small interests for the sake of big ones. Due to the same quality, Gaital has called Democracy as "A school for education of citizenship".

4. Means of Moral Education-

Democratic rule also provides moral education. According to 'Lowell' Democracy cements the feelings of ethics and purity of a man, According to 'Bryce'-- After getting political rights in a Democracy the personality of a man develops and his duty becomes apparent to him.

In practice, we see in a Democracy that a man emerges out from the narrow boundaries of family, and extends himself to the warfare of public at large and starts behaving with fellow citizens with cooperation, generosity and sympathy.

5. Patriotic Education-

Democracy also develops feelings of Patriotism in people.

It creates a sense of love and affection for the nation.

In the words of 'Mill'-Democracy enhances the feelings of devotion.

6. Protection Against Mutiny-

The possibility of revolt always persists in a state where the governance is controlled only by a single class. This situation is totally absent in Democracy.

There is no need of rebellion in it. The government is accountable to public in Democracy. In Democracy all parties have the freedom of expression with the right to contest elections. If there is any disagreement on a certain issue with the government, the freedom to vote against the rule in the next election also reduces the possibility of revolution .

7. Governance Based on Freedom and Equality-

Democracy accepts the notion of freedom and equality of a person.It does not discriminate among the people on the basis of caste, creed, religion, language, gender etc.

8. Establishment of Free and Fair Judiciary -

Free and fair judiciary is established which protects a person from the atrocities of legislative and executive bodies and protects the freedom of a person.Such a Judiciary gives courage to a person to oppose the wrong policies of government and makes the rule obey its Constitutional dignities.

9. Conducive in the Development of Arts, Literature, Culture and Science-

Democracy does not hold any unfair control over arts, literature, culture and science rather it endeavours to develop them.Compared to Democracy all these areas are under control in totalitarianism, because no freedom of thought and action is available there. So there is little development found in arts, literature and culture in totalitarianism, and the progress in science is also hindered.

10. Faith in Constitutionalism -

Democracy believes in Constitutionalism, it means Democracy believes in the rule of law instead of autocracy and accepts such a rule which recognises individual freedom. It has a simple meaning that Democracy believes in limited governance instead of absolutist rule and accepts decentralization of power.

11. Powerful governing system-

Democracy invokes Patriotism in a person, and it is a kind of governance based on consensus. So whenever the nation faces a crisis the whole public as an individual stands against it.

12. Supporter of World Peace-

The history of monarchy, oligarchy, and authoritarianism shows that these ruling systems have posed threat to world peace time and again. The reason is that these ruling systems are based on military power, rigid foreign policy and expansionism ,where Democracy has great faith in world peace and cooperation . Its reason is that Democracy believes in peaceful coexistence instead of military rule and wants to solve the bilateral disputes through negotiations, agreements and also by international laws.

Demerits of Democracy-

Following defects are found in Democracy which can be called arguments against it.

1. **Illusory concept of an Individual-**

Democracy considers individual full of Intelligence and discretion, So it gives him the right to cast the vote and also perceives him capable of giving fair decisions in political matters, but the critics feel that man is an extinct creature which is driven by his impulse and basic instincts, so when people are provided franchise we get mobocracy in place of Democracy in practice.

2. **Apathy of the Intellectual Class-**

The intellectual class remains unconcerned in Democracy. In this system it is believed that numbers are given more importance than merits. For this reason intellectual people do not actively participate in this system.

3. Claim of Academic Importance is Illusory:

The claim that Democracy educates the person about citizenship, moral values and patriotism is illusive. The actual situation is quite different from it. Political parties make concessions in situations according to their selfishness and then publicize the mass national interest. They denounce each other in order to bring various sections of the society under their influence and also keep provoking their feelings.

4. Democratic Freedom and Equality is Deceptive-

Democracy provides political freedom and equality to the people but it does not provide economic independence and equality to them.The political freedom and equality becomes meaningless in the absence of economic freedom and equality. The Peer people contest elections in

Democracy and by the influence of money and power they become victorious. When most of the members of Executive council are wealthy then they make laws which are mostly in the interest of rich people. So due to Economic inequality the political Independence and equality for poor class is ignored in Democracy.

5. Side Effects Of Political Parties-

For running a Democracy political parties are compulsory, but there are many flaws in the political party system also. Due to these flaws disorder occurs in Democracy .In principle all political parties are formed in national interest, and they promote various social and economic policies and programmes for upliftment of the people, but for them the devotion to the party is important than the patriotism in practice.

6. Unaccountable Governing System-

In principle Democracy is said to be accountable to the public but it looks unaccountable in practice. No party takes responsibility for the failures in Democracy, The government blames opposition's movements and their policy of impediment for its major failures. But the opposition parties always inculpate the own policies of government for the failures.

7. Waste Of Public Money And Time-

While formulating the policies and in the creation of laws, excessive amount of money is spent and a lot of time is also wasted in the Democracy. All the functions are performed by different committees after having long debates in Parliament .This process of Democracy is very expensive in view of time and money. Similarly huge amount of money and time of nation is spent in general elections. Thus Democracy is a very expensive system for the poor nations and on the other hand the speed of development is also very low.

8. Disinterested Voters-

Democracy is called the rule of public, but the voters do not show enough interest in the elections. In Democracy in spite of strong efforts of the political parties and their contestants, only 50 to 60% voters exercise their franchise. This fact gives a clear indication that due to the flaws of Democracy public itself does not consider it as its own system of governance. Apart from this, when all the voters do not exercise their franchise then the less eligible and opportunistic candidates get elected in that condition .

9. Weak Governance In View Of Emergency-

In war and other type of crisis the democratic rule has proved weak, because the power is decentralized in it. Quick and secret decisions are not possible in this system. In World War II apart from Britain all the democratic countries of Europe proved weak against Nazi Germany and similarly democratic nations of Eastern Europe were also proved weak against Soviet Russia after the world war II.

10. Democracy not a Supporter of World Peace-

Communist have the opinion that the democratic States are capitalist States.Capitalism give birth to war and Imperialism, so the democratic States cannot be considered as supporters of world peace. The democratic countries like Britain, France etc. had adopted the policy of War and imperialism. At present the rich democratic states of Europe seemed antagonist of War and political imperialism, but their policies are giving birth to a new kind of financial imperialism, to which we call new colonialism. They are influencing the economy of Africa and Asia in their own interest by the help of International Financial authorities and multinational companies. Communist have a belief that in modern time Democracy and capitalism hold a mechanisation and it is dangerous for the peace of the world.

5. Essential Conditions for the Success of Democracy

Any system of governance can only work in the specific conditions and it gets demolished when the circumstances become adverse.This is also true for the democratic system. After the First World War Democracy was imposed in many states of Europe but in the absence of favourable conditions, the democratic system of rule was not successful and it was later replaced by dictatorship. At present democratic ruling system has collapsed in the countries of Asia, Africa and in the Latin American countries, because the required terms and

conditions for the success of Democracy are absent in those nations. Scholars have an opinion that following conditions could be helpful in the successful operation of Democracy.

1. Peace and Order-

For the success of Democracy the home conditions are essential to be normal and there should be no fear of war or any external invasion. In this situation the decentralization of power stays balanced and people enjoy their freedom. At the time of external attacks, or if there persists movements challenging the political stability of the country then the government gets the power centralised for the sake of national integrity and security and also imposes ban on the individual freedom of a person. In such a situation Democracy starts to crumble and the path for the establishment of dictatorship opens. Therefore peace and order is essential for Democracy.

2.Strong National Economy-

A strong economy of the nation is essential for the success of Democracy. The democratic system falters if the national economy is going through a crisis. Just after the First World War Democracy ended after the failure of national economy in Germany and Italy, and dictatorship was imposed. Similarly due to the economic muddle in Eastern Europe after the World War II, Democracy came to an end, and the communist rule was established. In modern era the economic disarray is a major reason for the failure of Democracy in the states of Latin America. Many Afro Asian states are also facing the similar crisis.

3. Establishment of Economic Uniformity-

For the successful operation of Democracy not only it is necessary that the national economy remains strong but the economic equality should also prevail in the state as far as possible. In another words there should be less or no gap between the rich and the poor. This is only possible when there is a large section of middle class present in the country. Class struggle which weakens the Democracy can be avoided only in this situation.

4. Establishing Social Justice-

For the success of Democracy it is essential that there is no discrimination amongst the people based on, caste, creed, language, gender, colour, sex etc. All people should be considered equal and entitled for equal judicial protection. Thus when all the people get equal status in society then it is perceived that emotional unity with the concept of social Democracy has been established.

5. Educated and Sensible People-

The public must remain educated and vigilant for the success of Democracy.Only educated people are able to understand the process and problems of Democracy and can create a healthy public opinion.Apart from that, if the public remain vigilant, it is always able to oppose the anti democratic policies and actions of the government.

6. Formation of Public Opinion-

For the success of Democracy the freedom for the means of public opinion is necessary. It means that there should be no government regulation on press, literature, radio, cinema, television etc. When the means of public opinion remain free, citizens also become successful in criticising the actions of government and thus democratic status is upheld and Democracy works successfully.

7. Civil Ethical And National Character-

There is a great hope for the success of Democracy when the civil, ethical, and national character in a society is higher. In such a society people exercise their rights and duties fairly. They mull over public issues in mass interest and treat fellow citizens with tolerance, generosity, spirit of service, sympathy, affection etc. In fact the Democracy finally depends on the power of public. When its civil, ethical, and national character become strong, then the Democracy is considered successful.

8. Decentralization of Power and Local Self Government-

Centralisation of power is the base of dictatorship where decentralization is of Democracy. Only after the decentralization of power different sections of

public take part in the functions of Government and make Democracy successful.Local self government is a good form of decentralization in a Democracy. By the means of local self government, common man participates willingly in the governance and realises the rights of citizenship in an appropriate manner.

9. Civil Liberties-

Democracy believes in the principle of Limited governance.It means that, elementary or basic liberties should be provided to citizens by the Constitution and,provisions for the protection of these liberties should also be made.Civil liberties means that the citizens should have the freedom to hold any organisation, to manifest ideas and to have peaceful protest.The conclusion of civil liberties is that the citizens should hold the right to criticize those functions and policies of the government to which they consider anomalistic and opposite to Democracy.It is clear that to exercise fundamental civil liberties the freedom of the means of creating public opinion is also necessary.

10. Written Constitution and the Democratic Traditions-

Written Constitution means that the language of the Constitution should be very clear so that no dispute and delusion occurs regarding interpretation of it.Apart from that the process of amendment in the Constitution should be difficult, so that no political party could change the Democracy in dictatorship by taking the advantage of majority as Hitler did in Germany.Democratic traditions refer to those rules and regulations of conduct which are not described in the Constitution or anywhere else in writing , but It is all about pushing the process of Democracy forward, and almost all parties give consensus for its implementation.

11. Independent and Powerful Judiciary-

Constitutionalism is the basis of Democracy, which means that in a Democracy the government does not receive autocratic power, but it is necessary for it to accept the Constitutional limits and boundaries. For the success of Democracy, the establishment of a powerful and independent Judiciary is essential, because such a Judiciary can stop the executive from violating the laws and becoming oppressive, and can also declare the unconstitutional laws invalid formed by legislative branch. This sort of Judiciary also protects the freedom of citizens.

12. Qualified and Fair Staffing System-

The staffing system imposes the policies made by public representatives in the Democracy.For the success of Democracy it is essential that the employees should be efficient enough not only in their work but also in the service of people. They should always remain neutral and fair regarding the party politics.

13. Healthy and Well Organised Party System

In practice Democracy is a party system, the success of Democracy depends on the policies, programs, and loyalty of the political parties.

It is necessary for the success of Democracy that the formation of political parties is based on healthy grounds.There organisation should not be based on region, language or community.It should be based on national ground swhich means the formation of political parties should be focused on the economic and political problems of national level. Apart from that there should be a kind of internal Democracy in the steering of political parties. Internal elections in the parties should be held from time to time.They should not make defectors and indisciplined people as their members.

14. Eligible and Loyal Politicians -

The eligible and intelligent politicians who keep loyalty in Democracy are essential for the success of Democracy. Such politicians are able to find peaceful and democratic solutions to national problems. If the politicians are corrupt, opportunistic, liars, greedy of power and provide illegal profit to supporters and also instigate their mawkish motions, then they would always convert the Democracy into ochlocracy and in such a situation a crisis of leadership emerges before the country.

15. National Plans For Public Interest-

In a developing world it is essential for the success of Democracy that national plans are made by the government which help in the steady development of agriculture and trade. On the other hand such plans increase the National Income and are helpful in raising the living standard of weaker sections.

National Consensus on Basic Issues-

The consensus on basic issues amongst political parties, minority and majority classes is very essential for the success of Democracy.

Important Points

I The meaning of the word 'Democracy' [Demos + kratia] = power of public that is the rule of public. In modern era Democracy is a gift of liberal intellectual movement. Presently the liberal Democracy is most popular and its broad meaning can be revealed as follows;

1. This is a method of taking decisions.
2. This is a group of theories for taking decisions.
3. This is a concept related to ideological values.

II Democracy is a word which has a number of meanings.

III There are four forms of Democracy.

(a) Political Democracy -It has two forms;

(i) Democracy as a state.

(ii) Democracy as governance.

According to democratic concept the sovereignty resides in public.

4. Democratic rule is the practical form of democratic state. There are two types of Democratic Regime (i) Direct Democracy. (ii) Indirect or Representative Democracy.

   Two forms of Indirect Democracy are prevalent (1) Parliamentary Democracy (2) Presidential Democracy.

5. Basic features of Political Democracy;

6. The Characteristics of Social Democracy-

   (I) Social Equality (ii) Equal oportunities for social progress to all. (iii) Supplementary for the political democracy.

7. Economic Democracy

   It has three sub types and meanings :

(I) Individualist economic Democracy- It is a pure capitalist Democracy.

(ii) Marxist's economic Democracy- which is the very opposite economic egalitarian system from the capitalist Democracy.

(iii) Liberal economic Democracy- which believes in the perception of public welfare state.

8. **Moral or Ethical Democracy: Its major features and characteristics are-**

   (i) Emphasis on moral and spiritual values.

   (ii) Belief in the dignity of a person.

   (ii) Emphasis on Freedom, Equality and Brotherhood.

   (iv) Belief in universal ideology by its nature.

Exercises

Short Answer Type Questions-

1. Which words of the Greek language are combined in the word Democracy And what is the popular and acceptable meaning of it ?
2. What are the two major dissimilarities of Democratic governance?
3. What are the two main types of liberal representative (indirect) democratic governing system?
4. What is the meaning of social Democracy, as a 'form of Democracy'?
5. As a kind of Democracy, what do you understand about the moral Democracy ?
6. Give two arguments criticizing the Pluralist Theory and approach of Democracy.
7. Why there is a doubt about the Aristocratic Theory of Democracy in being a democratic

theory?

8. Mention any three qualities of Democratic governance.
9. Mention any three demerits of Democratic governance.
10. Mention three conditions or circumstances required for the successful steerage of Democracy.
11. Indicate three major obstacles in the path of Democracy in India.
12. Give three factual arguments that reveal the bright future of India's Democracy.

Essay Type Questions-

1. What do you mean by Democracy? Describe its major types.
2. Democracy is considered as a form of governance, a concept of social organisation and a way of life, why?
3. What do you understand by the Democratic Governance ? Critically examine it
4. Explain the difference between Direct and Indirect Democracy.
5. Discuss the merits and demerits of Indirect Democracy.
6. How many key principles and approaches of Democracy are there in total? Briefly describe the liberal, Marxist and Socialist theories of Democracy
7. Write short notes on the following-

(a) Chief characteristics of Liberal Representative Democracy.
(b) Why Democracy is called the rule of incongruity?
(c) Democracy is the best form of governance, because people still have no knowledge of best governance superior to it.
(d) Give suggestions to end flaws in Democracy.

Chapter 6

Central Government

Meaning and Definition of Government-

The state is an abstract concept, which is an intangible and invisible institution, the organisation which gives it a concrete shape is called the government.The overall will of the state is determined, expressed and implemented by the government; we can say that the government is the only expression of that abstract concept of state.The state cannot be imagined without a government which makes and executes the laws to serve the people residing in a certain territory,and punish and bring on the right path the people who do not obey the laws in a proper way. Defining the government Garner has said, 'government is a tribunal or a machine, by which the policies of a state are finalized, general issues are regulated and the common interests are upgraded.

Three Major Parts of a Government are as follows-

1. Legislature 2. Executive 3. Judiciary

1. Legislature-

The legislature is the first among the three parts of government. The formation of Legislature in Indian ruling system is on two levels; first- Union legislature, second -state legislature the union legislature is called Sansad or parliament. There is a provision in the article 79 of Constitution that the Federation of India will have a parliament which is constituted by The President and the two houses, and these would be named Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha respectively. Thus the collective name of all three- the President, Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha is called parliament.

The structure of Lok Sabha-

Lok Sabha is the First or Lower House of the Parliament it is also called the Popular house because its members are directly elected by the public.

1. Number of members-

The number of members of Lok Sabha was fixed 500 in the original Constitution but it was increased on occasions. Now it is made sure by the Constitution act of Goa, Daman and Diu of 1987, that the maximum number of Lok Sabha can be 552.

530 members from state electorates and 20 from union electorates could be elected from them and The President can nominate two members for Anglo Indian community.

2. Election-

Members of Lok Sabah are elected directly and the election is based on adult suffrage. In India an 18 years old person is now considered as an adult. All the constituencies of Lok Sabha are kept for single membership.

3. Eligibility Conditions for Members-

1. He must be a citizen of India. 2. He must have completed the age of 25 years. 3. He should not hold any office of profit under the Government.of India or any State Government. 4. He should not be bankrupt and declared of unsound mind by any Court.

4. Term of office for Lok Sabha-

The tenure of Lok Sabha is 5 years. On the advice of Prime Minister, the President can dissolve Lok Sabha prematurely. It has been happened 9 times so far.

5. Sessions-

The session of the Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha are convened and prorogued by the

President, however the rule in this regard is that there should be no gap of more than 6 months between two sessions.

6. Office Bearers of Lok Sabha-

According to the article 93 of Constitution, Lok Sabha will elect a Speaker and a Deputy Speaker from amongst its members. The speaker and Deputy Speaker could be removed from their respective posts if a resolution about this matter is passed by a majority of all the present members of Lok Sabha, but it is mandatory to give a minimum 14 days notice of the intention to move this kind of resolution in Lok Sabha. The speaker and the Deputy Speaker will get the desired salary and allowances determined by the Constitution.

Functions and Powers of the Speaker

The Speaker of the Lok Sabha holds almost all those rights similar to the Speaker of House of commons in British Parliament.

1. All the meetings of Lok Sabha are chaired by the Speaker and the discipline and decorum of the house is also maintained by him.

2. Speaker decides the desired agenda to be taken up for discussion during the meetings, and presides over these meetings he also allots the time for debate on various issues on the advice of opposition leader.

3. He is an ex officio speaker of some committees of the house.He also appoints the Presidents of select committees and all these committees work under his guidance.

4. Only speaker can decide whether a bill is money bill or not.

5. All the correspondence between Parliament and The President is done by the speaker.

The structure of Rajya Sabha-

Rajya Sabha is the Second or the Upper house of Parliament. It holds lesser powers as compared to Lok Sabha.

1. Number of members and election process-

The number of members of Rajya Sabha can be 250 maximum according to the Constitution, but at present it is only 245, 12 of them are nominated by the President. They are the distinguished personalities who excel in various fields of arts, literature, science, social services and sports. 233 members are elected through state legislative assemblies and these members are elected by the members of various state legislative assemblies of the union and the members of the legislative assemblies of union territories according to the Single Transferable Vote System of proportional representation.

2. Qualification for the members-

The Qualifications for the members of Rajya Sabha are same as the members of Lok Sabha. The only difference is that the age required for members of Lok Sabha is 25 Years but it is 30 Years or more decided for the members of Rajya Sabha.

3. Tenure of Members-

Rajya Sabha is a Permanent House and is not a subject to dissolution, however one third of its members retire after every second year.The member who is elected for a full term, serves for a period of 6 years.

4. Office Bearers of Rajya Sabha

There are two office bearers in Rajya Sabha. The Chairman and the deputy Chairman. The Vice President of India is the ex-officio Chairman of Rajya Sabha, his tenure is of 5 years. Rajya Sabha elects one of its members as Deputy Chairman for term of 6 years.

Powers and functions of the Parliament

The Constitution has provided enough powers to the Parliament. The principal powers of parliament can be mentioned in the following terms-

1. Legislative powers-

The main function of Parliament is to create laws keeping in view national interests. Parliament has the power to make laws on the subjects mentioned in the Union and Concurrent lists, though the union Parliament and the State Assemblies both can make laws on the subjects of

Concurrent list the Parliament ary law overrides state legislative laws in case of contradiction. Laws on residual subjects can also be made by the parliament.

2. Power of Amendment in the Constitution-

Parliament has got significant powers in relation to the amendments in Constitution. A bill for amendment in the Constitution can be initiated in either House of Parliament but not in any Legislative Assembly. In most part of the Constitution amendment can be made by a simple majority of the house or a two third majority of both houses separately. There are some situations in the Constitution where the consent of at least half of the State Legislatures is essential for the amendment.

3. Financial Powers-

Being a representative of the public, Indian Parliament holds absolute power on the national finance, and any work related to income and expenditure will not be performed till the budget proposed by the finance minister is approved by the Parliament.

4. Administrative Powers-

The Parliament ary system has been set up by the Indian Constitution, so according to Constitution the union executive i.e. the cabinet is accountable to the Parliament (Lok Sabha in practice). The cabinet can remain in office till it has the support and confidence of the majority in the Lok Sabha. The parliament can hold control over the executive indifferent ways.

5. Electoral Powers-

By through the article 54 several electoral powers have been granted to the Parliament. Elected members of both the houses of Parliament are part of the electoral board constituted for the election of the President. According to article 66 the elected members of both houses of Parliament elect the vice President.

6. Miscellaneous Powers-

In addition to powers mentioned above the Parliament holds some other powers too.

i) Both houses of Parliament can pass the impeachment motion against The President based on the special provision of Constitution and dismiss him. In the same way both the houses can pass the proposal to dismiss the judge of Supreme Court or High court on the basis of Incompetence, mischief or conduct.This type of motion should be passed by two third majority of each house. The motion to remove the Vice President should be approved by the Lok Sabha.

ii) For the effectiveness of emergency declared by the President, approval of both the houses is needed.The President's rule is exercisable for 6 months at a time and still if there is a need, it can be extended up to 6 months, but for this the assent of both the houses of Parliament would be compulsory.

Powers or the authority and functions of the Lok Sabha

1. Legislative powers-

According to the Constitution the Parliament of India can make laws on federal list, concurrent list and on the subjects of state list also. Under certain circumstances regarding non financial bills and bills of amendment in the Constitution, it is said that such bills can be proposed in both the houses of Parliament, either Lok Sabha or Rajya Sabha and the bill will be sent to The President for signature after the approval of both the houses of Parliament .

2. Financial powers-

Powers related to financial sector are provided only to Lok Sabha by the Indian Constitution, and the position of Rajya Sabha is secondary in this rgard. According to article 109 money bills can be proposed in Lok Sabha only, Rajya Sabha is not entitled for it. After being passed by Lok Sabha the money bill is sent to Rajya Sabha and it is essential for Rajya Sabha to return this bill to Lok Sabha within 14 days of its receiving. Rajya Sabha can propose amendments in the bill but to accept them or not, depends on the choice of Lok Sabha.

3. Power to control the Executive-

The Parliamentary system has been established by the Indian Constitution. Therefore,

according to the Constitution the union executive body or the cabinet is accountable to the Parliament (Lok Sabha in practice) Cabinet only enjoys its office till it gets the trust of Lok Sabha.

4. Power of Constitutional amendment-

As per article 368 of the Constitution, Lok Sabha has got the right to amend the Constitution in with Rajya Sabha. The task of amendment in most part of the Constitution is made by the Parliament alone.

5. Role of an electoral college-

Lok Sabha also works as an electoral college According to article 54 elected members of Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha with the elected members of state legislative assemblies together elect The President.

Functions and powers of the Rajya Sabha-

Powers of Rajya Sabha can be studied in the following terms-

1. Legislative powers-

In addition to Lok Sabha the Rajya Sabha also deals in law making process. Both the Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha are provided equal powers by the Constitution regarding nonfinancial bills.

2. Power to amend the Constitution-

Regarding Constitutional amendments, Rajya Sabha enjoys the same power as Lok Sabha. The resolution of amendment in the Constitution will be dropped if there is a disagreement between both the houses of Parliament on the proposal of amendment.

3. Financial Powers-

Rajya Sabha holds some financial powers but the Constitution has provided it weak status as compared to Lok Sabhain this regard. According to Constitution money bill will be introduced in Lok Sabha first. Being passed by Lok Sabha the money bill will be sent to Rajya Sabha where it can be contemplated for maximum 14 days. Rajya Sabha can give suggestions regarding the money bill, but it is the sole discretion of Lok Sabha whether to accept them or not.

4. Executive Powers-

In the Parliamentary system of governance the cabinet is only accountable for the popular house of Parliament. So in India the cabinet is collectively responsible to Lok Sabha but not to Rajya Sabha. Members of Rajya Sabha can ask questions and supplementary questions to ministers and also criticize them but they have no power to remove the ministers by using no confidence motion.

5. Miscellaneous Powers-

Apart from above mentioned powers Rajya sabha holds some other powers too, which it exercises collectively with Lok Sabha. These powers and functions are as follows:

(I) Elected members of Rajya Sabha take part in the election of the President.

(ii) Elected members of Rajya Sabha together with elected members of Lok Sabha elect the Vice-President.

(iii) Rajya Sabha along with Lok Sabha can impeach against the President, the judges of Supreme Court and some of its officials. The motion of such impeachment can only be considered 'passed' when both the houses accept it.

(iv) The Rajya Sabha in collaboration with Lok Sabha can pass a proposal with a majority to remove the Vice President from his post, but the proposal for removal of Vice President goes to Lok Sabha after passing in Rajya Sabha at first.

(v) If emergency is to be applicable for more 1 month, then this type of proposal should be approved by both Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha with their special majority separately.

6. Special Powers-

Rajya Sabha holds two other powers also, which are not with Lok Sabha and these can be exercised only by Rajya Sabha. This kind of power belongs to the federal structure of the country, and Rajya Sabha, being sole representative of the states, has following kinds of powers:

1. According to article 249,Rajya Sabha can declare any subject of state list as of national importance by two third majority of the present and participating members of the house. By this

process, Parliament gets the privilege to make law on that subject of state list.

2. According to article 312 of the Constitution Rajya Sabha can give the power to Central Government for creating new All India Services by passing a resolution with two third majority of it.

Executive

The second part of the government is executive.

The President-

There is a provision in the article 52 of Indian Constitution that there will be a President of India. According to article 53 the executive power of union would be vested in The President and he himself or by the functionaries will use it According to the Constitution The President, Vice President, Prime Minister, Cabinet and the Attorney General of India are included in the Union Executive. The President will be the nominal head of the executive and the Prime Minister with the cabinet would be the real head of Indian union. The head of the executive in Indian union is known as The President. India has adopted Parliamentary System similar to Britain in which the statutory head and the actual head of the executive are two different people. The President is the statutory head of the executive of Indian Union, where he holds position similar to the British King'.

Qualifications for the post of the President-

In the Constitution of India following qualifications are determined to get elected on the post of the President:

1. He must be a citizen of India.
2. He has completed35 years of age or above.
3. He holds the qualification to become a member of Lok Sabha.

Apart from that if a person holds office of profit under Government of India or the Government of any state or under any local or other authority, cannot be a contestant for the post of the President. The President of India won't be a member of Parliament of India or any state Legislative Assembly.

Election of the President

The method of indirect election has been adopted for the Presidential election, and this election is held on the basis of Single Transferable Vote method.

It is like this-

Indirect Election-

The election of The President is made indirectly by such an Electoral College,

in which following members are included.

(1) Elected members of both the houses of Parliament.

(2) Elected members of state assemblies including the elected members of the assemblies of union territories. (70th Constitutional Amendment 1992)

Single Transferable Vote system-

Elected members of Parliament and State Assemblies with union territories elect The President by a special voting system also called as Single Transferable Vote system. Polling in the election is held by the secret ballot and it is necessary for the candidate to get a minimum quota of votes for success in the election.

Formula adopted to determine the minimum quota;

Minimum quota = Valid votes polled / number of candidates to be elected ÷ 1000

Method of Deposition Impeachment-

The term of office for The President of India is 5 years, but according to the article 61 of Indian Constitution he can be deposed through the process of impeachment mentioned in the Constitution of India in case of transgression of Constitution by him. Each house of Indian Parliament has the right to prosecute him, For the permission of prosecution the signatures of one fourth members of the house concerned is required.14 days after the receipt of the proposal, it will be considered in the house which has indicted him. The house will make consideration over it if the proposal of the suite is accepted by two third of total members of the house, then the proposal is forwarded to the second

house. The second house will either investigate itself or appoint a special committee for this task, if the charges against The President are proved and the Second House also accepts the proposal of impeachment by at least two third majority of its members, then The President is deemed to have deposed off from his post from the date of acceptance of the proposal.

Powers and Functions of the President

Facilitating the study, all the powers of The President can be primarily divided into two parts:

General Powers and Rights

The powers conferred by the Constitution to The President in peace time can be studied under following heads-

1. Executive or Administrative powers:

According to article 53 of Constitution the executive power of the union will be vested in The President and he will use it according to the Constitution himself or by his subordinate officers. In this way all the work of governance would be done in the name of The President and all the decisions of government will be considered as 'His' decisions.

(I) Appointment and Dismissal of Important Officers

The President appoints several important officers of Indian Union, such as :

The Council of Ministers on the advice of Prime Minister, Governors of states, Judges of the Supreme Court and High court, Auditor General, Chairman and members of Union Public Service Commission, Ambassadors in foreign countries etc.

(ii) Powers for Governance-

Different rules can be made by him in this regard. He makes the rules regarding the joint sitting of both the houses of Parliament, appointment of the officers and employees in Supreme Court and the rules regarding the powers of Comptroller and Auditor General. The distribution of portfolios amongst Council of Ministers is also made by him.

(iii) Powers in Foreign Affairs-

Being the legal head of Indian Union, The President represents India in foreign countries, appoints ambassadors and diplomatic representatives for the Indian Embassy located abroad and accepts the certificates of foreign ambassadors and diplomats. All pacts and agreements with foreign nations are also signed in the name the President.

(iv) Military Powers-

He is the Supreme Commander of Defence Forces of India but he can use this power according to the laws. Only Parliament holds the power to make laws on subjects of defence services, war and peace etc. So without the approval of Parliament The President of India can neither declare war nor can use the armies.

2. Legislative powers-

The President of India is not only statutory head of the executive of Indian Union but he has also been considered as an integral part of the Indian Parliament, and in this way The President receives various powers of Legislative field.

(i) Legislative administration-

The President has got many powers related to the legislation. He convenes the sessions of Parliament and announces the prorogation of sessions. He can dissolve the Lok Sabha before its tenure on the recommendation of Prime Minister. Lok Sabha has been prematurely dissolved 9 times so far. At the commencement of the session of Parliament, The President addresses joint meeting of both the houses. The work of addressing the legislature can be done by him on other occasions too. The general policy of government is announced in these addresses of the President.

(ii) Power of nomination-

The President holds the right to nominate 12 members in Rajya Sabha, they are the distinguished personalities who exel in Literature, artsor in any other field. He can nominate two members of Anglo Indian community in Lok Sabha.

(iii) Use of veto power on a bill-

Every Bill approved by the Parliament takes the form of law only after the approval of the President. He can return a General bill to the Parliament for reconsideration with a few suggestions, but if that bill is again passed by Parliament with or without any amendment, then The President will have to accept it for the second time.

(iv) Power of issuing ordinance-

When the Parliament is not in session, The President has the power of issuing ordinances. These ordinances will remain valid upto 6 weeks after the commencement of the session of Parliament , but on the wish of Parliament these ordinances can be nullified before their term.

3. Financial powers-

In the beginning of every financial year The President will get details of income and expenditure tabled in both the houses of Parliament .The money bill and the demand for grants cannot be proposed in Lok Sabha without the permission of the President.

4. Judicial Powers-

The theory "Freedom of Judiciary" is adopted by our Constitution.The President appoints the judges of Supreme Court and High court. The approval of The President is essential regarding the rules related to the work order of the court made by the Supreme Court. The President receives yet another important power of clemency. Including judicial powers the power to pardon or reprieve the people who have been sentenced already is also possessed by him.

Emergency powers: Promulgation, Effects and use in practice.

The President is empowered with special powers by the Constitution in the case of emergency. The position of emergency provisions in the Constitution at present time are as follows-

1. Emergency Provisions at the Time of War, Foreign Invasions and Home Unrest-

Method of Declaration- Article 352 of the original Constitution had the arrangements that if The President observes about the danger to peace and normalcy in India or in any part, then after the development of this type of situation in reality or about the apprehension of it, The President could declare the emergency even without the approval of the Parliament .This arrangement lasts for 2 months and after the approval of the Parliament government can retain it till the requirement. But after 44th amendment of the Constitution the provision in this regard is as follows-

First- This kind of emergency can no be declared only after the apprehension of War, external invasion or the armed rebellion. The emergency could not be declared in the name of internal disturbance.

Second-The declaration of emergency by The President under article 352 can only be made after the written advice of the Cabinet.

Third- The assent of the Parliament would be required within a month with its special majority.(total majority of both the houses separately and two third majority of present and participating members those voted), and to keep it continue the permission of the Parliament would be required after every six months.

Fourth- The announcement of emergency can be terminated by the simple majority of the present and participating members of Lok Sabha.

Provision of emergency after the failure of Constitutional machinery in the states-According to article 356, when The President gets the apprehension that there has evolved a situation where the Government of a state could not function according to the provisions of Constitution, then he can declare the state of emergency in that province. This announcement of emergency would not be applicable for a period for more than 2 months without the approval of Parliament. The Presidents Rule can be imposed for 6 months by passing a resolution in the Parliament. This type of proposal is essential to be passed separately by both of the houses of Parliament with a simple majority. The President rule cannot continue in any condition after 3years.

Financial emergency-

Method of Declaration-

According to article 360 when The President

gets the apprehension that, owing to certain circumstances the menace to financial stability and credibility of India has been caused, then he can declare the state of financial emergency. The term decided for such declaration is as same as the first declaration.

Vice President

Election-

In the article 63 of Indian Constitution there is a provision for the post of Vice President. Vice President is elected during the joint sitting of both the houses of Parliament, and this election is performed by The Single Transferable Vote system of proportional representation method with the secret ballot.

Following qualifications are required for thepost of Vice President-

1. He must be the citizen of India.
2. He must be not less than 35 years.
3. He should meet all the qualifications which have been fixed for the members of Rajya Sabha

Deposition-

According to the Constitution the term of office for the Vice President is 5 years but he can resign voluntarily from his post before his tenure or he can be terminated by the resolution of Rajya Sabha passed with the total majority of it, which is later accepted by the Lok Sabha too. The information of this kind of proposal should be given before within 14 days.

Powers and Functions of Vice President-

1. Ex officio Chairman of Rajya Sabha : Vice President is the ex officio Chairman of Rajya Sabha. As he is not a member of Rajya Sabha, so he is not entitled for voting, but in the case of indecisiveness on any subject, he holds the right of 'casting vote' .This is the most important work of Vice President.

2. Taking over the charge of the President in his absence:

In following conditions the Vice President takes over the charge of the post of the President-

(i) After the death of the President.

(ii) After the resignation of the President.

(iii) Deposition of The President due to impeachment.

(iv) Inability of The President due to any reason like disease or a foreign tour.

The Prime Minister

Article 74 of the Constitution of India has the provision for the post of Prime Minister

Appointment of the Prime Minister-

It is provisioned in the Constitution that the Prime Minister will be appointed by the President. According to the basic concept of Constitutional system, it is obligatory for The President to appoint the leader of the party having majority in Lok Sabha as Prime Minister. Yet there may be circumstances where The President can exercise his discretion in relation to the appointment of Prime Minister. Functions and powers of the Prime Minister:

In the Parliamentary system of governance Prime Minister is the only person who is considered as "The Principal Rock of arch shaped building of the Constitution".

1. Formation of Council of Ministers-\

The first work of Prime Minister after assuming his charge is to form a Council of Ministers. Only Prime Minister has to decide that what should be the number of ministers and who should be a minister under the legal range.

2. Distribution and changes of portfolios from amongst the ministers-

Prime Minister acts according to his discretion in the distribution of portfolios amongst the ministers and generally no one makes any objection in the final distribution of portfolios by the Prime Minister.

3. Administration of the cabinet-

Prime Minister superintends all the proceedings and Chairmanship of the meetings of cabinet. Subjects included in the agenda by the Prime Minister are discussed only in the Cabinet meeting.

4. Coordination amongst various departments of governance-

Prime Minister establishes coordination amongst all the departments of government so that it would work as a unit.

5. Leader of Lok Sabha-

Prime Minister is the leader of Lok Sabha principally, and all the lawmaking functions are performed in his leadership. All government bills including annual budget are prepared under his supervision only.

6. Link between the President and the Cabinet-

On the issues of public importance the contact with the head of the nation can only be made via Prime Minister. He apprises The President about the discussion of Cabinet and also transmits President's advice to the cabinet.

7. Bestowing various posts-

The power of appointing high ranked officials given by the Constitution to The President is practically exercised by the Prime Minister, because The President exercises this power with the only advice of Prime Minister, and not on his self discretion.

Council of Ministers:

There is a provision in article 74 of original Constitution that "There will be a Council of Ministers for the help and advice of The President for the administration of his work, and it will be headed by the Prime Minister".Theoretically by the Constitution of India all the powers of executive is deemed to be vested in the President, and the Council of Ministers headed by the Prime Minister is arranged for the help and advice of the President, but The President is merely a Constitutional head in the Parliamentary System of governance adopted by the Constitution, and all the authority of executive in reality (the all powers to help and advice) is vested in Council of Ministers.

Formation of the Council of Ministers

1. Appointment of Prime Minister-

According to article 75 of the Constitution of India the appointment of Prime Minister would be made by the President, and the other ministers would also be appointed by The President on the advice of Prime Minister. According to the Constitution The President appoints the Prime Minister.

2. Selection of Ministers by the Prime Minister-

The Constitutional provision for the appointment of other ministers is as follows -

The President will appoint other ministers on the advice of Prime Minister but The President is bound to accept the advice of Prime Minister in practice.

3. Distribution of Work amongst the Ministers-

The toughest work for Prime Minister after the formation of cabinet is to distribute the portfolios of ministers. Legally Prime Minister holds the total power regarding this act but practically he has to keep a lot of things in mind while distributing the portfolios.

4. Qualifications Required for the Ministers-

In order to become a member of the Council of Ministers, it is necessary for a person to become a member of any house of Parliament .if a person is not a member of Parliament at the time of becoming a minister, then it is essential for him to get elected as a member of Parliament within 6 months of his swearing in as a minister or else he has leave his post.

5. Oath of Office by the Ministers-

Prior to assuming the office each minister including the Prime Minister has to take an oath of office and the Oath of confidentiality before the President

6. Tenure of Council of Ministers there is no fixed term of office for the Council of Ministers. It only remains in the office till it receives the trust of Parliament.

7. Salary and Allowances of Ministers-

There is a provision of giving monthly salary and fixed monthly allowances to the Prime Minister, Cabinet Minister, Minister of States and Deputy minister. It is reviewed by Parliament from time and again. Apart from that they all get free lodging, vehicle and other facilities too.

8. Categories of Ministers (Cabinet and Council of Ministers)

There are three series of ministers-- Cabinet or the Council of Ministers and Ministers of State and deputy ministers. The first level of Ministers are members of Cabinet which are the top unit of governance in the Parliament ary system of India. Members of Cabinet are the heads of one or more departments, minister of state stand at second category between the ministers and deputy ministers. They belong to the special departments and sometimes they also serve as the independent heads of the department. Ministers of this category are invited by the PM for the cabinet meetings in which the questions related to the departments are under consideration. After the ministers of state there is a category of Deputy Ministers, who help the Minister of State under supervision of the Senior Minister.

Powers of the Cabinet

Article 74 of the Constitution states that the Council of Ministers will assist and advise The President in the execution of his duties. It is a traditional erminology, but in practice the cabinet is the top-most unit of Indian system of governance and the whole system of governance is operated by it. In reality all the powers of The President are exersied by the cabinet and it is called the heart of the Indian system of governance

1. Determining the national policy-

The most important task of the cabinet is to make a national policy. Cabinet determines the type of policy to be adopted by the various departments in internal administration and by the foreign missions in external region.

2. Control over law making-

Being a Parliamentary system the expertise of cabinet is not limited only to the policy formulation but the process of law making is also led by it.After the determination of the policy by the cabinet, the law making process is also decided by it and the member of the cabinet only proposes the important bills in the house.

3. Supreme control over National executive-

In principle the entire power of the Union Government is vested in The President but all executive power is practically used by the cabinet.Different heads of departments have their Chairmanship in the cabinet.They superintend their own departments and take care of the functions related to them.

4. Financial Affairs-

The Council of Ministers is responsible for determining the economic policy of the country. In this regard the details of possible income and expenditure or the budget is presented before the Parliament by it. On the basis of prescribed policy laid down by the cabinet the Finance Minister himself prepares the budget and presents it in the Lok Sabha. All other money bills are also presented by the Cabinet in Lok Sabha.

5. Control of Foreign Affairs-

Foreign Affairs of India are governed by the cabinet only. Proclamation related to war and peace is made by the cabinetand the kind of relationship other countries is also decided by the cabinet.

4. Power of Appointment-

The power of appointment of officers given to The President by the Constitution is used by the cabinet only. In India the function of controlling and checking the misuse of the powers of Executive is done by opposition. In order to control the treasury benches and to move the governance in accordance with the Constitution the opposition affects and checks out the government by following means-

Judiciary

Formation of the Supreme Court

1. The number of judges

Originally a Chief Justice and 7 other judges were proposed for the Supreme Court, and the right to fix the number of judges, jurisdiction of Supreme Court, salary and service rules of the judges of Supreme Court was given to the Parliament .The number of judges with the Chief Justice were increased to 31 in 2008.The judges of the Supreme Court are appointed by The President of India. The President seeks the advice of those other judges of Supreme Court which he considers

necessary in this regard. Presently the appointment of the judges of Supreme Court and High court is made by the collegium system. Accordingly the Chief Justice of Supreme Court and a group of senior judges propose names to the President, and The President appoints the judges from this list.

3. Qualification for the Judges-

Following qualifications are essential for the judges of Supreme Court-

(I) He is a citizen of India.

(ii) He has a worked as a judge of High court or has been worked regularly at least for 5 years in two or more than two other courts as a judge.

OR

He has been an advocate in High court or other courts for 10 years.

OR

He has been a distinguished jurist in the opinion of the President.

4. Executive and Impeachment-

In general, every judge of the Supreme Court can remain in office till he attains 65 years of age. Prior to this stage he can resign himself. Due to proven misconduct or inability a judge can be removed from his post by the Parliament.

If both the houses of Parliament with two third majority of their total members separately prove him incompetent or a person with objectionable behaviour, The president of India can removed that judge from his post.

5. Salary, Allowances and other Facilities-

The Chief Justice of India receives a monthly salary of Rs 1 lakh and other judges get Rs 90000 per month as salary. There is also a provision of pension and gratuity for the judges, the salary and allowances are amended from time to time.

6. Immunities-

Judges are kept free from the criticism of their decisions and all their actions.

7. Chief location of the Court-

According to article 130 the head office of the Supreme Court lies in Delhi.

8. Restrictions on judges-

It has been decided in the Constitution that the person who has been a judge of the Supreme Court of India cannot advocate against any Court or any officer after his retirement.

Jurisdiction, powers and functions of the Supreme Court-

By the Constitution of India, the Supreme Court has been granted a much wider jurisdiction which can be studied in following terms.

Original jurisdiction-

The original jurisdiction of the Supreme Court can be kept under following two categories.

A. Original unique jurisdiction

Original unique jurisdiction is meant for those conflicts which can only be heard by the Supreme Court of India. Following subjects are included in the original unique jurisdiction:

- Controversy arising between Government of India and any state.
- Controversy arising between Government of India and any state or union terriotory.
- Any dispute emerged out of constitutional subjects between two states and more than two.

B. Original Concurrent Jurisdiction-

Regarding implementation of the Fundamental Rights bestowed by the Constitution, the High court has also been granted the authority along with Supreme Court, therefore whatever the dispute related to the violation of Fundamental Rights, it can be presented first in the High Court of a state or may be brought directly to the Supreme Court.

2. Appellate jurisdiction-

The Supreme Court has also been granted the appellate jurisdiction by the Constitution along with the original jurisdiction and this is the last appellate Court of India. It has the authority to hear the appeals against the decisions of the High court of all the states. The appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court can be divided into following

categories; Constitutional, civil, criminal and special.

A. Constitutional-

According to article 132 of the Constitution, if the High court proves that there is no significant question included in the dispute regarding the interpretation of the Constitution then the appeal of the decision of High court can be filed in the Supreme Court too.

B. Civil-

The original Constitution had the arrangement in this regard that the appeal for only those civil cases could be made in the Supreme Court from High court where the disputed amount was more than Rs 20000, but by the 30th Constitutional amendment of 1973, the article 133 is amended by removing the limit of Rs 20000, with determining that all the civil disputes are appealable in the Supreme Court.

C. Criminal-

Criminal appeal can be filed in the Supreme Court against the decision of High court when (1) The accused has been awarded capital punishment by High court after overruling ofthe decision of lower court, while the Lower court had already acquitted the criminal or (2) The High court has awarded capital punishment to the accused by hearing the case already filed in a lower court or (3) If the High court proves that the case is appealable in the Supreme Court.

D. Special-

There may be some cases which are not included in the above category but the intervention of Supreme Court could be essential for them. So according to article 135, the Supreme Court has been granted the authority to permit for appeal in Supreme Court against the decision of any other Indian court or Tribunal except the Military Court.

3. Authority to grant special order for appeal-

According to article 136 of the Constitution the Supreme Court itself has the authority that it can hear the appeal against any court or Tribunal of Indian state except the military jurisdiction. There is no Constitutional restriction on this authority of Supreme Court.

4. Advisory jurisdiction-

The Constitution has also provided advisory jurisdiction to the Supreme Court. According to article 143, if at any time The President seems to have got a question of law or fact that is of public importance, then he can seek the advice of the Supreme Court on that question. The acceptance or rejection on court'scounsel depends on the discretion of the President.

5. Court of Record

Article 129 puts Supreme Court at the place of Court of Record. There are two meanings for Court of Record: First, all the decisions of this court will be accepted as evidences everywhere and no question of validity would be raised regarding the passing of these decisions when presented in any Court: Second, any type of sentence can be awarded for The Contempt of court by this court.

6. Savior of the Fundamental Rights-

Supreme Court of India is the protector of Fundamental Rights of the citizens. In order to implement Fundamental Rights the court can issue writs in the nature of habeas corpus, mandamus, quo warranto, prohibition and certiorari.

7. Guardian of the Constitution-Power of judicial review-

The task of guarding the Constitution is given to the Supreme Court by the Constitution itself, which means that the Supreme Court has the authority to investigate the legality of the laws. Article 131 and 132 gives Supreme Court the right of judicial review of the legislations formed by union and the state governments. If the Union Parliament or the state legislature violate the Constitution or constitute laws against the Fundamental Rights, then such laws made by the union Parliament or the State Legislature can be declared illegal by the Supreme Court. This power of Supreme Court is called the power of Judicial Review.

Important Points

- The union Parliament has been named as Sansad in the Indian constitution. It has been divided into three parts.

(1) The President who is the head of the Executive also has role in law making.

(2) Lok Sabha is also called the first house, lower house or a popular house.

(3) Rajya Sabha is also called as second house or upper house.

- The maximum number of Lok Sabha can be 552 members.
- The system of reservations for SC and ST in Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha has been maintained since the enactment of the Constitution.
- The term of Lok Sabha is 5 years but it can be dissolved before its term on the advice of Prime Minister.
- The two office bearers of Lok Sabha- Speaker and the Deputy speaker are elected by Lok Sabha itself.
- Rajya Sabha - The number of Rajya Sabha members can be 250 and out of which 12 members are nominated by The President.
- Term of office-Rajya Sabha is a permanent house which is never dissolved, the term of office for the members of Rajya Sabha is 6 years, and one third of the members retire from Rajya Sabha after every second year.
- There are two main office bearers in Rajya Sabha : Chairman and the Deputy Chairman. The Vice President of India is the ex officio Chairman of Rajya Sabha.
- Works and powers of the Parliament- Legislative powers, Power of amendment in the Constitution, Financial powers, Administrative powers, Electoral powers and miscellaneous powers.
- The President, Vice President, Prime Minister with cabinet and the Attorney General of India are included in the Union Executive.
- The President is the Constitutional head of the Executive of Indian Union.
- The President is elected indirectly by the process of Single Transferable vote system of proportional representation.
- Term of office for The President is 5 years.

  The rights and powers of the President : (1) Peace time powers and (2) Powers in emergency.
- Vice President- Vice President is elected in the joint sitting of both Houses by The Single Transferable Vote of proportional representation method and secret voting system. His tenure is 5 years.
- The powers and functions of Vice President- Ex officio Chairman of Rajya Sabha, takes charge of the post of The President in his absence.
- Union Cabinet-The entire power of the Executive is practically vested in the cabinet in the Parliamentary system of governance.
- Formation or making of the cabinet- Appointment of the Prime Minister by the President, selection of the ministers by the Prime Minister, distribution of portfolios amongst the ministers.
- Categories of ministers: Three categories; Members of the cabinet, Minister of state and the Deputy ministers.
- The cabinet is the internal and most important committee of the Council of Minister.
- The powers and functions of the Cabinet.: The co-ordination work of national policy determination on all important subjects, financial work, operating foreign affairs, appointment related work and other functions.
- Prime Minister-Appointed by the President.
- Need and importance of the Supreme Court- Chief Justice and 30 other judges, nowadays the appointment of judges would be made on the advice of the Collegium of Supreme Court, the judge can remain in office till the age of 65 years.
- Jurisdiction or powers and functions of the Supreme Court.

1. Original jurisdiction-

   (a) Original unique jurisdiction.

   (b) Original concurrent jurisdiction.

2. Appellate jurisdiction Constitutional, civil, criminal, special.
3. Power of giving special order for the appeal.
4. Court of records.
5. Protector of Fundamental Rights.
6. Saviour of the Constitution and the power of judicial review.

EXERCISE

Very Short Answer Type Questions-

1. On which method the election of The President is based on?
2. Who appoints the Prime Minister?
3. Who is the ex officio Chairman of Rajya Sabha?
4. Who presides over the union cabinet?
5. On the adjournment of the house The President issues an order in extra ordinary conditions. What is it called?
6. In relation to which matter both the Supreme Court and the High court have original jurisdiction?
7. Who can be appointed as the judge of Supreme Court?
8. Once appointed, how long can a judge of Supreme Court remain in his post?
9. What do you mean by the Court of Record?

Short Answer Type Questions-

1. Explain the process of election for Vice President
2. What qualifications are required for the Presidential candidate?
3. By which process The President can be removed from his post?
4. Under which article The President can proclaim emergency?
5. How the value of the vote of every member of Parliament and the members of state and Federal assemblies is determined in the election of the President?
6. Describe the Appellate Jurisdiction of Supreme Court.
7. When can Civil and Criminal cases be heard as an appeal in Supreme Court?
8. Why is the Supreme Court called as Court of Record?
9. Who can remove the judge of Supreme Court and High Court and how?
10. Explain the importance of judicial review.

Essay Type Questions

1. Explain the process of election for The President of India.
2. Discuss the peacetime powers and rights of the President.
3. Discuss the emergency powers of the President.
4. Discuss the formation and powers of the cabinet.
5. Describe the formation, jurisdiction and powers of the Supreme Court.
6. Explain the formation and jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.

Lesson-7

The State Government
Formation of State Legislatures and their Functions-

According to the Constitution there is a provision of state legislature in each state of India. In article 168 of the Constitution it is mentioned that, there will be a legislature for every state which will be constituted by Governor and a house or two. Some states will have two houses, and they will be named as Vidhan Sabha (Legislative Assembly) and Vidhan Parishad (Legislative Council) respectively. In each state there is a house of elected representatives on the basis of adult franchise by the people. This house of Legislative body is called Vidhan Sabha (Legislative Assembly) and in some states which have the second house also, call it Vidhan Parishad (Legislative Council).The right to decide whether the legislative bodies of the states would be unicameral or bicameral is reserved with the elected representative of the state and the Parliament of India. At present in the Indian Union only 7 States have the provision for bicameral houses; Uttar Pradesh, Jammu and Kashmir, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Bihar, Andhra Pradesh and Telangana, and the rest of the states have unicameral system only.

The state legislature is made up of following three parts in the above 7 states, having Bicameral Legislature.

1. Governor
2. Legislative Assembly, which is called as the First or the Lower house.
3. Legislative Council which is called as the Second or the Upper House.

Formation of the Legislative Assembly

The Legislative Assembly is the First or the popular house of the Legislature

1. The number of members-

In the Constitution only minimum and maximum number of the members of Legislative Assembly of a state has been fixed. According to article 170 of the Constitution the maximum and minimum number of any Legislative Assembly will be 500 and 60 respectively. Each state is divided into geographical constituencies for the election in such a way that each member of the Legislative Assembly represents at least 75000 people.

2. Reservation of the seats-

Scheme of the reservation of seats in the State Legislatures has been fixed for SC and ST till January 2020 (95th amendment of the Constitution 2009).

If Governor of a state has an opinion that the Anglo-Indian community hasn't got enough representation in state legislature, then he can nominate a member from this community.

3. Election Process-

Apart from the nominated member from the Anglo-Indian community all other members of the legislature will be elected directly.

Adult franchise and unified election process with the method of simple majority is adopted for the elections.

All the constituencies have been made for single membership only.

4. Qualifications for the members-

For the membership of the Legislative

Assembly a person should be-

1. A citizen of India.
2. Not less than 25 years of age (for Legislative Assembly), and not less than 30 years of age (for legislative council) as per article 123 of Indian Constitution.
3. Should not hold any office of profit under State Government or the Government of India.
4. Should not be of unsound mind and stand so declared by a court.
5. Should fulfil the required conditions determined by the state legislature.

Termination of the membership-

In following conditions the membership of the legislature gets terminated:

1. If a person gets elected for both the houses of legislature, he has to resign from one house. Similarly no one can become a member of state legislature and the Parliament together.
2. If any member remains absent without the permission of the house for 60 days continuously from the respective house.
3. If he has lost the required eligibility for the concerned house after getting the membership or later creates any stipulated ineligibility.

5. Tenure-

The term of the Legislative Assembly is 5 years. It can be dissolved prematurely by the Governor, but after the promulgation of emergency the parliament can extend the tenure of legislature according to the law, which cannot be extended for more than 1 year at a time and would not be retained for more than 6 months after the proclamation of the end of emergency.

6. Office Bearers-

There are two main office bearers in the state Legislative Assembly (1) Speaker (2) Deputy Speaker.

Both of them are elected from the members of Legislative Assembly. Members of Legislative Assembly elect from amongst themselves.

Their tenure is similar to the tenure of Legislative Assembly.

Meanwhile the speaker can submit his resignation to Deputy Speaker and the Deputy Speaker submits his resignation to the speaker vice versa.

Both of them can be removed from the concerned posts on the basis of the proposal accepted with majority of MLAs. The intimation regarding this proposal is essential to be given to the concerned (speaker or deputy speaker) before within 14 days.

Powers and Functions of the Speaker-

The powers and functions of the speaker are as follows-

1. He presides over the sittings of Legislature.
2. Maintaining peace and order in the house is a major responsibility of speaker and he holds every right to take all necessary steps for this purpose.
3. Only by his command any member of the house can give a speech in the house.
4. He can order to remove all the non Parliamentary or rude words from the proceedings of the house.
5. He can determine the order of proceeding in the house on the advice of the leader of house.
6. He accepts/does not accept the questions when they are anomalous.
7. He makes the declaration of results after the voting.
8. In normal circumstances, he does not participate in the voting in house but if there is a situation of equal votes in pros and cons on an issue, he uses the casting vote.
9. Whether a bill is money bill or not, is decided by the speaker only.
10. He gives decision on the petitions of defection.

In the absence of Speaker the Deputy Speaker carries out all his functions.

Formation of Legislative Council-

The Legislative Assembly keeps the right of making recommendations to Parliament for the creation and termination of Legislative Council. According to article 169, if the Legislative Assembly by the majority of its total members and with two third majority of its present and participating members passes the motion of this intent, then the Parliament will make the legislation for creation or termination of the Legislative Council in that state.

1. Number of members-

The Legislative Council is also called the Second or Upper house of the Legislature. There is a provision in the Constitution that the number of MLC would not exceed the one third number of MLA in that Legislative Assembly.

At the same time it is also said that its membership shall not remain less than 40. Jammu and Kashmir has been kept an exception in this regard.

2. Election and Nomination of the Members-

5/6thmembers of the Legislative Council are elected and the remaining 1/ 6th members are nominated. These members of the Council are elected indirectly and their elections are held according to the Single Transferable Vote system of proportional representation method. Following electoral colleges elect the members of Legislative Council.

Electoral Board of Local Bodies-

The nearest as good as possible one third of all members is elected by the municipality, district Council and such other local bodies as defined by the Parliament and law.

Electoral College of Legislative Assembly-

One third nearest as good as possible members are elected by the members of Legislative Assembly from amongst the individuals who are not the members of Legislative Assembly.

Electoral College of Graduates-

This is the electoral college of those persons who live in the state concerned and has passed the Graduate Level exam and has also spent more than 3 years after passing it. This Electoral College elects the nearest as good as possible 1/12th part of the total members.

Electoral College of Teachers-

In it, there are teachers who have been teaching in a secondary school or in a higher education institute under the state for 3 years .This electoral college elects nearest 1/12th part of the total members.

V. Members Nominated by Governor-

Almost 5/6th of total number of members mentioned above are elected and the remaining 1/6th of the total members are nominated by the Governor from amongst those people who possess special interest in the field of literature, science, arts, social services etc.

3. Qualifications for the Members

Qualifications for the membership of Legislative Council are the same as of the Legislative Assembly; the only difference is about the age limit which must be 30 years for the Legislative Council. Apart from that the elected members should be registered as voters in their constituency. Election of the members of Legislative Council is held by The Single Transferable Vote system based on the proportional representation method. All other three electoral colleges except the electoral college of Legislative Assembly are set up by the law made by Parliament

4. Tenure-

The Legislative Council is a permanent house in the view that the whole Legislative Council cannot be dissolved at a time. It cannot be dissolved by the Governor also. The tenure for the MLC is 6 years. 1/3rd of its members vacate their seats after every two years.

5. Office Bearers-

The Legislative Council itself elects Chairman and Vice Chairman from amongst its members. The council also holds the power to

remove them from their respective post.

Powers and functions of the Legislative Council-

The powers and functions of the Legislative Council can be mentioned in the following terms:

1. Law Making-

Apart from the money bill, the rest of the bills can be moved in any of the houses of Legislature and should get them approved by both the houses, but herein it is also said in article 197 of the Constitution that, if a bill is rejected by the Legislative Council after having passed in Legislative Assembly or if the Legislative Council makes such type of amendment in the bill which is not accepted by the Assembly, or the bill is not passed by the Legislative Council within 3 months of its induction in the house, then the Legislative Assembly will again approve and send the bill to Legislative Council. If again the bill is disapproved by the Council or it does not pass the bill within a month, or again makes such type of amendments which are not accepted by the Legislative Assembly, then the bill will be deemed as passed by both the houses in spite of without getting passed by the Legislative Council. Thus the Legislative Council can only defer an ordinary bill for 4 months. The council cannot terminate any bill itself.

2. Executive Powers-

The members of Legislative Council can become the cabinet members. The Legislative Council can control the Council of Ministers on the grounds of questions, proposals discussions and debates but it cannot hold the power to sack the Council of Ministers. This work can be performed only by the Legislative Assembly.

3. Financial work-

It is clearly mentioned in the Constitution that, money bills can be introduced in Legislative Assembly only and not in the Legislative council.

After passing the money bill the Legislative Assembly send it to the Council for its recommendation, and then the Council can defer it only for 14 days. If the Council does not return the bill to the Legislative Assembly with its recommendations, then the bill is deemed as passed in the same form by both the houses in the condition in which it was passed by Legislative Assembly.

The Powers and Functions of State Legislative Assembly-

The state Legislative Assembly is the legislative branch of the state, and this assembly is empowered with extensive powers given by the Constitution.

In following terms, the powers of state Legislative Assembly can be studied.

1. Legislative Powers-

The state assembly holds the power to make laws on all those subjects which are given both in state list and the concurrent list subsequently. The ordinary bill can be proposed in any house of the state legislature, but the conclusive power regarding it, is only possessed by the Assembly.

2. Financial Powers-

Legislature, mainly the Assembly holds full control over the 'public exchequer'. Only after the approval of annual budget by the state assembly, any work related to income and expenditure can be undertaken by the government. After the passing of supply bill, government can withdraw money from the consolidated fund for expenditure.

3. Administrative Powers-

Due to the Constitutional arrangements established in the states by the Constitution, the state cabinet is accountable to the legislature, especially to the Legislative Assembly for its policy and functions. Questions can be asked to the ministers by the members of the Assembly or the Council, regarding their departments. Motion of criticism can be passed against the cabinet, or the Adjournment Motion too can be passed. Apart from that, no confidence motion can also be passed by the Assembly due to which the cabinet has to resign.

4. Power to Amend the Constitution-

For the amendment in some sections of our Constitution, it is mandatory for such a proposal to be accepted by at least half of the Legislature of the states, which has been passed with special majority by the Parliament. The state legislature does not hold the right to propose amendments in the constitution. The State Legislatures can only support or reject this type of motions.

5. Election Related Powers

The elected members of the state assembly take part in the election of The President and the Rajya Sabha members.

The current situation and process for formation of Legislative Council in Rajasthan-

There is only a single house of legislature at present in Rajasthan which is known as VIDHAN SABHA. The proposal for the formation of Legislative Council has been passed and sent to Central Government for its permission and approval. At present the proposal is pending at the centre. So there is no second house of legislature in Rajasthan. The process of formation of the second house would be started after the approval from the Central Government.

STATE EXECUTIVE:

Governor, Chief Minister, Cabinet-Functions and Powers-

The state executive includes a Governor and a Council of Ministers. The Parliament ary system has been established by the Constitution in the states too. And in this Parliamentary system the Governor is the Constitutional head of the executive while the Chief Minister and the Council of Ministers are the real head of that regime.

THE CONSTITUTIONAL HEAD OF THE STATE : GOVERNOR

Designation of the Governor-

The Governor of the state remains on his post till the wish of the President. He or she will be appointed for a term of 5 years, but can remain in the office till the appointment of his /her successor. The Governor can be removed from his post by The President before 5 years of his tenure.

He or She could be transferred from a state to another. If the Governor wishes, he can also quit his post before his tenure.

Healthy convention regarding the appointment of Governor

Since the implementation of the Constitution of India, some healthy conventions have been developed so far regarding the appointment of Governor.

I. The Governor should not be an inhabitant of the same state in which he is to be appointed.

II. Before the appointment of Governor, the Central Government should have consultation with the Chief Minister of that state to get his consent.

Qualifications of the Post and Salary-

Two qualifications are necessary for the appointment of Governor.

I. He should be a citizen of India.

II. He must be over 35 years of age.

The Governor cannot be a member of Parliament or the state legislature, and if he holds the same post, then has to leave that membership from the date of his appointment as Governor. The Governor cannot enjoy any office of profit.

Pay and Allowances-

At present, the Governor receives Rs. 1,10,000 monthly as salary, apart from that he gets free accommodation, allowances and all other facilities which are allocated by the Parliament according to the law.

Powers and Functions of Governor-

The Constitution has provided adequate powers to the Governor. The Governor holds the same position as The President keeps at the centre. So there is much resemblance found in some of the powers of both posts. In the words of Durga Das Basu : “In a slight way the powers of Governor are similar to The President's except for the diplomatic, military and emergency situation”. The powers of

the Governor can be studied in following terms:

1. Executive Powers-

The executive powers of the state are vested with Governor, which he enjoys himself and by the subordinate officers, he appoints the chief minister, and the other ministers on the advice of chief minister. He also appoints Advocate General, and the Chairman and the members of the state public service commission. The President holds consultation with Governor before the appointment of the judges of High court. The executive powers of the Governor extend up to the subjects of concurrent list. On the subjects of concurrent list, he exercises his powers by the assent of the President. Regarding the functions of the state government, he makes rule, he allocates the portfolios from amongst the ministers. He holds the power of getting information from Chief Minister, regarding the subjects related to the governance. He can ask the Chief Minister to put the personal decision of any minister for the consideration of whole cabinet. Governor administers Oath of Post and Secrecy to the members of cabinet, confirms their resignations and also removes them from their concerned posts including the chief minister.

2. Legislative Powers-

Governor is an integral part of the legislature of a state. He holds important powers in the field of legislation. He convenes the session of legislation, adjourn it and can dissolve the lower house of the legislature. After the general election, he addresses the first meeting of legislature. And still after the first meeting, he can send messages to the legislature. The approval of Governor is essential on the bill passed by state assembly. He can reject the bill, or can return the bill to the legislature for reconsideration, if the legislature passes the bill for a second time, then Governor is compelled to give his approval. He can put aside some bills reserved for the consideration of the President. If the state Legislative Assembly is not in session then Governor can issue the ordinance. The ordinance will be recognised as the same act as the act passed by the state legislature. This ordinance is applicable for only six weeks after the commencement of the next sitting of state legislature. If the legislature rejects the ordinance before six weeks then the ordinance will be deemed as terminated. At the same time, before issuing the ordinance regarding certain subjects Governor has to take approval from the President. Governor can nominate $1/6^{th}$ members in Legislative Council from the pool of such people who hold the distinct and practical knowledge of literature, arts, science, cooperative movement and social services. In his opinion if the Anglo-Indian community has not got sufficient representation in the Legislative Assembly, then he can nominate a member from this particular community.

2. Financial Powers-

The Governor holds some financial powers too. The money bill cannot be brought in state Legislative Assembly without the permission of Governor. He gets the budget presented before the Legislative Assembly every year, and no demand for grants can be made without his permission. Governor can make the demand of extra, supplementary or more grants too. The consolidated fund of the state is kept under the authority of Governor.

3. Judicial Powers-

The Governor can reduce, postpone or change the punishment or even forgive the people who have committed a crime against the law related to the subjects on which the legislative power of state is extended in accordance with the article 161 of the Constitution. He accepts the annual reports of State Public Service Commission and the report of Auditor General regarding the income and expenditure of the state and puts them before the Legislature. In his opinion if it is not possible to govern the state according to the Constitution, he can inform The President about the failure of Constitutional system in the state, and recommends for President's rule. President's rule

can be imposed based on his report by the Union Cabinet in accordance with section 356. Being the chancellor of the state, Governor can appoint or remove the Vice Chancellors of the universities in his state except for the central universities.

4. Miscellaneous Powers-

In addition to above mentioned powers the Governor has some other powers too:

Position of the Governor-

According to section 163, leaving those matters where it is expected by the Constitution, or the Governor under Constitution that he should perform his duties using his discretion, there would be a Council of Ministers to assist the Governor to advice and help in discharging his duties, which will be headed by Chief Minister. Presently the Governors of Jammu and Kashmir, Nagaland, Sikkim and Arunachal Pradesh only enjoy this sort of discretionary powers. The Governor is not provided with powers of discretion by the Constitution and according to the tradition of Parliamentary rule, it is expected from him that he would discharge his duties as a Constitutional head, nevertheless there may be some occasions where he can use his discretion.

Following can be the such occasions-

I Selection of Chief Minister in special circumstances

II To overthrow the Council of Ministers.

III To convene the session of Legislative Assembly.

IV Dissolution of Legislative Assembly.

V Receiving information from Chief Minister.

VI Reporting to The President about Constitutional status of the state.

VII Sending a Bill passed by state Legislative Assembly for the President's approval.

VIII Not accepting a Bill passed by the state legislature, and to return it for reconsideration.

IX Seeking guidance of The President before issuing an ordinance.

It is very clear from all the facts mentioned above that although Governor may not be called as the real head of the executive of a state, but along with it, he is not the nominal chairperson only, but he is an officer who can play a significant role in the governance of a state.

Real Executive: The Council of Ministers

Parliamentary rule has also been set up in States by the Constitution, and in the Parliamentary system, the real executive power of the state lies in Council of Ministers, which is accountable to the Legislative Assembly.

Formation of Council of Ministers in a state.

1. Appointment of chief minister-

The appointment of Chief Minister is the first step towards the formation of Council of Ministers of a state. Article 164 states that the Governor will appoint a Chief Minister and then other ministers will be appointed on the advice of Chief Minister. The tradition in this regard is that, the Governor appoints the leader of majority party as Chief Minister in state Legislative Assembly.

2. Selection of Ministers-

Other ministers are selected by the Chief Minister only, and he gives the list of ministers with names and departments to the Governor.

I. It is a privilege of the Chief Minister to form the Council of Ministers. Names of ministers in the cabinet are decided only by the Chief Minister. The size of cabinet has been limited up to 15% of the number of members of Legislative Assembly by the 91st Amendment of Constitution. Following facts are kept in mind by the Chief Minister while selecting the ministers.

I In a consistent manner, all regions and sections of society in the state have got representation in the cabinet.

II Generally the Chief Minister selects the cabinet from his own party members, so that the Council of Ministers can act as a single unit.

3. Qualifications of ministers-

It is essential for all the ministers to be a member of any house of the Legislature, if a minister is not a member of the Legislature at the time of appointment, then it is necessary for him to get the membership of Legislature within 6 months of his appointment. Failing to do so, the minister has to resign from the cabinet.

4. Distribution of Work amongst Ministers-

The Governor distributes the portfolios to ministers on the advice of chief minister. A minister often holds the authority of a single department, but sometimes he can keep charge of more than one department also.

5. Oath taken by the Ministers-

Before assuming the office, ministers have to take two types of oaths before the Governor.

I For discharging the duties of post.

II For secrecy.

6. Categories of Ministers-

There are three categories of ministers in the states also.

1. Cabinet ministers.
2. Minister of state.
3. Deputy Ministers.

Most important are the cabinet members .The policy of government is collectively decided by the cabinet only. Ministers of state are at the second level, some ministers of state are given independent charge of a particular department too. And there are deputy ministers ranked after the ministers of state which work as assistant ministers to the cabinet members.

7. Tenure of Council of Ministers-

The tenure for Council of Ministers is not fixed. A Minister remains in office as long as he enjoys the confidence of majority in the assembly. Generally the maximum time fixed for the tenure of Council of Ministers is 5 years, because the tenure of Legislative Assembly is also 5 years.

8. Collective Responsibility-

Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to the Legislative Assembly. If Legislative Assembly passes no confidence motion against any Minister, or rejects any bill proposed by any Minister, the whole Council of Ministers has to resign in such a condition.

9. Salary and Allowances-

According to article 164 (5) of the Constitution that salaries of members of Legislative Assembly are decided by the State Legislatures.

Modus Operandi: Council of Ministers

The cabinet is the most important unit of Council of Ministers, decision regarding various important issues is only taken in the meetings of cabinet, usually held weekly. By the way, Chief Minister can convene its meeting whenever he needs. These meetings are presided over by the Chief Minister and by the senior most minister in the absence of Chief Minister. There is no quorum required for these meetings. There are two major rules for the proceedings of the cabinet: Collective responsibility and Secrecy. Generally all the decisions in the cabinet are taken unanimously. In the case of dissidence, decisions are taken on the basis of mutual consultation, and this decision is considered as a collective decision of all the ministers. Oath of secrecy is taken by each member of the Council of Ministers. The proceedings and decisions of cabinet are kept secret.

Powers and Functions of the Council of Ministers.

Although the work of Council of Ministers as mentioned in article 163 of the Constitution, is to help and advise the Governor only, but the actual situation is very opposite to it. All the powers given to Governor by the Constitution regarding to the Governance is practically used by the Council of Ministers only. Council of Ministers take all the important decisions related to the governance, and the Chief Minister briefs the Governor about all these decisions.

1. Setting the Rule of Governance-

The most important work of Council of

Ministers is to set a rule of governance whether it is Home Department, Education, health or Agriculture, the policy of governance is determined by the Council of Ministers only.

The Council of Ministers not only decides the policy but also transforms it into action.

2. Advice to Governor regarding the appointment on higher posts.

According to Constitution the Governor appoints the chairman and member of State Public Service Commission, Auditor General, and other high ranked officials. In practice all these appointments are made by the Governor on the advice of Council of Ministers only.

3. Representation of Governance in the Legislature-

The ministers answer the questions and criticism made by the members by remaining present and supporting government policies in the Assembly.

4. Deciding Legislation building programme

The Council of Ministers not only plays an important role in the field of legislation making but also decides the type and Order of the bills in which they are presented in the Legislature.

5. Budget Preparation-

Annual budget of the state is presented in Assembly by the finance minister before the beginning of fiscal year.

This budget is prepared according to the policy decided by Council of Ministers only .It is the responsibility of Council of Ministers only to get the budget passed.

Chief Minister-

The head of the Council of Ministers is known as Chief Minister. The Chief Minister is the real head of the executive of a state. Therefore in the administrative structure of the state, he receives almost the same position as Prime Minister in the centre.

Appointment of Chief Minister-

In article 164 of the Constitution, it has only been said that the appointment of Chief Minister will be made by the Governor.

In practice, the leader of the party having majority in the Assembly is only appointed as Chief Minister by the Governor.

Powers and functions Chief Minister

The council of the ministers is the most important unit of state administration, and the Chief Minister is the head of it.

The powers and functions of Chief Minister can be studied in following terms:-

1. Forming Council of Ministers

The first and foremost work of Chief Minister is to build his Council of Ministers .After selecting the ministers Chief Minister gives the list to Governor, which is accepted by him. In the selection of ministers Chief Minister can act according to his prudence at a certain extent.

2. Division of work amongst the ministers-

Chief Minister allocates the portfolios to his colleagues i.e. Council of Ministers. Once after the formation of Council of Ministers and distribution of portfolios to its members, he can change the departments and the levels of ministers whenever it is required.

3. Working of Cabinet-

The Chief Minister himself convenes the meetings of cabinet and presides over them. The agenda of meeting is decided by the Chief Minister himself. All the proceedings of Council of Ministers is accomplished under the direction of chief minister.

4. Coordination amongst different departments in governance-

Chief Minister tries that all the departments of governance, in other words the Council of Ministers work as a unit. If there is any difference of opinion between two or more members of the Council of Ministers, then it is resolved as soon as possible by removing the mutual differences.

5. Link between the Council of Ministers and the Governor-

According to the Constitution it is the

responsibility of Chief Minister to establish contact between Council of Ministers and the Governor. He informs Governor about the decision taken in the cabinet and conveys Governor's opinion to the Council of Ministers.

6. Leader of Legislative Assembly-

On one side the Chief Minister is the leader of government, on the other hand he is the leader of Legislative Assembly too. As a leader of Legislative Assembly he receives an important position in the field of legislation making, and to a certain extent the legislation making work is completed according to his will. As a leader of Legislative Assembly he can advise the Governor to dissolve the Assembly.

HIGH COURT-

High court, Qualification of judges, Appointments and Powers-

India has an integrated Judiciary, where the Supreme Court stands at its highest level. The High court stands after the Supreme Court in the Judiciary. The High court is the topmost judicial institute at state level. According to article 215, each state can have a Higher Court. There may be only one High court for two or more states together. At first The High courts in India were established in Kolkata, Mumbai and Chennai in 1862 AD. Allahabad High court was established in 1866 AD. There are 24 High courts in India at present.

Formation of High court-

According to article 216, each High court will be constituted by Chief Justice and other such judges, to which The President considers essential to appoint from time to time. Thus the number of judges in the High court would be decided by the President.

Appointment of judges-

As per article 217(1) the Chief Judge of High court and other judges are appointed by the President. The President appoints Chief Justice of High court by taking the advice of Chief Justice of Supreme Court, Collegiums and the Governor. While for the other judges he takes the advice of Chief Justice of Supreme Court, Chief Judge of High court and the Governor.

Qualifications for a Judge-

As per article 217 (2) following qualifications are required for the appointment of a judge

1. He must be a citizen of India.
2. He has worked on a judicial post for at least 10 years in the state of India.
3. He has served as an advocate in a high court or two or more such courts regularly at least for 10 years.

Tenure

According to article 217 (1) the provisions for the tenure of a judge are as follows:

1. He will hold the post till 62 years of age.
2. A judge can be removed by the order of The President after passing of a proposal by both the houses of Parliament with two third majority.
3. The judge can submit his resignation by addressing it to the President.

Oath taken by the Judges-

As per article 219, the judge of a High court will take an oath before the Governor of the state or a person appointed by him.

Transfer of the Judges-

The transfer of the judges of High court is made by The President on the advice of the Chief Justice of Supreme Court (article 222).

Salary of Judges-

According to article 221 the salary of judges will be decided by the Parliament according to law. At present the Chief Justice gets ` 90000 and the other judges receive ` 80000 per month as salary.

Freedom of High court-

Following arrangements have been made for the freedom of High court

1. Special process for appointment,
2. Fixed tenure,
3. No further discussion on the conduct of judges would be made in the Parliament except impeachment.

4. After retiring as a High court judge, he will not practice in courts where he has worked as a permanent judge.

5. Separation from executive.

Domainal and powers of the High court–

The operational area and powers of high Court are as follows.

1. Original jurisdiction
2. Writ jurisdiction.
3. Appellate jurisdiction.
4. Court of records.
5. Administrative powers.
6. Judicial review.

I. Original Jurisdiction-

It implies the hearing of the cases by Supreme Court primarily. These areas are:-

1. Cases related to election of the members of Parliament and State Legislatures,
2. Cases regarding revenue collection, Admiralty, probate, marriage law, Company Law and the cases related to divorce etc.

II. Writ Jurisdiction—

Article 226 empowers High court to issue direction orders or writs in the nature of Habeas Corpus, mandamus, prohibition, quo warranto and certiorari. The Supreme Court can issue writs under article 32 only for Fundamental Rights, where the High court can issue writs for other matters too along with Fundamental Rights.

III Appellate Jurisdiction-

The appellate jurisdiction of High court can be divided into following parts.

* Civil appellate jurisdiction- Appeal can be made in the High court against the district court in the cases of income tax, patent, design, succession etc.

* Criminal jurisdiction when a criminal is awarded death sentence or an imprisonment for a term of 4 years, the appeal can be made against it in the High court.

Constitutional appellate jurisdiction–

If there is a case in which the question of interpretation of the Constitution arises, then the appeal can be made in the High court.

IV Court of record-

According to article 215, every High court would be considered as a court of records, and it holds the power of punishment for contempt of court. The judgements of High court will be kept protected as records and they will be considered as laws for the subordinate courts.

V The Administrative Rights-

The Administrative Rights of the High court are as follows-

The High court can summon the proceedings or judgements of its subordinate courts and can get them investigated, it is the duty of High court to notice that the subordinate court is not violating its Powers or limits, and is adhered to its duties according to the prescribed laws. It can move any case from a court to the other court for reconsideration and judgement.

VI Judicial Review-

The proceedings of state and Union Legislature and Executive can be declared valid or invalid by the High court. In the state the Legislature, Executive and the State Judiciary is known as State Government.

Important Points

1. Formation of Assembly

   (i) Number of members (ii) Reservation of seats. (iii) Election System. (iv) Qualifications of members. (v) Tenure. (vi) Office bearers speaker and Deputy Speaker (vii) Powers and functions of the speaker

2. Formation of Legislative Council—

   (i) Number of members.

   (ii) Election and nominations.

   (iii) Qualifications of the members.

   (iv) Tenure-permanent house.

(v) Office bearers- Chairman and Vice Chairman.

3. Powers and functions of the Legislative Council

(i) Law making.

(ii) Financial.

4. Powers and functions of Legislative Assembly

(i) Legislative works.

(ii) Financial .

(iii) Administrative powers.

(iv) Power of amendment in the Constitution.

(v) Electoral power.

State executive Governor, Chief Minister and the Council of Ministers.

5. The Governor- statutory head of the state.

Appointment - by the President.

Qualifications of the post and salary.

6. Powers and functions of Governor

1. Executive power.

2. Legislative powers

3 Miscellaneous powers.

7. Formation of Council of Ministers

1. Appointment of Chief Minister .

2.Selection of ministers .

3. Qualifications of the ministers.

4. Distribution of portfolios to the ministers .

5. Oath taken by ministers .

6. Categories of ministers.

7. Tenure of the Council.

8 Collective responsibility..

9. Salary and perks.

8. Powers and functions of Council of Ministers

(i) Determining government policy

(ii) Advice to the Governor regarding the appointment on higher posts.

(iii) Governments representation in the legislature .

(iv) Determining law making process.

(v) Budget Making.

Powers and functions of Chief Minister

(I) Constitution of the council of minister.

(ii) Distribution and change in the portfolios of ministers.

(iii) Cabinet work.

(iv) Coordination amongst different departments of government .

(v) Establishing relations between Governor and the Council of Ministers.

Higher Judiciary

Appointment of judges by the President.

Qualifications for the judges

(I) Citizen of India,

(ii) Has held judicial post for 10 years and legal practice at least for 10 years,

(iii) Tenure-Till 62 years of age.

(iv) Oath taken- by the Governor.

(v) Provisions for the freedom of High court.

Powers and functions

1. Original jurisdiction.
2. Writ jurisdiction.
3. Appellate jurisdiction.
4. Court of records.
5. Administrative powers.
6. Judicial review.

EXERCISE

Very Short Answer type Questions

1. For how long the number of members in Legislative Assembly will remain unchanged, despite the increase in population?
2. Which States of the Union of India have bicameral legislatures?
3. How many members of the Legislative

Council are nominated by the Governor?

4. List the designations of office bearers in Legislative Assembly and Council.
5. Which house of Legislature does not hold the power to pass a motion of no confidence against the Council of Ministers in states?
6. How many members of Legislative Council are elected by the electoral college of teachers?
7. On whose desire the Governor enjoys his post?
8. Where does the real executive power according to the Constitution lie ?
9. What do you call the order issued by Governor in special circumstances at the time of prorogation of the Legislature ?
10. Before assuming the office an oath of which intention has to be taken by the Chief Minister in front of Governor?
11. Under which article of the Constitution, the provision for the formation of Supreme Court has been made ?.
12. To whom does the Supreme Court judge address while submitting his resignation?

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Mention three such conditions due to which the membership of Legislative Assembly gets ended.
2. Explain briefly the functions of the Speaker of an assembly.
3. Imagine that you are the Speaker of a Legislative Assembly and the members want to remove you from your post, explain briefly the process they will have to follow for this purpose.
4. Which method has to be adopted in case of the establishment of Legislative Council in Rajasthan?
5. Which qualifications are needed for the post of Governor? Mention the discretionary powers of Governor.
6. How is the Council of Ministers formed in a state?
7. Explain the modus operandi of the state Council of Ministers briefly.
8. Mention any two qualifications for the appointment of judges in High court.

Essay Type Questions:

1. Discuss the formation, rights and functions of Legislative Assembly.
2. Mention the formation, powers and functions of Legislative Council.
3. Explain the procedure of passing an ordinary bill in the state assembly.
4. Discuss the appointment and powers of Governor.
5. Describe the formation and powers of Council of Ministers in a state.
6. Discuss the role of Chief Minister in the state administration.
7. Explain the set up and jurisdiction of High court.

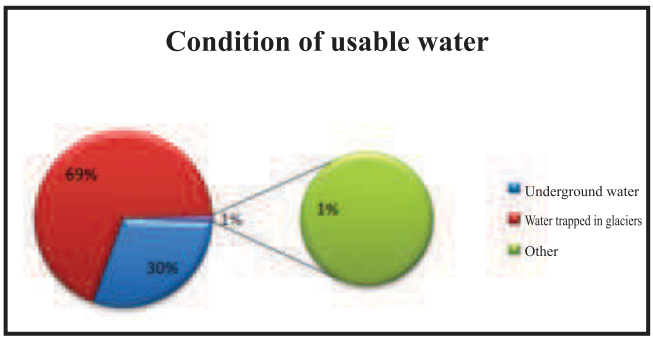
Lesson 8

Water Resources

Introduction-

Water is the incomparable gift of nature, which provides base to all the activities on the earth. Water resource is a primary necessity for socio-economic development of any country. In the ancient time river values remain the places of development of human civilization.

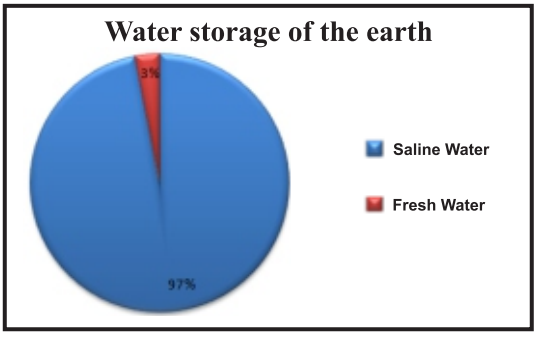
Water constitutes 71% and land constitutes 29% of the total surface of the earth. Out of the total water resource available on the earth 97% of this water exists in the form of saline water in the oceans and the remaining 3% is usable fresh water. Out of this usable water 69% of this water remains in ice form and 30% in the form of underground water. The remaining 1% of water is used by man for drinking, irrigation and other economic activities.



Diag. 8.1 : Condition of usable water

According to the water resource ministry of Government of India, availability of total usable water in India is 1869 billion cubic meter, out of which only 1123 billion cubic meter is used. Out of this human consumable water, 690 billion cubic meter is a part of surface water and 433 million cubic meter is a part of groundwater, the total need of water in India in the year 2000 was 634 million cubic meter per year and it will rise to 1023 billion cubic meter by the year 2025.

The proper management and conservation of water has become essential due to the pressure on the water resources because of the rapid growth in population and global warming.



Diag. 8.2 : Water storage of the earth

Water Management

One side due to increase in the size of human population, modern life style and non-scientific use of water have raised the pressure on water resources. On the other side the maximum amount of rain water reaches to the oceans through surface flow by rivers without its proper utilisation. In this situation it is dire need of the time to ensure the supply of water by adopting water management techniques.

In this direction it is first requirement to manage rain water. The proper utilisation of this water is essential in order to meet the needs of the growing population and its management is essential in order to tackle the consequences of

famine and drought resulting from the uncertainty and irregularity of the monsoon. Several multipurpose projects launched after independence in the Five Year Plans which resulted in solving the problems of flood and drought and supported the production of hydro-electricity, drinking water supply, irrigation, fisheries and environmental management. The first Prime Minister of India Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru called these multi purpose projects as "The temples of modern India".

In India, these projects are run by state and Central Government.

The execution of important projects such as Bhakra-Nangal, Rihand, Damodar HeeraKund, Kosi, Tehri is being done by the Central Government.

The Chambal project in Rajasthan, Nagarjuna Sagar project(Andhra Pradesh), Tungabhadra project (Andhra Pradesh and Karnataka)Sardar Sarovar project (Gujarat, MP and Rajasthan) Mayoorakshi and Farakka project (West Bengal,) Mahi project (Gujarat and Rajasthan) Gandak project (Bihar and UP), Machhkunda Project (Andhra Pradesh, Orissa) etc. are being done by the state governments.

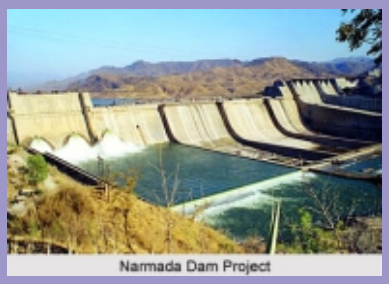
Bhakhra Nangal Project-

It is the biggest and the most important multiporpose project of the country, which had

Multipurpose Projects

In a multipurpose projects more then one objectives are fulfilled. For example :-

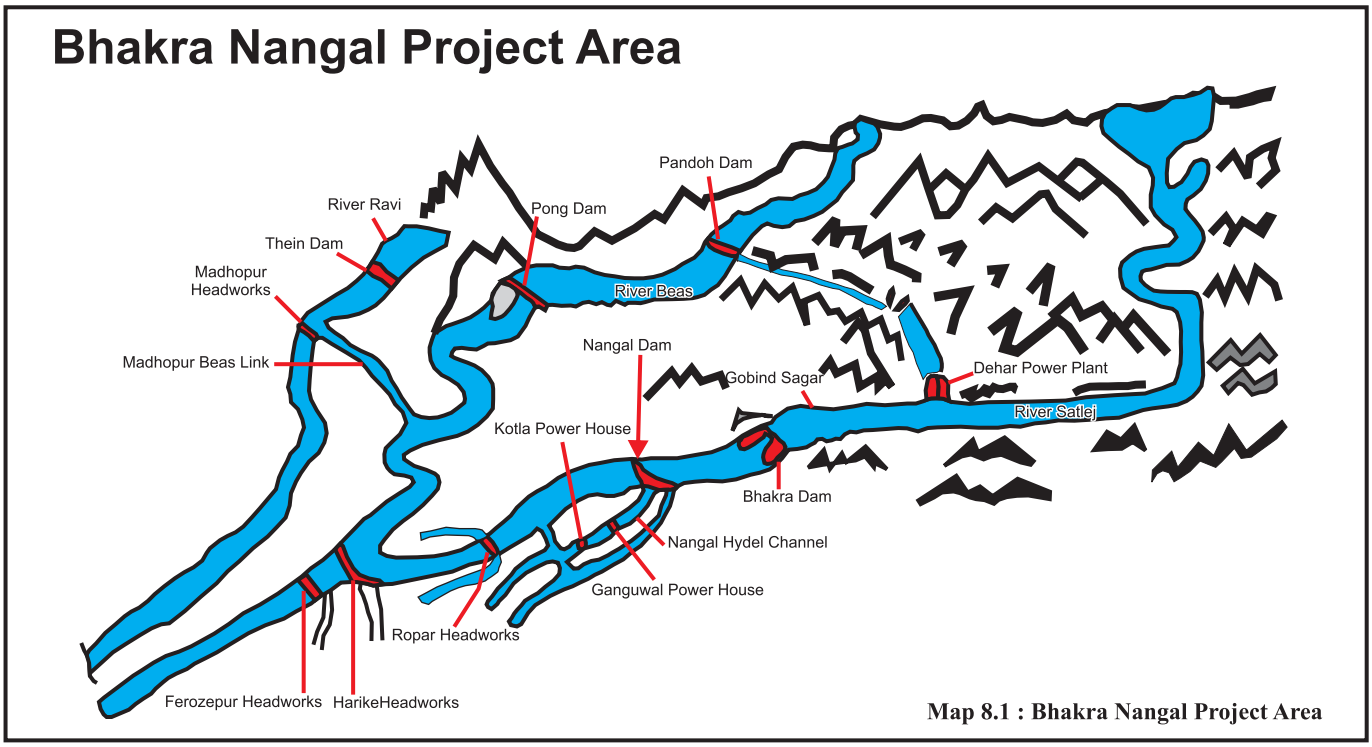
Supply of water for irrigation purpose
Production of hydroelectricity
Flood control and drought management
Supply of water for industrial use
Supply of drinking water
Fishing
Water sports and tourism


Narmada Dam Project

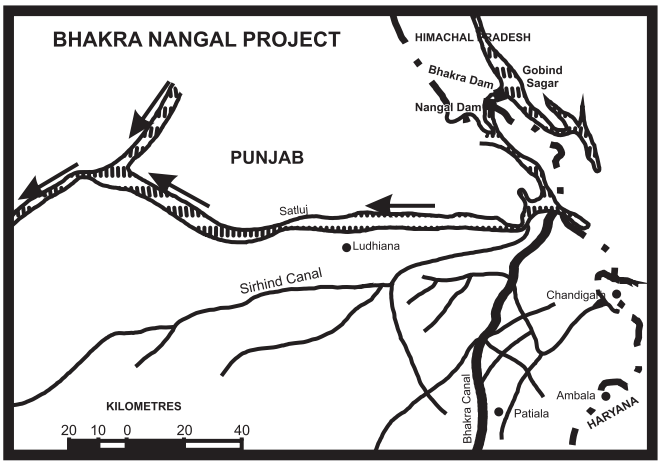
Hirakud Dam

Damodar Valley Project

Fig. 8.1 : Multipurpose projects of the country



Map 8.1 : Bhakra Nangal Project Area



Map 8.2 : Bhakra Nangal Project

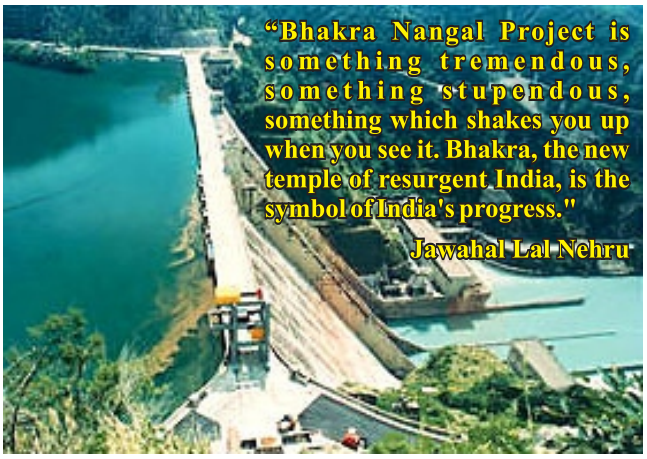


Fig. 8.2 : Bhakra Nangal Dam

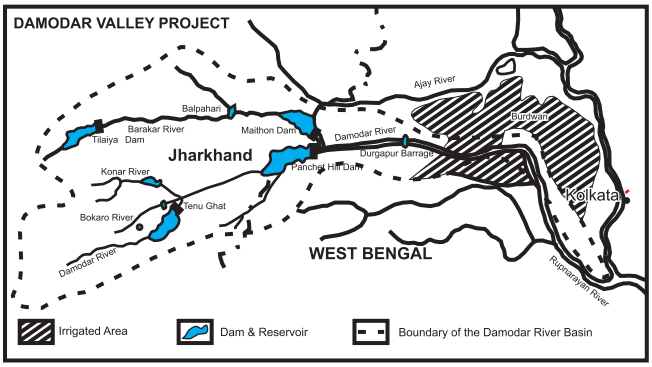
started in 1948 and completed in 1963 and is established near Bilaspur on the river Satluj in Himachal Pradesh.

It is a joint venture of Punjab Haryana and Rajasthan. Its objective is to get the mid parts of satluj and Yamuna developed economicly through hydro-electricity, irrigation and drinking water supply. Under this project, two dams have been built in Ambala district of Punjab. The first dam is Bhakra dam which is 518.16 meter long and of 226 meter height. This is the hightest gravity dam in the world made up of cement and concrete. The second dam has been built 13 km downwards from the Bhakra dam and its purpose is to store the surplus water of the Bhakra Dam. Bhakra, Surhind, Nangal, Bist Doab and Narvana canals have been derived from these dams and power houses have been built at Kotla, Roopnagar and Gangwal.

Damodar Vally Project-

The first major project of independent India which is a joint venture of West Bengal and Jharkhand, it was started in 1948 on the river Damodar, also known as the Sorrow of Bengal. This River was known for route diversion, erosion

and floods in West Bengal after flowing 493 kilometers in Bihar and Jharkhand and 240 kilometers in West Bengal, this river falls into the Hooghly river towards the Eastern part of Chota Nagpur Plateau Barakar, Bokaro and Konar are the tributaries of the river Damodar Approximately 18000 square kilometers of area is affected by the floods and erosion caused by it. For this reason Government of India has established Damodar Valley Corporation (DVC) on the framework of the Tennessee Valley Authority (TVA) of America. The objective of this project is to improve the standards of the living of local people by the economic development of the river valleys of West Bengal and Jharkhand. Under this project Methan and Tilleiya dams on river Baraker, Konar dam on river Konar and Panchet Pahadi dam and Durgapur barrage on river Damodar have been constructed. Many hydro power plants have been established at Bokaro, Chandrapur, Tilleiya, Methan, Panchet Pahadi and Durgapur and an extensive canal network system has been developed.

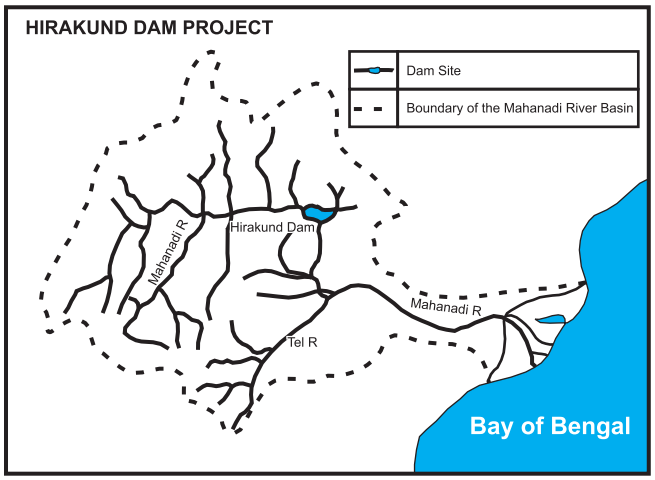


Map 8.3 : Damodar Valley Project

Hirakund Project-

It is an ambitious project of peninsular India which has been established by government of India on river Mahanadi, which is known as Sorrow of Orissa. River Mahanadi originates from Bastar hills of Chhattisgarh state and than flow through Orissa. It causes floods in the river valley areas during the monsoons and the situation of famine and drought develops during the rest of the Year. The Government of India has built the Hirakund Dam 14 Km. upstream from Sambalpur on this river, so that the about stated problems can be solved and ensure the availability of water for irrigation and drinking purpose.

It is the longest dam of the world with a length of 4801 meters and of 61 meters high. The water storage lake behind the dam is having capacity to store 810 crore cubic meter water. Besides this dam two other dams have been built at Tikarpada and Naraaz. This project has been completed in two phases, the 1st Phase- Hirakud Dam was built in the Sambalpur district of Orissa with the construction of Borgadh canal at right side and Sesan and Sambalpur canal system on left side while four power plants were built in the second phase.



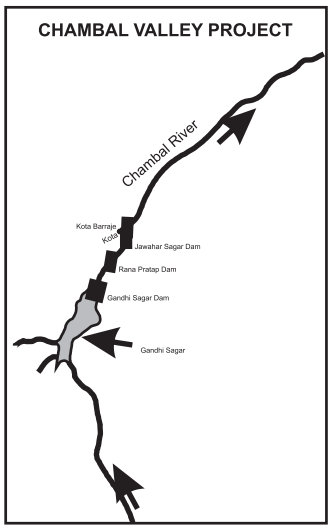
Map 8.4 : Hirakund Dam Project

Fig. 8.3 : Hirakund Dam

Multi-Purpose Hydro Projects in Rajasthan-

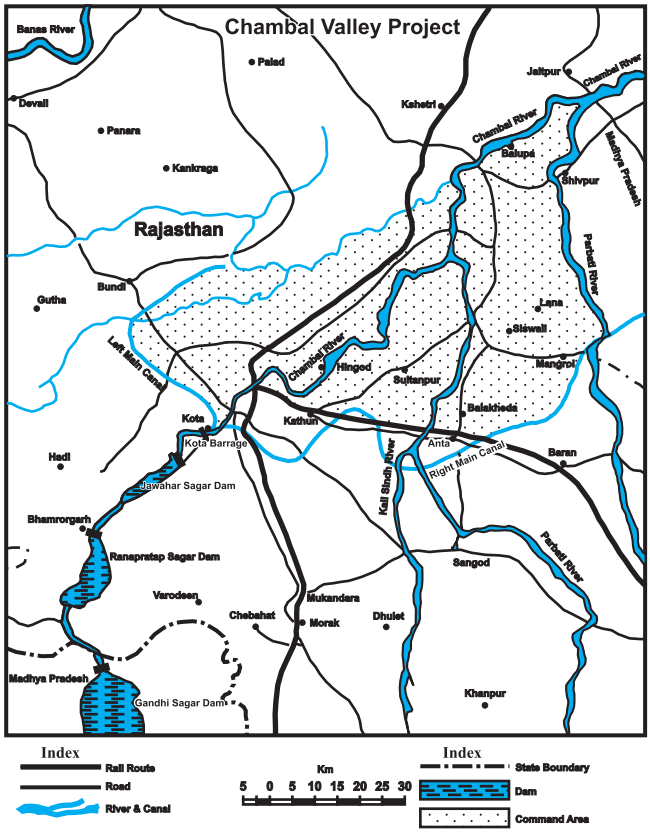
Chambal Valley Project-

A joint venture of Rajasthan and Madhya Pradesh started in 1953 on the river Chambal. It was started in three phases in order to solve the problem of soil erosion and floods caused by river Chambal and the other related losses. In the first



Map 8.5 : Chambal Valley Project

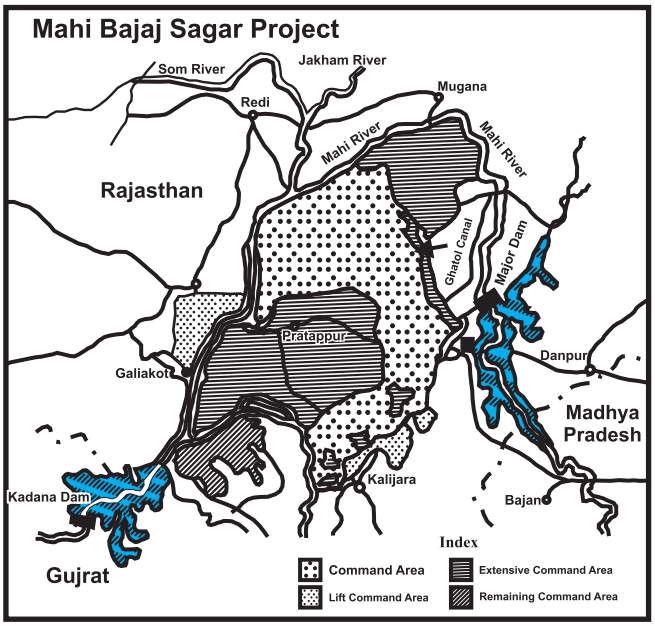
phase of this project Gandhi Sagar dam in Mandsaur district of MP and canal system were built. In the 2nd phase Rana Pratap Sagar dam at Rawatbhata in Chittorgarh district of Rajasthan and hydro-electricity production and in the 3rd phase Jawahar Sagar pick up Dam on the border of Kota and Bundi districts with power houses were built. In 1960s, Kota Barrage was constructed and canal irrigation area in Rajasthan was increased by this.



Map 8.6 : Chambal Valley Project

Mahi Bajaj Sagar Project-

It is a joint venture of Rajasthan and Gujarat states. For this, in the year 1966 an agreement was sign by both they states for this new project on river Mahi, originating from the Vindhyachal mountains. This project was initiated for the development of economic, irrigation, and power facilities of tribal regions situated in the flow area of river Mahi in Dungarpur and Banswara. Mahi Bajaj Sagar dam was built at Borkhera in Banswara district of Rajasthan and Kadana Dam was built in Gujarat by the government of Gujarat. Aiming to develop the canal system, Kagdi pick up Dam was built at 500m downstream of the main dam and two hydro electric power plants were also built for the development of power facilities.



Map 8.7 : Mahi Bajaj Sagar Project

Bisalpur Project 1997 to 1998-

It is a multipurpose project for irrigation and drinking water supply. The project comprises concrete dam 574 meters long with a maximum height of 39.5 meters across the river Banas, at a place called Bisalpur near the town of Todaraisingh in Tonk district of Rajasthan. Two canals have been taken out from the left and right side of this dam. Irrigation in Sawai Madhopur and drinking water supply to Jaipur city, Ajmer, Kekri, Sawar, Beawar and the enroute villages and irrigation in 256 villages of Tonk district will be provided under this project.

Other projects of Rajasthan-

Rajasthan Canal or Indira Gandhi Canal Project-

It has been taken out from the Harike Barrage built at the confluence point of the Sutluj and Beas rivers with the purpose of water supply, utilisation of waste land and settlement of population at the international border. It is the biggest man made Canal not only in India but also in Asia, with a length of 649 km out of which 169 km is in Punjab, 14 km is in Haryana and the rest is in Rajasthan. Water is provided to 9 districts, 29 towns and 3461 villages of Rajasthan. This canal was completed in two stages, ie. Rajasthan Feeder Canal and Main Canal. Rajasthan Feeder is a part from the starting point to Masitawali and the main Canal is a part from Masitawali to the end point of Mohangarh, which are 204 km and 445 km long respectively. Several branches and lift canals have been taken out of this canal in order to develop the irrigated land in the Thar Desert. 9 branches alike the droop on western international boarder and in the small canals by the lifts on eastern side due to the extra height, water is raised and shifted. By these canals drinking water is made available to several towns and cities. The total number of lift canals is seven. Lakes of hectare land is irrigated by this canal. This project has now been extended up to Gadra road in Barmer.

Fig. 8.4 : Indira Gandhi Canal

Jakham Project-

Jakham Dam has been built in Anooppura across the river Jakham for irrigation of the tribal areas of Chittorgarh, Udaipur and Pratapgarh. Canal system has been developed by pick up technique in the village Nagaria at a distance of 13 km from this Dam.

Som -Amba -Kamla Project-

A dam has been built across the river som in the village of Kamla Amba. Irrigation facilities will be given to the villages of Aaspur and Salumber block of Dungarpur and Udaipur districts respectively.

Meja Dam-

Meja Dam has been built for irrigation purpose on the river Kothari, in village Meja of Mandalgarh Block in Bhilwara. Fisheries and Canal system have also been developed by the dam.

Sidhmukh Project-

Under this project the surplus water of Ravi-Beas is utilised to irrigate 33000 hectare land of Nohar-Bhadra and Taranagar - Rajgarh blocks of Shriganganagar, Hanumangarh and Churu districts respectively.

Narmada Project-

Drinking water supply is made to Barmer and Jalore by the water of Sardar Sarovar Dam.

Jawai Dam Project-

Dam has been built in Arinpura (Pali) across the river Jawai, a tributary of the river Luni in Western Rajasthan. Irrigation is done in Pali and Jalore by a 176 km long canal taken out from this dam.

Panchana Dam-

A dam of clay has been constructed on the confluence point of five rivers Barkhera, Bhadravati, Machi, Bhaisawat and Ata, near Gudla village of Karauli district. The villages of Todabhim, Hindaun and Gangapur are irrigated by

means of this dam.

Narayan Sagar Dam-

This is the biggest dam of Ajmer constructed on the Khari river at Jalia-II village of this district. The are two canals taken out of this dam are (1) Khutia and (2) Badi canal.

Besides the above mentioned projects, approximately 40 mini projects are also operational in several areas of Rajasthan where water management is performed at the local level.

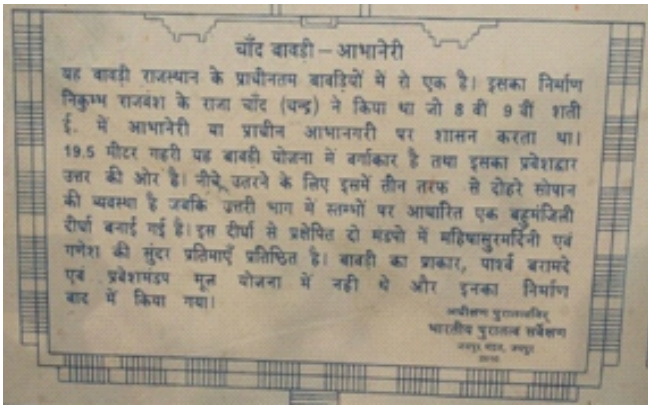
Water Conservation-

The main objective of water conservation techniques is to ensure the judicious use of natural water and proper management of water resources. To collect rain water and its proper management is also the part of water conservation. The axis water of monsoon season can be stored in dams, ponds, lakes and other small water bodies and this can be used during the lean season. Water is considered as nectar in Indian culture and tradition. Owing to sensitivity towards water resources the rulers, money lenders and the local citizens have constructed wells, bawris (step wells), ponds and lakes in villages and towns. Prestige was always there in ancient India towards the conservation of water Due to the same reason evidences of wells, reservoirs and Canals have been found in the excavation of the Sindhu Valley Civilization in India. According to the Arthashastra of Kautilya, the Sudarshan Lake was constructed by Chandragupta Maurya. Several ancient dams and anicuts were built by the Chalukya rulers in Southern India. Sensitivity towards water conservation has been a tradition in Rajasthan because of the scarcity of rainfall and resultant famines. For the same reason, Bawri, Jhalra Nadi, Wells, Kui (small wells)and Johads were built by the local rulers and moneylenders, which have been a source of drinking water for the local public. At the same time, dams, khadin and anicuts have also been useful for irrigation and drinking water.

Forms of traditional water conservation in Rajasthan-

1. Bawri (step Wells)-

A source of water built in quadrilateral, round or circular shape where bricks and artistic stones are used from the entrance to the midpoint. Bricks, and quadrangle shaped parts are adjacent to it . There are stairs to reach these parts. The stairs are studded with designer Mehraabs consisting Towers and skylights. There are idols of regional deities on the skylights. In Rajasthan the construction of Bawris was done for individual and social use. Bawri are found in all districts of the state. The city of Bundi is known as the city of stepwells due to the prominence of Bawris there. Besides this the Tapi Bawri of Jodhpur, Bhandarej Bawri of Dousa, Binota Bawri of Chittor and Chand Bawri of Abhaneri are the famous ones.


चाँद बावड़ी – आभानेरी

यह बावड़ी राजस्थान के प्राचीनतम बावड़ियों में से एक है। इसका निर्माण निकुम्भ राजवंश के राजा चाँद (चन्द्र) ने किया था जो 8 वीं 9 वीं शती ई. में आभानेरी या प्राचीन आभानगरी पर शासन करता था। 19.5 मीटर गहरी यह बावड़ी योजना में वर्गाकार है तथा इसका प्रवेशद्वार उत्तर की ओर है। नीचे उतरने के लिए इसमें तीन तरफ से दोहरे सोपान की व्यवस्था है जबकि उत्तरी भाग में स्तम्भों पर आधारित एक बहुमंजिली दीर्घा बनाई गई है। इस दीर्घा से प्रक्षेपित दो मंडपों में महिषासुरमर्दिनी एवं गणेश की सुंदर प्रतिमाएँ प्रतिष्ठित है। बावड़ी का प्राकार, पार्श्व बरामदे एवं प्रवेशमंडप मूल योजना में नहीं थे और इनका निर्माण बाद में किया गया।

भारतीय पुरातत्व सर्वेक्षण

Fig. 8.5 : Abhaneri's Chand Bawri (Step well) & its description

2. Ponds-

The rain water is collected in the ponds which has been a source of drinking water for men and animals. Most of the ponds are built adjacent to slanting land. Religious and social sentiments are attached to the construction of these ponds. For this very reason their safety and conservation becomes very easy. The major ponds of Rajasthan which have been a source of drinking water in past are- Hemabas in Pali, Sareri and Meja in Bhilwara, Bankiya and Senapani in Chittorgarh and Gadisar and Gajroopsagar of Jaisalmer.

Fig. 8.6 : Pond

3. Lakes-

Lakes have been the most popular source of conservation of running water in Rajasthan These lakes were built by regional rulers, money lenders and nomads. They have served the purpose of irrigation besides drinking water. Irrigation was made in the nearby areas by taking out canals from these lakes. These lakes which have been helpful

Fig. 8.7 : Pushkar Lake

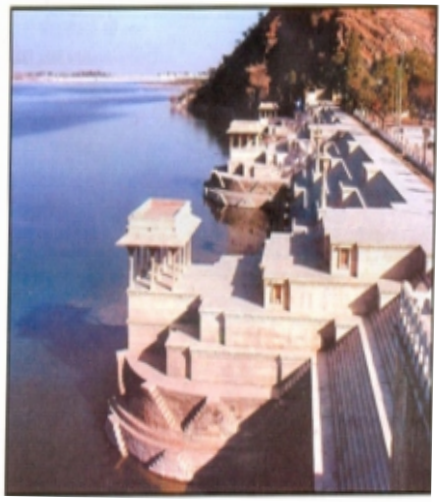


Fig. 8.8 : Rajsamsand's Nou Chouki Lake

in the regional economic and social development, at same the time were life giving during drought and famine. Ana Sagar of Ajmer, Pichola and Fatehsagar of Udaipur, Tal chhapar of Churu, Bakli dam of Jalore, Tordi Sagar of Tonk, Sardar Samand of Pali, Navlekha lake of Bundi and Nauchouki lake of Rajsamand are some of the famous ones.

4. Nadi -

It is a short form of pond, found mostly in Western Rajasthan. In a Nadi rain water is collected in the sandy plain area. Normally it is 4 to 5 meters deep. The rain water gets collected in it for some time due to its small size, low depth and the accumulated soil brought with rain water. The depth of these Nadi's is raised by digging out the soil every year. They have been a major source of drinking water for rural population, animals and wildlife in Western Rajasthan.

Fig. 8.9 : Nadi

5. Taanka-

It is a traditional source of storage and conservation of water in western Rajasthan which is built by digging up the ground 5-6 meter deep in every house or field. Its upper part is covered with stones or other available resources. The rain water received from the terrace of the houses is stored in it. Its internal part is coated with mixture of sand and ash, which prevents leakage of water and the erosion at bottom. These Taankas are being built under Jal Swavalamban Yojana and other projects in Rajasthan.

Fig. 8.10 : Taanka with Aagor (upper part is covered with platform of stones or other available material)

Fig. 8.11 : Modern Taanka

6. Johad-

It is a source of rain water storage in Shekhawati region and Haryana. it is basically similar to the Taanka in form. But its upper part is

Fig. 8.12 : Square shaped Johad

Fig. 8.13 : Rounded Johad

bigger than taanka and also circular and open, so that the flowing rainwater of surrounding area could be accumulated in it. These Johads are a very good source of drinking water for animals and human beings

7. Beri-

They are built in Western Rajasthan by digging up the ground 5-6 meter deep near pond and Khadin having the diameter of 2 to 3 feet with masonry walls of stones to facilitate the seeping underground water. They are used in summer seasons after drying up of rainwater. People call it Beri in native language, they are found in Barmer and Jaisalmer of Rajasthan.

8. Khadin -

Having been adopted by the Paliwal Brahmins in Jaisalmer during the mediaeval age, it refers to a technique of conservation and

management of water also considered as the most appropriate technique for agriculture and drinking water purpose. Under this the flowing water in rainy season is stopped on slopes in mountainous areas by making walls and boundaries, and the surplus water is discarded from a part of this boundary wall to provide water to another adjoining khadin land. In the khadin land the level of ground water rises due to rains, and in this soil

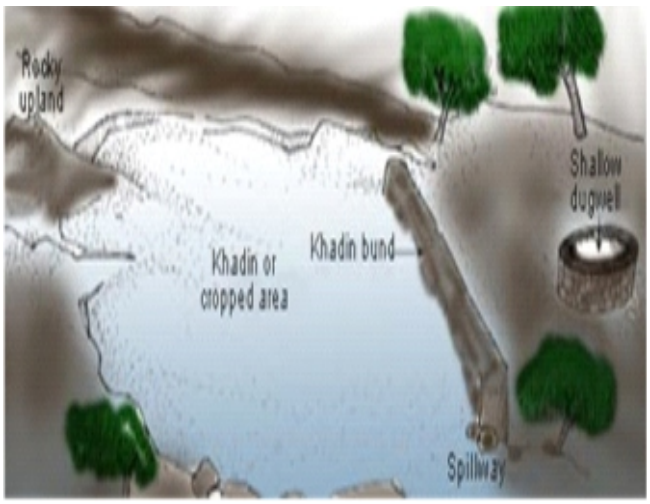


Fig. 8.14 : Khadin

conservation technique moisture of soil is also retained, The khadin land facilitates both Rabi and kharif crops and make drinking water available during summers by the beris built on corners. The conservation and management of water has been traditional in Rajasthan because of the frequent droughts and famines. That is why, the native people and rulers gave importance to such techniques, with the aim of utilising each and every drop of rain water to its maximum. Religious faith has made the conservation a natural process, due to which these sources have been supplying drinking water to the natives, animals, plants and human beings for a long period of time,

Water Self-reliance -

At present due to decreasing ground water and worst condition of the traditional resources of water at local level with increasing level of silt in dams and also due to the scarcity of rainfall, adverse conditions of water crisis are cropping up. Problem is getting more serious owing to the increased demand of water by the ever increasing population. For this reason Jal Kranti Abhiyan (water Revolution mission) and Mukhyamantri Jal Swavalamban (chief minister's water self-reliance program) have been started by the government of India and the government of Rajasthan respectively. The proper management of water at the local level is the main aim behind the initiation of these programs. Generally the management and conservation of water has been adopted traditionally in various forms as Nadi, Ponds, Wells, Bawris (step Wells) and Beris etc. in every village and town. These water resources were the remarkable examples of management and conservation of water at the local level in the ancient times and had provided water for a long time at the local level. The well organised traditional techniques of water management facilitated availability of adequate water in the western part of Rajasthan even during the period of drought, but the lesser utility of these sources at present and due to the lack of effective management, their conditions have deteriorated. Water self Reliance has become essential for the solving the water crisis emerging due to the shortage of water which includes the saving of water at local level, to systematize the use of water and to preserve and manage the rain water properly .These traditional sources should be redeveloped and used for irrigational and other purposes locally. At the same time the rain water and groundwater should be used in such a manner that it remains available in future at the local level.

Chief Minister Water Self Reliance Plan (Mukhyamantri Jal Swavalamban Yojana)-

The task in Mukhyamantri Jal Swavalamban Yojana of Rajasthan government is to make water catchment areas self-reliant by water management treating them as natural resources at rural level by the help of state government and with the philanthropists. Under this Yojana, works such as raising the ground water level and improvement of its quality besides rejuvenation of wells, ponds,

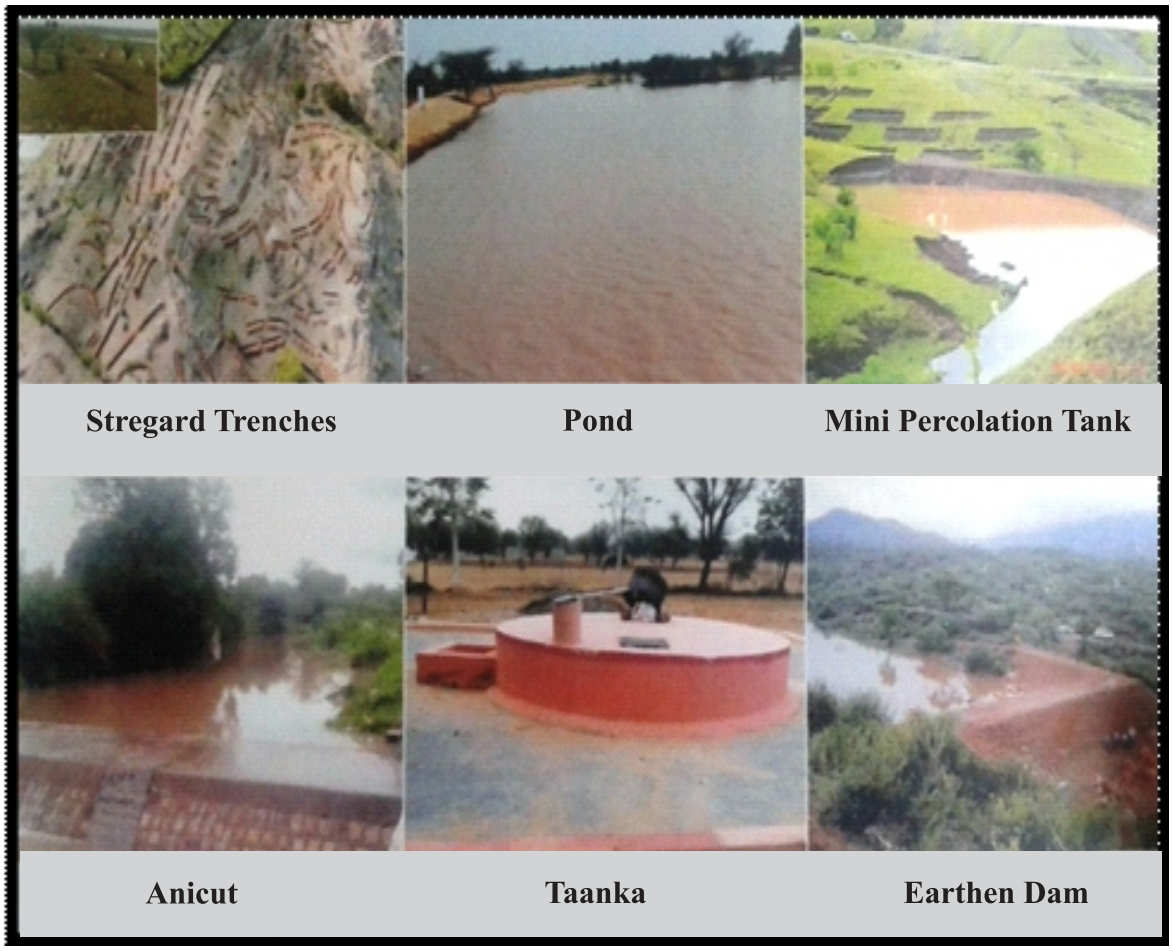


Fig. 8.15 : Various forms of Water Conservation

nadis and other water resources which are on the verge of extinction, will be done. The digging of nadis, wells and ponds at the block level and the repairing of their walls and the work of repairing the water receiving areas by removing obstacles from water receiving areas of these water resources are to be done. In this program, with the participation of NGOs religious trusts, non-residential rural Indians and local villagers the treatment of water catchment areas will be made. Construction of deep continuous contour, trenches, staggered , Farm pond, Mini percolation tank, sunken gully pit, Khadin, Johad and taankas will also be made. Small anicuts in a chain, raw check dams and water storage structures, drain fixation works are also to be undertaken in this program. Besides all these, repairing of minor irrigation tanks, renewal and reinforcement works and connection of water resources to the ravines, grassland development and plantation works, refilling of artificial groundwater refilling structures and promotion of advanced techniques in cropping and gardening will be made. At the same time, awareness will be created by the means of Nukkad Nataks, fairs and rallies amongst the rural population towards the conservation of water resources and their importance.

Important Points

1. Only 1% of the total water available on the earth is useful for drinking, irrigation and economic activities.
2. All the techniques and plans for the distribution, development and orderly use of water are included in water management, which establish a coordination in the demand and supply of water.

3. The techniques and methods to store rainwater at the local level comes under water conservation.
4. Water self-reliance involves the self-reliance in management and conservation of groundwater and surface water at the local level.
5. Bhakhra Dam, which is 518.16 meters long with the height of 167.64 meters, is the largest rising dam in the world ,made up of cement and concrete.
6. Hirakud Dam, which is the longest dam in the world with a length of 4801 meters, stores 810 crore cubic meters of water.
7. The First Prime Minister of India, Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru has called the river valley projects as the 'Modern Temples of India'.
8. The function of a pickup dam is to stop the water emitted out of various dams, later it is distributed equally
9. Barrage refers to the place where the canals are taken out for irrigation, like Harike Barrage and Kota Barrage.
10. Indira Gandhi Canal--Not only of India it is also the longest man made Canal of Asia with the total length of 649 km.
11. Panchana Dam- dam built with clay at the confluence point of five rivers Berkheda, Bhadravati, Machi, Bhaisavat and Ata near Gudla village of Karauli district.
12. Khadin- It is basically the agricultural land adopted by the Paliwal brahmins during the medieval age in Jaisalmer .it is the most appropriate technique of water conservation and water management for agriculture and drinking purposes.
13. Johad- A form of water collection in the Shekhawat area- Sikar, Jhunjhunu and Churu.
14. With the objective of water self-reliance, Jal Kranti Abhiyan and Mukhyamantri Jal Swavlamban programs have been started by Government of India and the Government of Rajasthan respectively.

EXERCISE

Very Short Answer type Questions

1. What is meant by 'Water Management '?
2. Which is the longest man made canal of India?
3. Which is the longest dam of India?
4. What meant by "Barrage"?
5. In which regions of Rajasthan the Taanakas are built for the storage of rain water?
6. In which districts Gadisar and Gajroopsagar are famous?
7. Which multipurpose project is famous for the development of tribal areas in Rajasthan?
8. Which dam is built of clay?

Short Answer Type Questions-

1. Which projects in India are operated through state and Central Governments?
2. Why there is a need for water self reliance?
3. What is Bawri ? Explain.
4. What is Khadin? Explain.
5. Describe Bhakhra Nangal Project.
6. Why the water conservation technique is adopted in Rajasthan?
7. Throw light on Bisalpur Project.

Essay Type Questions-

1. Discuss about various types of water conservation in Rajasthan?
2. Discuss about Indira Gandhi Canal Project in Rajasthan.
3. Discuss about Chief Minister Water Self-reliance Program.
4. Discuss any two major projects of Government of India in detail.

Lesson-9

Agriculture in India

Introduction-

India is an agricultural country 48.9% (as per Census 2011) of total population of India depends directly upon agriculture and we get 13.7% (year 2012-13) of total domestic production from agriculture. Agriculture in India is practiced mainly to earn livelihood in which farmer grows food crops for personal use on his land by using traditional methods. He sells the surplus and buys other things of his daily use. Commercial agriculture is practiced in the areas of fertile plains on big size land holdings. Due to the passage of time and circumstances agriculture in India has, undergone continuous changes in its form in different fields. That is why Indian agriculture has different forms today. These various forms can be classified on following basis:-

Different forms of agriculture in India

1. Types of Indian agriculture based on seasons-

Indian agriculture has been divided into three categories on the basis of various seasons-

1. Kharif crop
2. Rabi crop
3. Zayad crop

(a) Kharif Crop- Crops which are sown in June-July and harvested in October November. Rice, maize, millet, groundnut, moog, urad, sugarcane, soyabean, etc. are some of the major crops of this season. These crops depend on monsoon rain but these days crops are also sown with irrigation.

(b) Rabi Crop- Crops which are sown in October-November and harvested in March-April. wheat, gram, barley, oilseeds, alsi, mustard, cuminseed, coriander, poppy, psyllium, are some of the major crops. Most of these crops are grown with irrigation.

(c) Zayad Crop- It includes green vegetables and fodder crops which are sown in February-April and harvested in June-July. Watermelon, gourd, bottle gourd, cucumber, etc. are grown in this season.

2. Types of Indian agriculture based on crops -

Food crops- Crops which are used for eating or as food like rice, wheat, maize, Jowar, millet, barley, and pulses etc.

Commercial crops- Crops which are used for commercial purposes or as raw material in industries. They are also known as cash crops which include- sugarcane, cotton, jute, tobacco, and oil seeds.

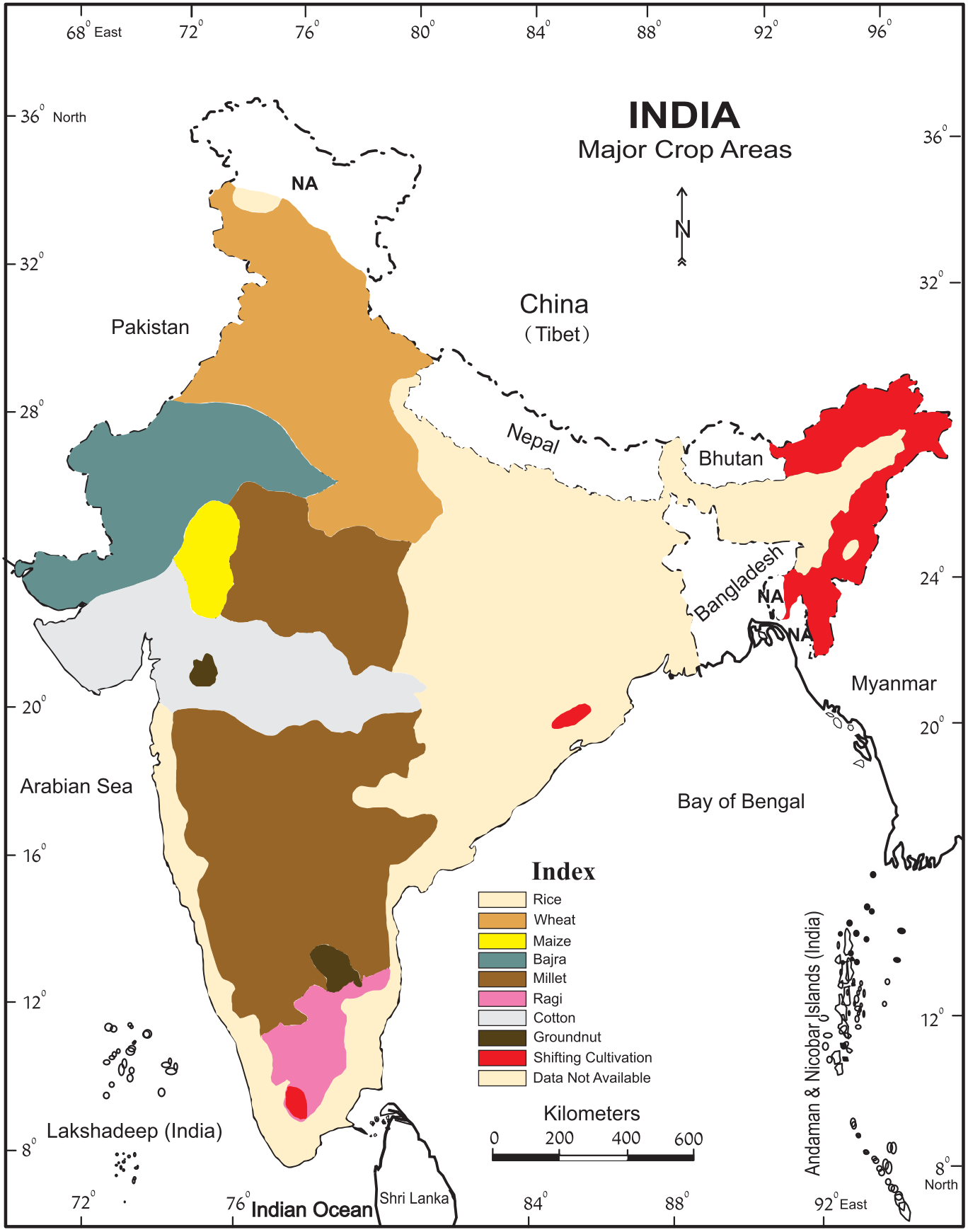
Plantation crops- These crops are grown in large plantations and are used as drinks and for industrial purpose like tea, rubber, cinchona, spices etc.

Garden crops- They include fruits and vegetables.

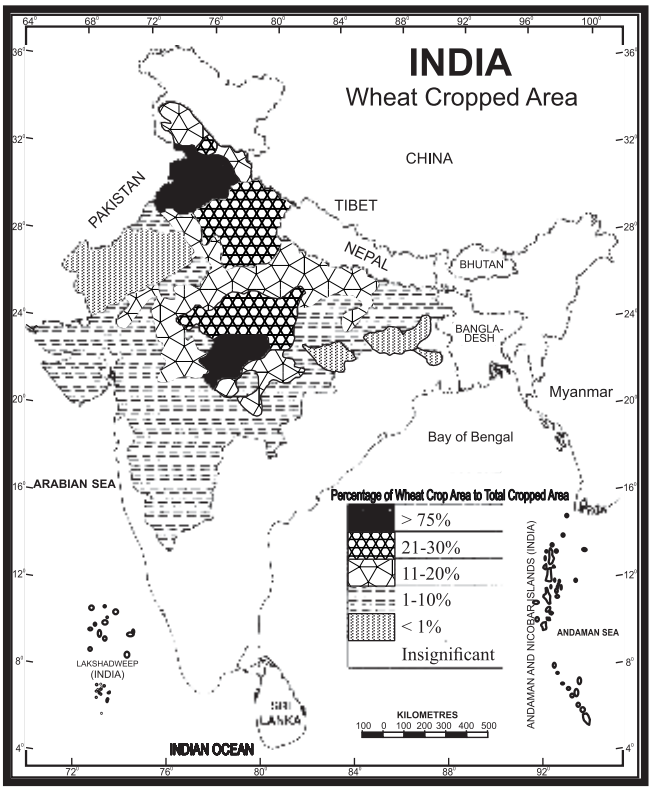
Major Food Crops of India:-

1 Wheat-

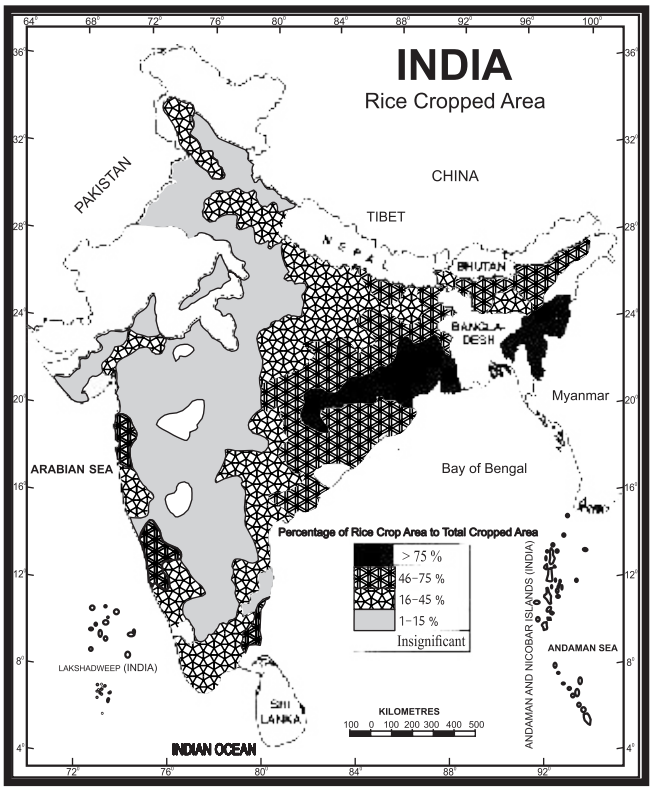
It is a **major** rabi crop of Northern India which is sown in temperate regions. It needs temperature between 10and 25 and rainfall between 25 cm. and 75 cm. and light clayey soil is suitable for this crop. 70% of India's wheat is grown in Punjab (21%), Haryana (6.17%), Uttar Pradesh



Map 9.1 : Major crop areas of India



Map 9.2 : Wheat crop area in India



Map 9.3 : Rice crop area in India

(32.68%), and other states like Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan and Bihar. In Rajasthan, wheat is grown in Ganganagar, Hanumangarh, Alwar, Bharatpur, Jaipur, Kota. India is the third largest wheat producing country in the world after China and America. Due to Green Revolution in India today the country is self-relient in wheat production because of increase in production, productivity and area under such crops.

2 Rice-

Rice is one of the major food crops in India. It is sown during rainy season in most parts of the country. That is why it is a major Kharif crop. Rice is grown in tropical regions where temperature is between 16^0C and 27^0C and rainfall between 100 and 200 cm. Clayey and alluvial soil near river basins is most suitable for production of rice. Rice in India is grown for the whole year according to seasons. Three crops of rice are grown in a year Aman (during winter), ous (during autumn) and boro (during summer). 86% production of rice is produced during monsoon that is why it has been kept under kharif crop. 90% of rice is grown in West Bengal (15%), Andhra Pradesh (14%), Uttar Pradesh (12%), Orissa, Bihar, Tamil Nadu, Madhya Pradesh and other states like Assam, Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand, Maharashtra, Punjab, Haryana etc. Rice in Rajasthan is grown in Ganganagar, Hanumangarh, Kota and with irrigation in Bundi in small quantity. India is the second largest country in rice production after China.

3 Maize-

It is a food crop as well as a commercial crop which provides raw material for industries manufacturing starch and glucose. It is also used as food grain. It is second major kharif crop after rice in India. It was brought in India by Portugese in 17th century. Maize needs temperature between 12 and 35 and rainfall between 50 and 100 cm. It requires deep soil with nitrogen where water is drained easily, 60% of maize in country is grown in Andhra Pradesh (19.3%) Karnataka (16.78%), Rajasthan (10.34%), Uttar Pradesh (10%), Gujarat (7%), Madhya Pradesh and Punjab. Maize in Rajasthan is grown in Kota, Bundi, Baran, Jhalawar, Udaipur,

Dungarpur, Banswara, Chittore, Ajmer, Ganganagar and Hanumangarh.

4. Bajra-

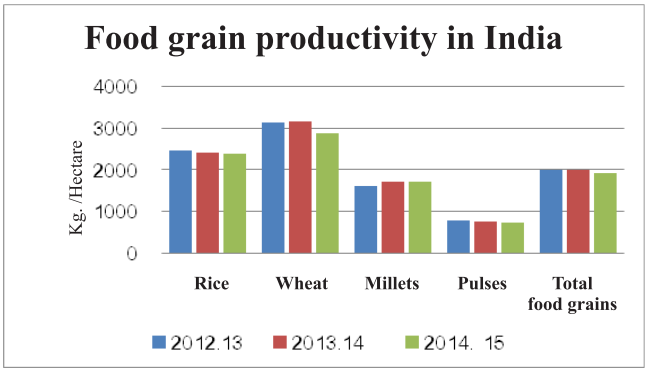
In India, Bajra is an important food crop in millet category after Jowar. It is grown in warm and dry climate between June and October. It is a Kharif crop. Bajra is sown in the areas of temperature between 25^{0}C and 35^{0}C and rainfall less than 50 cm. and light soil with proper water drainage. It can also be grown in all types of soils. Out of the total Bajra production in the country 85% is grown in Rajasthan (42%), Maharashtra (20%), Gujarat (12.5%) and in Uttar Pradesh (11%) and rest in other states like Andhra Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Karnataka and Punjab. In Rajasthan, Bajra is grown in Jaipur, Barmer, Jaisalmer, Bikaner, Sikar, Ganganagar, Jhunjhunu, Alwar, Jaipur and Jalore districts. India is at first place in bajra production in the world.

Major Pulses grown in India-

Most of Indian population is vegetarian. That is why pulses are used as source of protein. Pulse crops are sown because they also maintain the fertility of the soil. In India, pulses are mainly grown in Kharif season but some amount of this is also grown in Rabi season. Peanut, gram lentil etc. are grown in Rabi season. In pulse production, gram-pulse is one-third of total pulse production in India. Gram is grown mainly in plain areas of North India in Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan, Uttar Pradesh and West Bengal. Gram in Rajasthan is grown in canal irrigation areas of Ganganagar, Hanumangarh and Bikaner. Good amount of gram production also received from Andhra Pradesh and Maharashtra states. After gram, arhar is the second major pulse crop which is sown with jowar, other millet and mustard. It is grown in Maharashtra, Uttar Pradesh, Karnataka, Bihar, Madhya Pradesh and Andhra Pradesh.

Production of food grains in India

Agricultural crops	Area (in Lakh Hectare)			Production (in Million Tonnes)			Productivity (Kilograms per hectare)		
Year	2012-13	2013-14	2014-15	2012-13	2013-14	2014-15	2012-13	2013-14	2014-15
Rice	427.54	441.36	438.56	105.24	106.65	104.8	2461	2416	2390
Wheat	300.03	304.73	309.69	93.51	95.85	88.94	3117	3145	2872
Millets	247.57	252.2	241.49	40.04	43.29	41.75	1617	1717	1729
Pulses	232.56	252.13	230.98	18.34	19.25	17.2	789	764	744
Total Food grains	**1207.7**	**1250.42**	**1220.72**	**257.13**	**265.04**	**252.69**	**1996**	**2010.5**	**1933.75**



Diag. 9.1 : Food grain productivity in India

Moong and urad are grown with jowar, millet and cotton in peninsular parts of India. Rajasthan is at first place in moong and bajra production in India. Here moong is grown in semi-arid desert areas of Jalore, Nagaur, Jodhpur and Pali. In the same way Urad is sown in Hadoti areas of Kota, Bundi, and Jhalawar, Chittor, Udaipur and Bhilwara in Mewar and Banswara in Southern Rajasthan. Lentil-Pulse is grown with Rabi crops in Eastern Rajasthan like Alwar, Bharatpur and Dholpur.

Major Commercial / Cash Crops of India

Cash crops in India are grown in one-fourth part of total agricultural land. These crops are not only the source of income for farmers but also provide raw material to the industries. Sugarcane, cotton, oilseed, jute and tobacco are major commercial crops.

1. Sugarcane-

Sugarcane is a plant of Indian origin and descendant of bamboo family. It holds first place in commercial crops. India is at first place in sugarcane production and producing area in the world. India produces 50% sugarcane of the world. Sugarcane is grown in tropical regions of India. Sugarcane needs temperature between 15^{0}C and 30^{0}C and rainfall between 100 and 200 cm. Clayey, moist soil of river basin is most suitable for sugarcane. North India has large sugar-producing areas but South India produces more sugarcane because the humid climate of South helps in increase quantity of sugarcane. Uttar Pradesh, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, Haryana, Punjab, Bihar and Gujarat are major sugarcane producing states in India. Sugarcane in Rajasthan is grown in Udaipur, Ganganagar, Bhilwara, Chittor and Bundi. Sugarcane is used in making sugar, jaggery, and alcohol.

Map 9.4 : Sugarcane crop area in India

2. Cotton-

Indians had knowledge of making cotton textile from cotton since ancient times. Cotton is grown on 6.7% part of total agriculture land. Cotton in India is grown in Kharif season It needs temperature between 20^{0}C and 35^{0}C and rainfall between 75 and 100 cm. Deep black soil with lime and potash is considered suitable for cotton. Three varieties of cotton are grown in India :-

(1) **Long and thin fiber cotton (American cotton) :** In India, 50% of total production of cotton is of this type only. This is grown in Punjab, Haryana and Rajasthan.

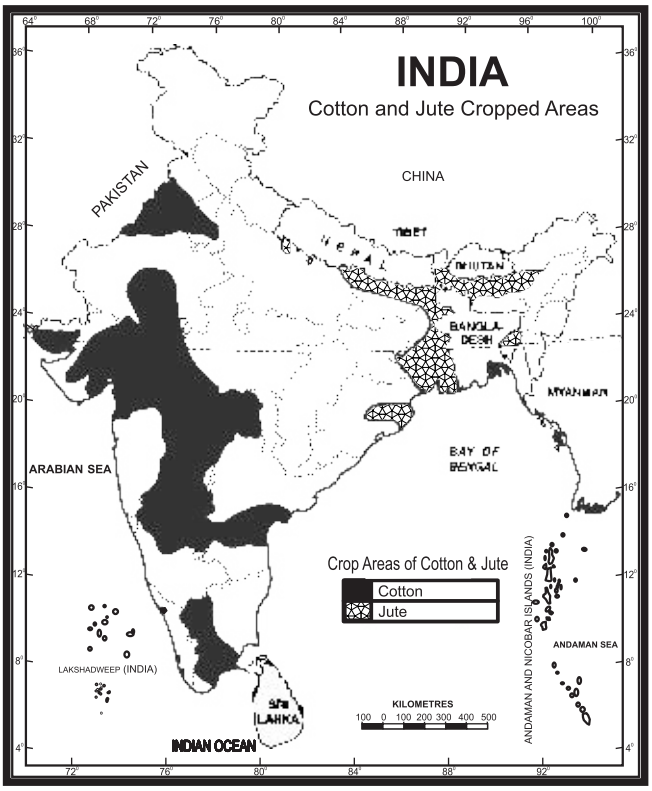
(2) **Medium fiber cotton :** In India, 40% of total production of cotton is of this quality only. It is grown in Gujarat, Maharashtra, Haryana, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka and Tamil Nadu.

(3) **Short fiber cotton :** Its is 10% of total production of cotton and is grown in small quantity in almost all the states of the country.

In area and production of cotton Gujarat stands on first position, Maharashtra second and Andhra Pradesh is at third place. Punjab and Haryana are also important cotton producing states. Production of cotton is less than demand so India imports cotton from America, Sudan, Keneya and Egypt. In Rajasthan, cotton is grown in Ganganagar, Hanumangarh, Bikaner, Kota, Bundi, and Jhalawar.

3. Jute-

Jute is an important fiber crop of India. The stem of jute plant is used in paper industry and the fibers part is used in making ropes and other articles. Warm tropical wet climate is necessary for the growth of jute plant. In India, West Bengal is a



Map 9.5 : Cotton and Jute crop area in India

leading producer of jute and about 60% of the total jute production of India is received from this state. Assam, Bihar, Jharkhand, Uttar Pradesh and Tripura states are also important for jute production.

4. Oilseeds-

Edible oil is extracted from the seeds of oilseed crops. India produces about 10% oilseed production of the world. Oilseed crops are grown both in Rabi and Kharif seasons. The major oilseed crops in India are groundnut, mustard, sesame, sunflower, alsi, castor and soyabean. Groundnut and mustard form 80% of total oilseed production.

Groundnut-

It is a crop of Brazil origin. India produces about 30% of total groundnut production of the world. It is sown in Kharif season. In India 45% oilseed crops are of groundnut only. About 85% production of groundnut in the country is received from Gujarat (first), Andhra Pradesh (Second), Tamil Nadu (third), Maharashtra and Karnataka states. In Rajasthan, groundnut is grown in Chittore, Swaimadhopur, Bhilwara, Jaipur, Ganganagar, Bikaner, Hanumangarh, and in irrigated areas of Rajasthan canal.

Mustard-

India produces about 70% Mustard of the world and 35% of total oilseed production of the country is taken from mustard only. About 85% of mustard is grown in northern India. Rajasthan is ranked first in mustard production in India and it produces 41% mustard of the country. It is also grown in Uttar Pradesh (second), Madhya Pradesh (third), Gujarat, Punjab and Haryana. In Rajasthan, It is grown in Alwar, Bharatpur, Jaipur, Hanumangarah, Gangnagar, Swaimadhopur, Bhilwara, Bikaner and irrigated area of Rajasthan canal.

Other Oilseed Crops-

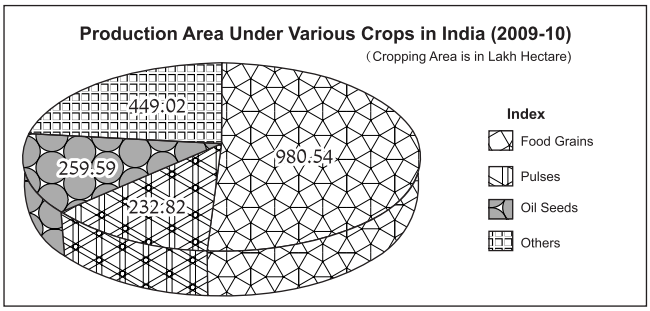
Castor oil is used as lubricating agent in machines and also used in soap manufacturing and

Production of Cash Crops in India

Agricultural Crops	Area (in Lakh Hectare)			Production (in Million Tonnes)			Productivity (Kilograms per Hectare)		
Year	2012-13	2013-14	2014-15	2012-13	2013-14	2014-15	2012-13	2013-14	2014-15
Oilseeds	264.84	280.51	257.27 7	30.94	32.74	26.68	1168	1168	1037
Sugarcane	49.99	49.93	51.44	341.20	352.14	359.33	68254	70522	69857
Cotton	119.77	119.60	130.83	34.22	35.90	35.48	486	510	461

(Note : One bale of cotton weight is 170 kg and its production is shown in this table in lakh bales)
(These figure are taken from Annual Report (2015-16) of Ministry of Agriculture, Government of India.

leather tanning works. In India, Gujarat and Rajasthan are the leading producers of castor oil which produces 65% and 25% of the total castor production respectively. In India, 70% Soyabean is produced in Madhya Pradesh only and 20% in Maharashtra and 10% in Rajasthan.



Diag. 9.2 : Production area under various crops in India

Contribution of Agriculture in Indian Economy-

1. A Source of Employment-

Agriculture directly provides employment to 56.6% population in India. It also provides indirect employment to agriculture based occupations like animal husbandry, fish farming, and forestry. It also provides raw material to industries, which is an indirect source of livelihood for a large population.

2. Contribution in Gross Domestic Production-

There has been great contribution of agriculture and its allied activities in gross domestic production in India. It was 55.11% on prices of 1993-94 in 1951 which reduced to 44.26% in 1990. During 2007-08. It was 17.8% on prices of 1999-2000 and it reduced to 15.35% on prices of 2011-12 in 2015-16. The reason of this downfall was rapid industrial development in secondary and tertiary sectors.

3. Contribution in Foreign Trade-

India contributes 2.07% in export of agriculture production in the world. India is the tenth largest country in the world in export of agriculture production. It is fourth biggest sector of total export. It exports products like tea, sugar, oilseed, tobacco, spices, fresh fruits and basmati rice. It also includes other agriculture products like jute textile, poultry where as food grains and edible oil are included in imports.

4. Supply of Raw Material for the Industries-

Various agriculture based industries like textile industry, sugar industry, vegetable oil industry, jute industry, rubber industry and spice industry get their raw material from agriculture.

5. Market for Industrial Products-

60% population of India resides in rural areas which is dependent on agriculture. This sector provides market for agricultural equipments like tractor harvestors, cultivation equipments, fertilizer and pesticides.

If we assess Indian agriculture, we will find that it is the backbone of Indian economy. It is also a source of income and employment. Production falls due to dependence of agriculture on monsoon, which is indefinite and irregular with havoc of flood and droughts. If we want to develop agriculture in India, we will have to change the ancient way of its production. We will have to remove illiteracy and abolish poverty, only then development of agriculture and condition of farmers will improve.

Important Points

1. 54.6% of Indian population still earns its living from agriculture and its allied activities at present.
2. Agriculture in India has been divided in three categories on the basis of seasons.
3. Rice and Wheat are the main food grain crops of great northern plains of India.
4. Commercial crops- The crops which are used as raw material for industries on seasonal basis. They are known as cash crops.
5. Production, productivity, production area of wheat in India has increased due to Green Revolution.
6. Crops are provided water in artificial manner to retain moisture in soil which is called

irrigation.

7. Three crops of rice are grown in India Aman (during winter), ous (during autumn) and boro (during summer).
8. Maize is used in three ways as food, fodder and industrial use. It is second largest Kharif Crop after rice in India.
9. Production of sugarcane is highest in South India due to humid climate.
10. Cotton with long thin fiber (American cotton) which is 50% of total production grown in Punjab, Haryana and Rajasthan known as 'Narma'
11. 41% of mustard of the country is grown in Rajasthan. The Eastern plains of Rajasthan are highest in mustard production.

EXERCISE

Very Short Answer Type Questions-

1. In how many forms is Indian agriculture divided on the basis of seasons?
2. Which crops in India are known as garden crops?
3. What do you mean by cash crops?
4. How many crops of rice are grown in India?
5. In which districts is dry farming practised?
6. What do you mean by irrigated agriculture?
7. Which states produce cotton the most?
8. What do you mean by 'narma'?

Short Answer Type Questions-

1. Classify the agriculture crops in India on the basis of their consumption?
2. Describe the maize crop.
3. Mention the contribution of mustard in oilseed crops.
4. Describe zooming farming.
5. Describe the contribution of cotton as a cash crop.
6. Describe millet crop.

Essay Type Questions-

1. Mention the contribution of pulse-crops in Indian agriculture.
2. Describe the role of agriculture in Indian economy
3. Classify agriculture on the basis of their methods in India.
4. Describe food crops in India.

Lesson-10

Mineral and Energy Resources

Introduction-

Mineral means substances obtained from earth through mining which have chemical and physical properties useful for human beings and have some economic value. They are called mineral resources. Physical and biological components play a very important role in their formation. That is why these have been classified as biotic and abiotic minerals such as coal, petroleum, natural gas etc. are biotic minerals and iron, manganese, mica etc. are under abiotic category.

India is rich in mineral resources. The geological structure of the country has provided many minerals. Out of the total mineral wealth of India 96% of mineral reserves are found in peninsular plateau, Arawali mountain regions, Brahmaputra valley, Himalayan regions and Southern coastal regions.

Minerals in India are divided into following categories on the basis of their physical and chemical properties

1. Metallic Minerals-

Minerals which contain some part of metal are called metallic minerals**.** It is further divided into two types :-

(a) Ferrous Minerals-

Minerals having iron content for example, iron ore chromite, pyrite, tungsten, cobalt, etc.

(b) Non-Ferrous Minerals-

Minerals devoid of iron contents for example, gold, silver, copper, zinc, bauxite, magnesium.

2. Non-metallic Minerals-

Minerals which do not have metal contents are called Non-metallic minerals**.** Limestone, dolomite, mica, gypsum etc. are example of these.

Energy minerals are also included in the category of non-metallic minerals. These minerals give heat or energy. On the basis of their properties they can be divided into two types :-

(a) Fuel Minerals-

Mineral which are used as fuel material are called fuel minerals such as coal, petroleum, natural gas etc.

(b) Nuclear Power Minerals-

Minerals which give atomic energy are called nuclear power minerals. They include uranium, beryllium, thorium, limonite etc.

About 100 metallic and non-metallic minerals are found in India out of which there are 52 non-metallic, 10 metallic and 23 minor minerals- building material and 4 are fuel minerals which form 3.4% of Gross Domestic Production and 11% of industrial production.

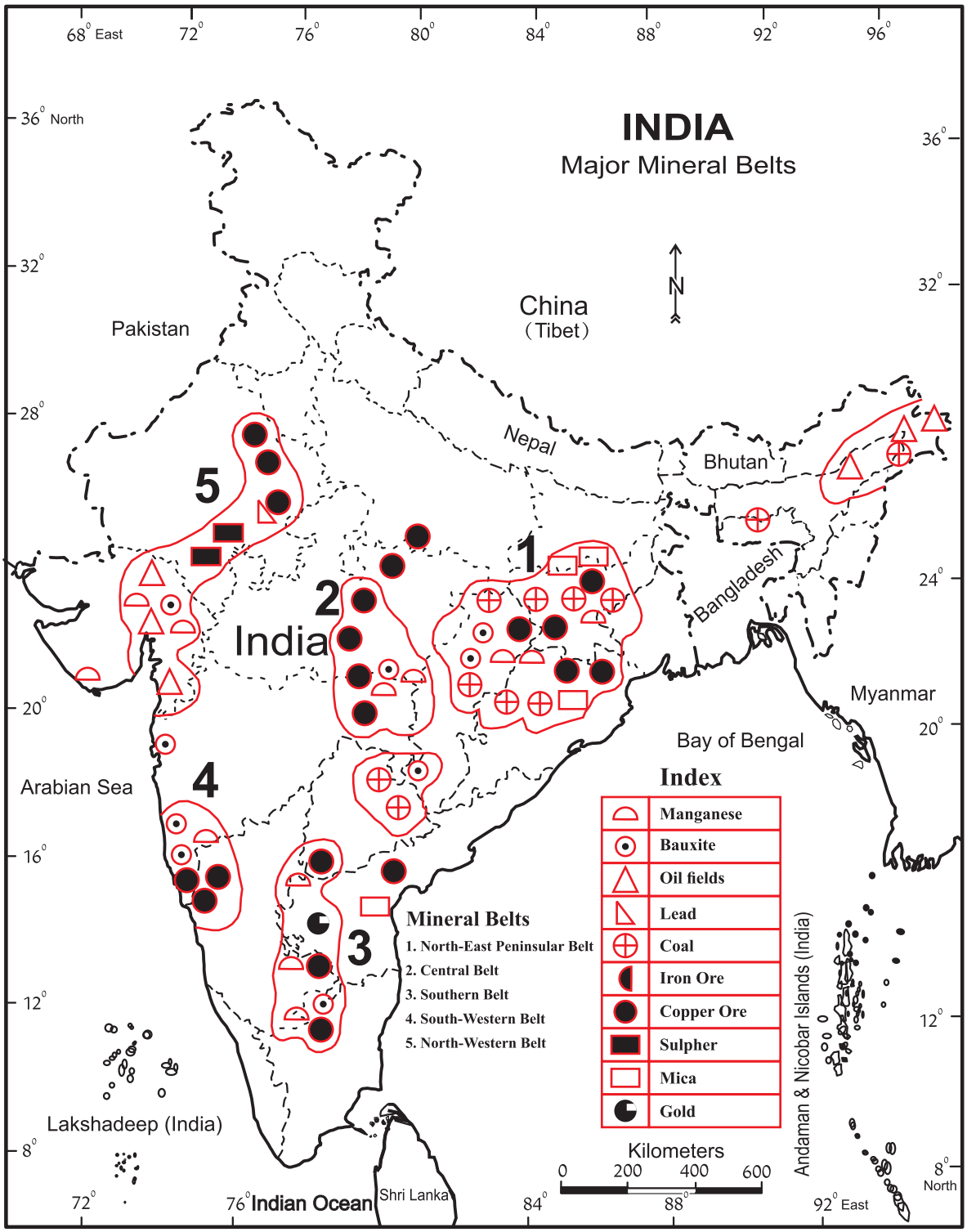
Major Mineral Belts of India-

In India there is uneven distribution of mineral resources. In India there are five major mineral belts-

1. North-East Peninsular Belt - This belt is spread from Chota Nagpur Plateau to Orissa Plateau region. This belt is the most wealthiest mineral belt of India. In this belt there are large

reserves of coal, iron ore, manganese, mica, bauxite, copper and many other minerals.

2. Central Belt - This belt is extended in the parts of Chattishgarh, Madhya Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh and Maharashtra. This is the second wealthiest mineral belt in India. Here minerals reserve of manganese, bauxite, lime stone, marble, coal, emerald, iron ore, mica etc. are found in good amount.



Map 10.1 : Major mineral belts of India

3. Southern Belt - This belt is spread in the areas of Karanatak plateau and high lands of Tamilnadu. Like North-Eastern peninsular belt this is also having good reserves of iron ore and bauxite but there are will poor deposits of coal, mica and copper minerals.

4. South Western Belt - This belt is extended in southern parts of Karnatak and Goa states. Here rich deposits of iron ore, garnet and clay are found.

5. North Western Belt - This belt is spread in the aravalli region of Rajasthan and adjoining areas of Gujarat. Here the reserves of non-ferrous metallic minerals like copper, lead, zink etc. are found with the deposits of uranium, mica, precious stone, gypsum, salt etc.

Major Minerals of India-

1. Iron ore- It is the backbone of modern industrial economy which is obtained from igneous rocks. India is the second largest country after Russia in the world in its reserves. Four types of iron ore magnetite, hematite, limonite and siderite are found in India. India has iron deposits of 2300 crore tons which is 20% of the world's availability. It includes magnetite (60-70% of iron element) 8% hematite (70-80% iron element) 85% and 7% of other kinds. Production and distribution of iron in India is as follows :-

Orissa- Out of the total production of India 22% is found in Orissa. Hematite type of iron ore deposits are in Mayurganj, Sundargarh, and Keonjhar districts. It is found in Gurumhisim, Badam hills are in Mayurganj district and also in Baspani, Thakurani, and Kiruburu in Keonjhar district. Iron ore is exported to Japan and other countries from Pardadeep and Vishakhapatnam ports.

Karnataka- 25% of total reserves and 26% of iron ore production is obtained from this state. Here Hematite type of iron ore is found is Bellari, Chickmangloor, Chitradurg and Shimoga districts. It is also found in Bababudan hills, Kemangudi, Kadremukh, and in Chickmangloor districts. This iron ore is refined in Bhadrawati and Vijaynagar plants.

Chhattisgarh- It is the third largest state in production of iron. 18% iron ore of total reserves and 20% of total production is obtained from this state. Reserves of hematite type of iron-ore are found in Bastar, Durg, Danwtewada. Bilaspur and Rajnandgam districts. It is found in Dhalli- Rajhara range, Bailadia Ravghat, and Jagdalpur regions of these districts. This iron-ore is refined in Bhilai plant and the remaining iron ore is exported to Japan from Vishakhapatnam port. Bailadia mine is the largest iron ore mine in Asia.

Goa- It is the fourth largest iron-ore producing state of the country 11% of total production of the country is obtained from this state. Here limonite and siderite type of inferior quality of iron-ore with impurities along with manganese is found.

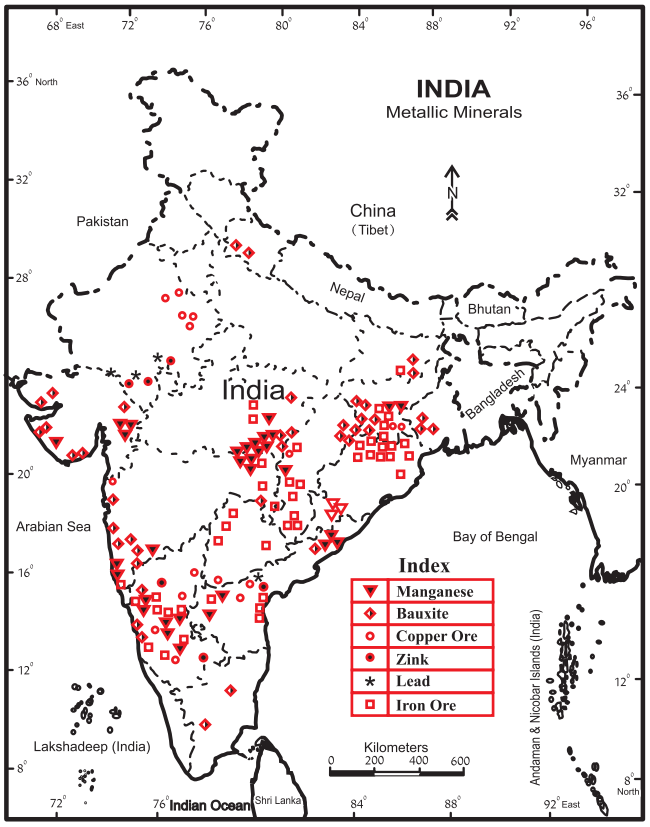
The reserves of iron-ore here are found in Pirna-Adelepale-Asnora, Kudnem-surla, Tosilla-Dongarwado areas. Entire iron obtained from here is exported via Marmagoa port.

Jharkhand- It is the fifth largest iron-ore producing state in the country where 10.4% of total iron-ore is produced. Reserves of iron-ore are present in Singhbumei and Palamu districts. It is obtained from in Nauamundi, Gua and Daltonganj areas of these districts, This iron-ore is refined in Kulti and Baranpur plants. Mining of iron-ore started first of all in this district.

In other states it is obtained from Telangana, Salem in Tamil Nadu, Udaipur, Jaipur, Bhilwara, and Alwar in Rajasthan and Mahendragarh in Haryana . It is third most important export item in foreign trade. It is exported to Japan and some European countries.

2. Copper- It is found in metamorphic rocks of Dharwar and Arawali ranges in the form of sulphite and charcairite ore which is used in electric, wireless, Air condition and Freeze, utensil and various other industries. India has 01% of world's copper deposits. 95% of copper of India is obtained from Balaghat and Betul in Madhya Pradesh Singhbhoomi, Hazaribagh, and Palamu in

Jharkhand, Jhunjhunu, Alwar, Rajsmand, Bhilwara, and Udaipur, districts in Rajasthan, Guntur, and Kurhul, in Andhra Pradesh and Chitradurg district in Karantaka. Kalihan mines. Mandhan mine, Mosabani mine, Rakha etc. are famous copper mines in India. Hindustan Copper Limited is the only public sector company authorised to refine copper in India. Due to less production, India imports copper from foreign countries to meet its demand.



Map 10.2 : Important metallic mineral of India

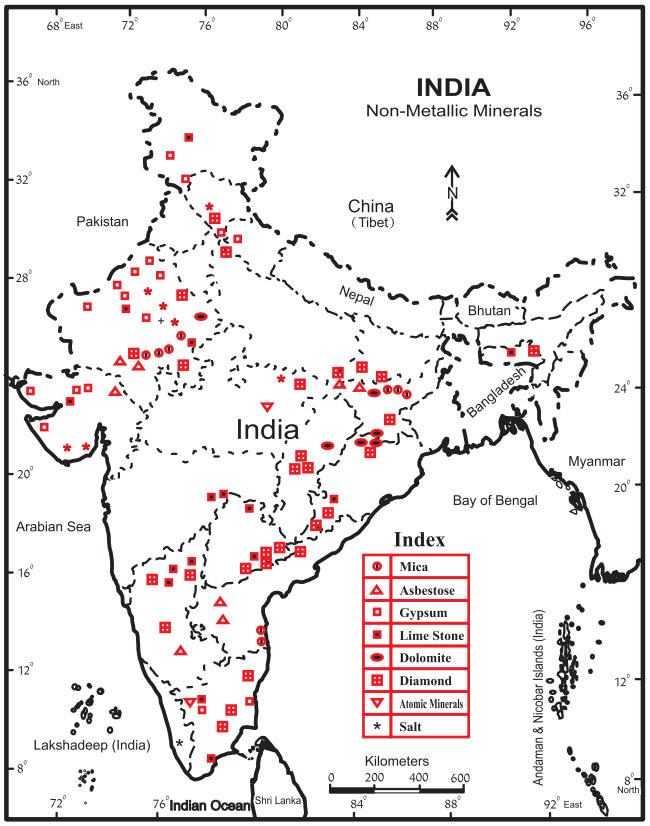
3. Bauxite- This ore is used in making aluminum and aluminum is used in electrical industry, machinery industry and for making utensils. In India it is obtained from lava rocks of Vindhyachal and Dharwar range.

India is the fifth largest country in the world from bauxite deposit point of view. 95% of bauxite deposits are found in Korput and Kalahadi districts in Orisa, Ranchi, Palamu, Giridih, Lohardaga, in Jharkhand districts Balaghat, Katoni and Jabalpur, in Madhya Pradesh, Kheda, Jamnagar, Junagarh and Kachha district in Gujarat, Sarguja, Raipur and Bilaspur in Chhattisgarh, Kolhapur, Ratongiri, Pune, in Maharashtra and in other states of Karnataka, Goa and Tamil Nadu. 80% bauxite in the country is used in making aluminum. 60% of production is consumed in India. Rest of the produce is exported to European and Gulf countries.

4. Lead and Zinc- It is present in sedimentary rocks of Arawali range in mixed form of galena. Zinc is used in chemicals, dry battery and anti rusting work. Lead is also used in making brass, military equipments, railway engines and many other articles. 95% of lead and zinc deposits is present and production is done in Chittore, Rajsmand, Bhilwara and Udaipur districts in Rajasthan. Refining work of lead and zinc is done by a public sector company Hindustan Zinc Limited and Jawar mines Udaipur, Other deposits are present in Andhra Pradesh, Jharkhand, Orissa and Tamil Nadu.

5. Mica- India is at the first place in mica production in the world. 70 to 80% mica of the world is mined in India. Here muscovite (ruby mica) and biotite (pink mica) is obtained from ingenious and metamorphic rocks. It can resist high temperature and is of non-conductive shining metal with foliation layers. It is used in electrical industry, aircraft industry, and military equipment industry. Mica in India is in protected state because there is less consumption of mica deposits. Mica deposits are present in Nellore, Guntur, Cuddapah, in Andhra Pradesh (first in country), Bhilwara, Ajmer, Jaipur, Udaipur and Tonk in Rajasthan (second in country), Hazaribag, Kodarma, Giridih, Dhanbad, Bokoro and Palamu in Jharkhand (third in country) Aurangabad, Gaya, Nawada and Begusarai in Bihar, Madurai and Coimbatore, in Tamil Nadu and Balaghat and Chhindwara in Madhya Pradesh.

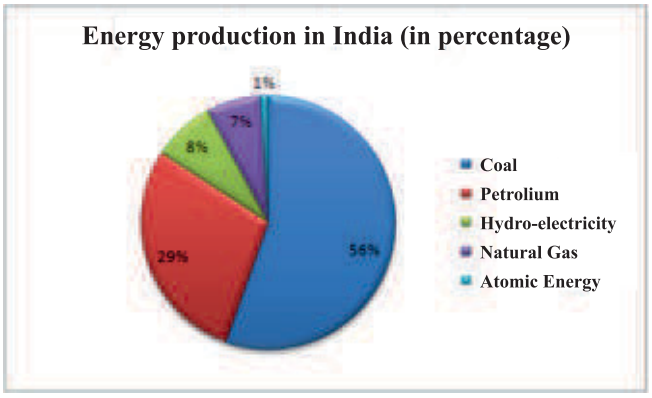
Other than mica there are reserves of Lime stone, Dolomite, Asbestos, Gypsum etc. Non-matellic minerals in India. India is leading producer of many of these non-matallic minerals.



Map 10.3 : Important non-metallic mineral of India

Energy Minerals-

From these minerals be obtain heat and energy. For the industrial development of any country energy is considered as its primary need. The natural sources of energy minerals are fossil material and atomic elements. It is obtain from coal, petroleum, natural gas and atomic energy traditionally and used in industries, agriculture, transportation and at household level to the modern life style.

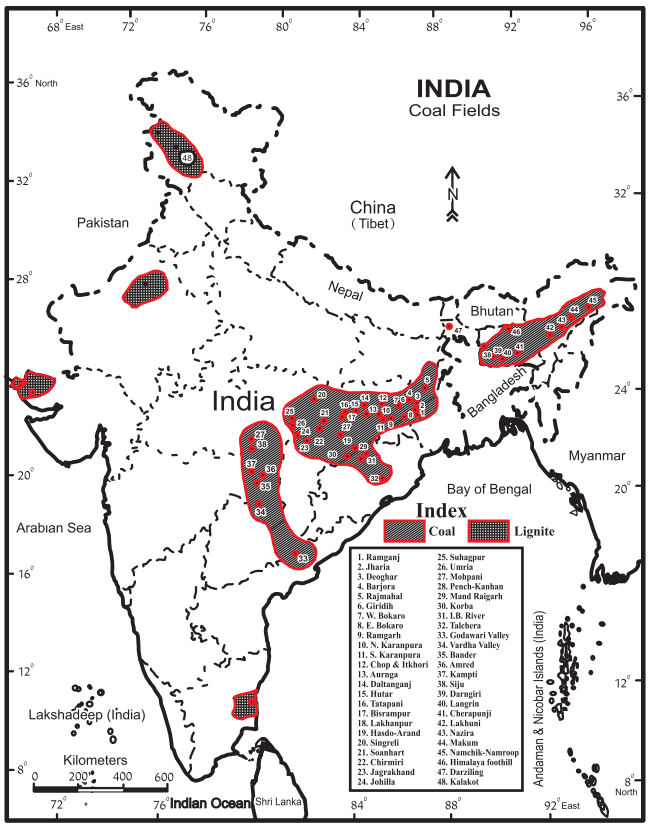


Diag. 10.1 : Energy production in India

The production and distribution of these resources of the country is as follows-

1. Coal- India is the third largest coal producing country in the world after China and America. In India, coal was found first in Raniganj in 1774. After this its development started in 19th century. Its discovery and mining began in other parts of the country. Coal has been categorized on the basis of carbon contents as-Anthracite (80-95%) Bituminous (40-80%) Lignite (40-55%), Piet (< 40%) coal. In India 98.5% deposits are present and 99% production of coal is obtained from sedimentary rocks of Gondwana period. It is physically present in Mahanadi valley region, Damodar valley, Son-valley, Godawari-Wardha region and in five river valley region of Brahmani, Indrawati and Koel. Here bituminous coal is found in the form of thick layers of 10 m. to 30 m.

Lignite type of inferior quality coal of tertiary period built about 15 to 60 lakh years ago is found in mixed form. The deposits of such type of coal are found in Assam, Meghalaya, Arunachal



Map 10.4 : Major coal fields of India

Table 10.1 : Coal reserves, production and production areas in India

Name of the State	Percentage of total reserves of the county	Percentage of total production of the county	Major regions
Jharkhand	28	22	Jharia, Bokaro, Rajmahal, Deoghar, Daltonganj
Orissa	24	16	Dhenkanal, Sambalpur, Telcher, Sundargarh, Brahmani valley
Chhattisgarh	16	15	Sarguja, Bilaspur, Ramgarh, Korba, Bishrampur
W. Bengal	11	6	Raniganj, Bardhaman, Balkonda, Purulia, Veer Bhumi, Darjeeling
Madhya Pradesh	8	13	Shahdol, Chhindwara, Narsingpura, Betul
Telangana & Andhra Pradesh	7	9	Khammam, Adilabad, Warangal, Singreli, Challapalli
Maharashtra	4	6	Chandrapur, Yavatmal, Nagpur
Uttar Pradesh	0.50	0.15	Sonbhadra district
Other States	2	6	Eastern states and rest of India
Tertiary Coal	0.50	7	Makum, Nazira in Assam, Palana, Kapurdi and Barsingsar in Rajasthan and Neyveli in Tamil Nadu
Total Coal in India	100	100	

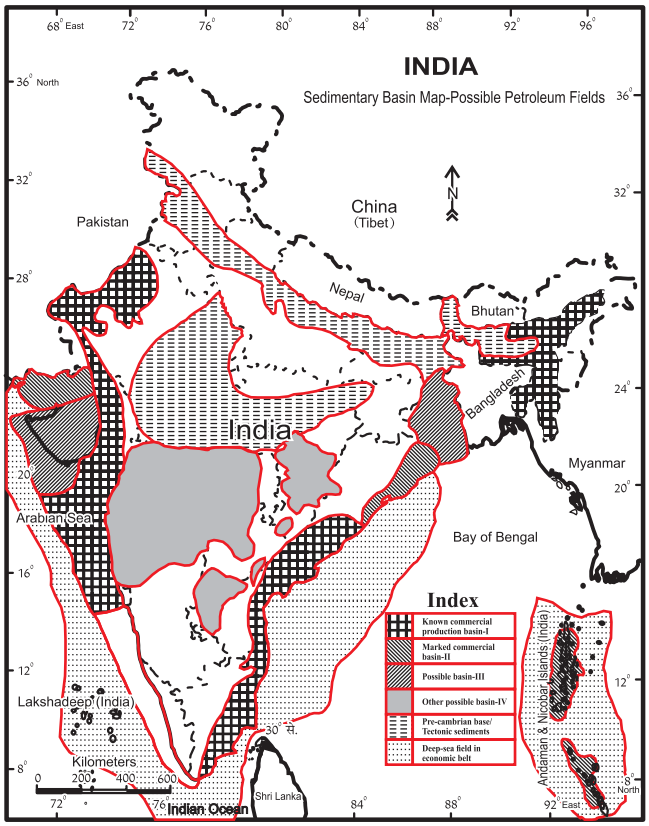
Table 10.2 : Coal production in India

Year	Coal Production (in ten lakh tonnes)
2012–13	556 .40
2013–14	565.77
2014–15	612.44
2015–16	447.48

Pradesh, Himachal Pradesh, Nagaland and Rajasthan.

Lignite coal is found in Rajasthan which is present with limestone at Kapurdi, Jalippa, Giral, Bhadkha, Gunga and Shiv in Barmer, Barsinghsar, Palana, Gudha, Deshhnok in Bikaner, Merta, Kasanu, Kuchera and Matasukh in Nagore district. This lignite in Rajasthan is used in thermol power plant.

2. Petroleum Products- Petroleum is today the pivot of transport facilities and industrial development of any country. In India petroleum is spread in 17.2 lakh square km. area and this sponge like fossil mineral oil is found in vast sedimentary rocks. It is formed by immersing of vegetation and living organism in oceanic parts and chemical and thermal processes. It is found below the reserves of natural gas and used in transport and machinery sectors. Its reserves are found in Brahmaputra valley and Surma valley in Assam, Sundervan delta in West Bengal, Eastern coastal parts of Orissa, Rajasthan. Saurashtra, Himalayan Tarai, regions, North and central Gujarat, Mumbai Basin,



Map 10.5 : Possible petroleum fields of India

Godawari and Kaveri delta regions, Mumbai Basin and Bombay High in Arabian sea.

Major Regions of Petroleum Reserves in India-

In India 90% of total petroleum production is obtained from Maharashtra, Assam, Gujarat and Rajasthan. This crude oil is sent to 24 large refineries of the country through pipelines to Gohati, Baroni, vadodara, Haldia, Mathura, Digboi and Jamnagar. In the same way the reserve of natural gas are found in Tamil Nadu, Himachal Pradesh, Punjab, Rajasthan, West Bengal, Tripura, and Arunachal Pradesh. They are managed by Gas Authority of India. This company provides total natural gas of the country for electricity production (38%), fertilizer manufacture (33%) and remaining for other industries and domestic use. Out of total production of the country, 91% is produced in Maharashtra, Gujarat, Assam and Rajasthan.

Reserves of petroleum in Rajasthan are found in Bikaner, Barmer, Jaisalmer, and Ganganagar districts in 12 blocks In which large

Table 10.3 : Major Regions of Petroleum Reserves in India

Name of the State	Major Regions
Assam	Digboi, Lakhimpur, Hansa Pug, Badarpur, Masimpur, Patharia, Nahar Katia, Hugriganj, Moran
Gujarat	Ankleshwar region, Lunel region, Kalol, Mehsana and in Aliabet Island in the Arabian Sea
Maharashtra	Bombay High in Arabian Sea and Vasai off shore region
Rajasthan	Bikaner, Jaisalmer, Barmer
Andhra Pradesh	Kelalur and Amalapuram in Godvari Basin
Tamil Nadu	Madnam coast, Nagapattinam, Kovikollam

Table 10.4 : Production of petroleum products in Rajasthan

Year	Crude Oil production (MMT)	Percentage Increase	Natural Gas production (BCM)	Percentage Increase
2010–11	37.684	11.85	52.21	9.94
2011–12	38.090	1.08	47.559	–8.92
2012–13	37.862	–0.60	40.679	–14.47
2013–14	37.788	–0.19	35.407	–12.96
2014–15	37.461	–0.87	33.656	–4.95
2015–16	37.046	–1.11	35.28	4.83

reserves are present in Jaisalmer block, Sanchor-Gudhamalani block, Bikaner- Nagore block, Bikaner-Ganganagar block. Cairn India, a foreign company has dug 91 wells in Gudhamalani and Sanchor blocks of which commercial production has started in 12 wells from 2005.

Atomic Energy Minerals- Uranium-338, 235 and 233, Plutonium-239 Thorium, Beryllium and Zircon minerals are used as atomic energy. one ounce of uranium can produce energy equal to 100 metric tons of coal.

Atomic Energy Commission was founded in 1948 and then 17 atomic reactors were established in India. These atomic reactors generate 4800 mw. electricity. In atomic reserves Uranium reserves are found in Dharwad and archean rocks, Singhbumi in Bihar, in pegmatite rocks in mica regions of Rajasthan in monazite rocks in coastal parts of Kerala. Thorium reserves are present in the sands of Kerala and Bihar, deposits of Eliminite reserves are present in the sands of Kerala, and Beryllium reserve are present in Rajasthan, Bihar, and Andhra Pradesh.

Minerals in Rajasthan-

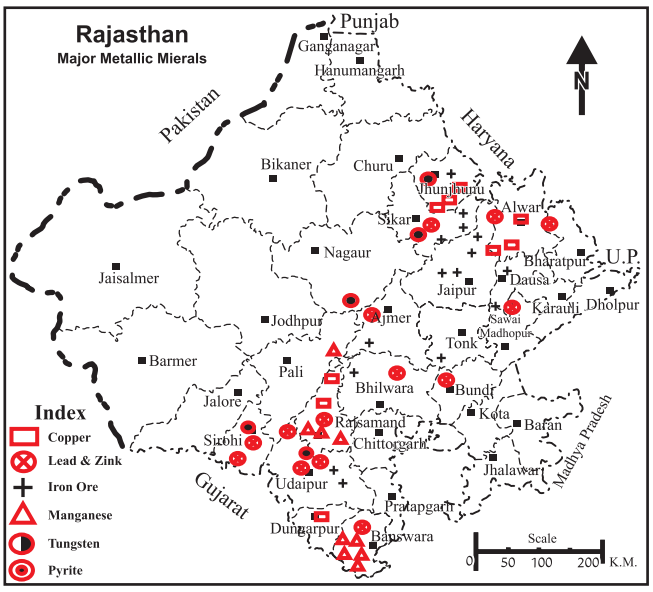
Rajasthan is known as 'the museum of minerals'. About 79 types of minerals are found in Rajasthan, out of which 44 kinds are large 23 small and 12 are micro minerals. From availability point of view Rajasthan is the third largest mineral producing state in the country after Madhya Pradesh and Chhatisgarh. Some cities and towns in Rajasthan are famous for minerals like copper city (Khetri), marble city (Makrana). Rajasthan has monopoly in deposits of some minerals like lead zinc, silver, wollastonite, jasper, fluorite, gypsum, asbestos, rock-phosphate, tungsten and garnet. The distribution of minerals in Rajasthan is given in a following tables and diagrams.

Table 10.5 : Major mineral producing areas in Rajasthan

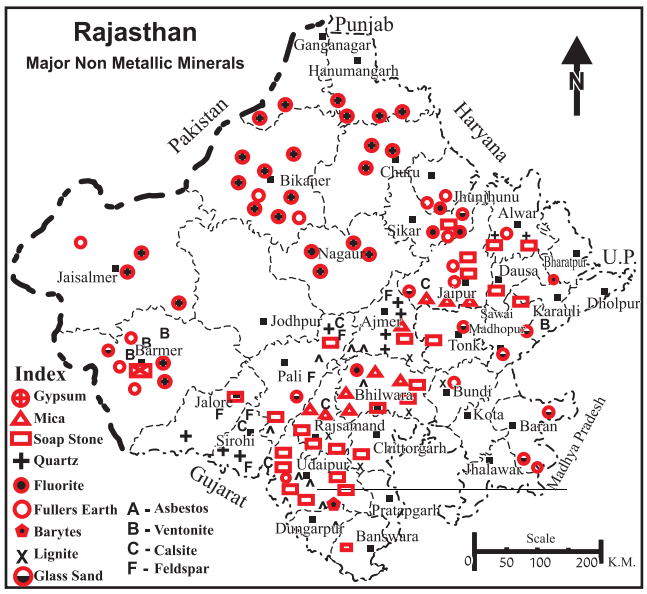
	Mineral	Producing Regions	Major Districts
	Copper	Khoh Dariba (Alwar), Debari-Salumbar (Udaipur), Bhim-Railmagra (Rajsamand), Bidasar (Bikaner), Khetri-Singhana (Jhunjhunu)	Jhunjhunu
	Lead and Zinc	Zawar, Rajpura-Debari (Udaipur), Rampura-Agucha (Bhilwara), Pur Banera belt, Gudha Kishori Das	Bhilwara and Udaipur
	Iorn ore	Morija-Banol (Jaipur), Dabla (Jhunjhunu), Neemla-Raisela, Nathra ki Pol, Thur-Hunder, Banswara and Bhilwara	Jaipur
	Mica	Bhilwara, Ajmer, Tonk, Jaipur, Sikar	Bhilwara
	Tungsten	Degana-Bhakri (Nagaur), Ajmer, Pali, Sirohi	Nagaur
	Rock phosphate	Deccan Kotra and Jhamar Kotra (Udaipur), Birmania (Jaisalmer), Sikar, Jaipur, Pali	Udaipur
	Gypsum	Jamsar and Lunkaransar (Bikaner), Goth-Manglod (Nagaur), Mohangarh and Nachna (Jaisalmer)	Nagaur
	Garnet	Rajmahal and Kalyan Mines (Tonk), Sarwar and Kharkhari (Ajmer), Mahwa and Bageshwar (Bhilwara)	Tonk
	Coal	Palana, Gurha, Barsingsar, Raneri-Hadla (Bikaner), Kapuradi, Jalipa and Girla (Barmer) and Merta (Nagaur)	Bikaner
	Petroleum products	Gudamalani (Barmer), Jaisalmer, Ganganagar	Barmer
	Natural gas	Shahgarh-Tanot, Manihari Tibba, Chimne Wala, Ghotaru and Ghamne Wala (Jaisalmer), Badhey Wala (Bikaner)	Jaisalmer

Table 10.6 : Copper reserves in Rajasthan

District	Region	Reserves (in Lakh metric tonnes)
Ajmer	Hanotia, Sewar	5.0
Alwar	Bhagoni	1.42
Bhilwara	Pur-Dariba, Banera, Devpura, Devtalai	7.0
Chittorgarh	Wari, Akola	1.0
Jhunjhunu	Kolihan, Basawa, Dolamala, Chicholi, Tunda, Ankawali	105.0
Rajsamand	Majera, Karauli, Gopakura	0.48
Sirohi	Golia, Pipela, Deri, Basantgarh	4.2
Udaipur	Ajani, Bedawal ki Pal, Chani, Nandwel, Akola	4.2



Map 10.6 : Metallic mineral in Rajasthan



Map 10.7 : Non-metallic mineral in Rajasthan

Important Points

1. Minerals are substances containing physical and chemical properties obtained from land through mining. Minerals useful for mankind are called mineral resources.
2. 96% of mineral deposits of the country are found mainly in Peninsular plateau, Arawali mountain ranges, Brahmputra valley, Himalayan region and Southern coastal areas.
3. Minerals in India have been divided on the basis of their chemical and physical properties into ferrous and non-ferrous minerals.
4. Iron is obtained from igneous rocks. India is the second largest country in the world after Russia from deposit point of view.

5. Copper is found in Dharwad and Arawali mountain ranges in the veins of metamorphic rocks as sulphite and charcopyrite ore Kohhan Mine, Mandhan mine Mosabane mine and Rakha mine are famous mines for copper.
6. Highest mica production in the world is done in India. Muscovite (ruby mica) and biotite (pink mica) is obtained from ingneous and metamorphic rocks.
7. 75% deposits and production of lead and zinc in the country is carried out in Rajsamand, Bhilwara and Udaipur districts of Rajasthan.
8. In India, coal is found in sedimentary rocks of Gondwana period. 98.5% of total coal deposits are found and 99% production is done here.
9. Petroleum products are found in sponge like form of sedimentary rocks. It is formed by immersion of vegetation and living organism in oceanic parts and chemical and thermal processes.
10. Reserves of petroleum products are found in 12 blocks in Bikaner, Barmer, Jaisalmer and Gangnagar districts.
11. Uranium 358, 235 and 233 plutonium-239 and theorium, brrylium, zircon minerals are used in atomic energy.

EXERCISE

Very Short Answer Type Questions-

1. In how many forms are Indian minerals categorized?
2. What are fuel minerals in India ?
3. What is the meaning of minerals ?
4. What type of iron-ores are found in India ?
5. In which districts of Rajasthan are fuel minerals found?
6. Which ores of mica are found in India ?
7. Which minerals are atomic minerals ?
8. What do you mean by fossil fuels ?

Short Answer Type Questions-

1. Describe the situation of minerals in India.
2. Describe the distribution of bauxite in India?
3. Describe the distribution of lead and zinc in India.
4. Describe the distribution of mica in India.
5. Describe the distribution of copper in India.
6. Describe about the distribution of lignite coal in Rajasthan.

Essay Type Questions-

1. Describe the distribution of iron ore in India
2. Illustrate the contribution of minerals in Indian economy.
3. Describe the distribution of petroleum in India.
4. Illustrate the distribution of coal in India.
5. Mark the following on the map of India.
   (a) Coal regions of India
   (b) Major minerals of Rajasthan

Lesson-11

Manufacturing Industries

Introduction-

Industry is the process of transforming chemical and physical properties and increasing the value of materials obtained from agriculture and mining in multiple forms usable for human beings, e.g making of cotton textile from cotton. Industry is the backbone of modern economy which provides large scale employment; on the other hand production develops trade and economic factors which provides speed to modern economy.

There have been evidences of cotton textile, earthen pots and bronze statues from the excavations in Indus valley Civilization and the rust resistant iron pillar near Qutubminar which show industrial development in ancient India. It was known as 'golden bird' in ancient times to due highly developed cottage and small scale industries of metal, textile, gold ornaments and ship building. But the Britishers destroyed these small and cottage industries through their oppressive policies.

The industrial development of any country, especially the development of manufacturing industries, is the basis to evaluate its economy. Today the developed countries of the world like U.S.A., Russia and other Eropean countries, Japan etc. are also important industrial countries. The manufacturing industries play important roll in the use of resources found any region and such resources are transformed and value added in these industries. The regions where there is lack of manufacturing industries are exporting in their row material at cheaper rates. Whereas the advanced countries in terms of industrialisation get good income through the value addition of such row materials.

Beginning of Modern Industries in India-

Modern Industries in India were started with establishment of cotton textile Industry in Fort Glostar (near Kolkata) in 1818 but the real beginning was with establishment of cotton textile industries at Mumbai in 1854. In the year 1855 Jute industry was established at Richra near Kolkata. Only these industries were developed with slow pace in India till first world war.

In India there are great possibilities of industrial development due to availability of sufficient natural minerals, agriculture product and human labour. After the independence of India, continuous efforts have been made to developed various industries in India. After independence, in the five years plans, India tries to convert its agro based economy into industrial based economy.

On the similar lines, after independence first industrial policy was introduced in 1948 in which emphasis was given on reducing regional imbalances with development of new employment generating, agriculture and export based industries. Focus was laid on manufacturing of high quality products with low cost by improving supply of capital, raw material and technology at government level. Planning Commission paved the path of industrial development in different Five Year Plans through development of iron and steel, cotton textile, cement, paper and sugar industry.

Iron and Steel Industry in India-

This industry is the pillar of industrial development not only in India but in the entire world. It is called the mother of other industries. First iron and steel industry in India was established at Porto-Nova in the year 1830. After its failure, first successful beginning was observed

Table 11.1 : Iron and Steel Unit in India

Sr. No.	Name of the Unit	Place	Region of availability of Iron Ore	Region of availability of Coal	Region of availability of Manganese	Region of availability of Water	Markets	Production capacity
1	TISCO	Jamshedpur	From Noamundi and Gurumahisani mine	From Jharia and Bokaro	Joda mines of Kyonjhar	Swarna Rekha and Kharkai river	Kolkata, Mumbai and neighbouring regions	40 lakh tonnes
2	IISCO	Kulti, Hirapur, Burnpur	From Singhbhum, Mayurbhanj, Kolhan and Kyonjhar mines	Raniganj, Jharia and Ramnagar	Orissa and Jharkhand	Damodar river and its tributaries	Kolkata and neighbouring regions	16 lakh tones per head
3	VISCO	Bhadrawati	Kemmanagindi mines	Local coal from wood	On local level	Bhadrawati river	Bangalore and neighbouring regions	2 lakh tonnes
4	Raurkela Iron Factory	Raurkela	From Sundergarh and Kyonjhar mines	From Jharia and Talcher mines	From Basapani and Bolani mines	From Brahmani river	Nearby Industrial Area	1 lakh tonnes
5	Bhilai Steel Factory	Bhilai	From Dalli Rajhara mines	From Korba and Kargali mines	From Bhandara and Balaghat mines	On local level	Nearby Industrial Area	35 lakh tonnes
6	Durgapur Steel Factory	Durgapur	From Noamundi and Gua mines	From Jharia and Raniganj	From Jamda mines of Kyonjhar	From Damodar and Bokaro river	Kolkata, Mumbai and neighbouring regions	15 lakh tonnes
7	Bokaro Steel Factory	Bokaro	From Kiribuni mines of Kyonjhar	From Jharia	From Kyonjhar mines	From Damodar and Bokaro river	Kolkata, Mumbai and neighbouring regions	25 lakh tonnes
8	Visakhapatnam Steel Factory	Visakhapatnam	From Beladila mines	Damodar Valley	Orissa and Chhattisgarh	From Coastal river	Nearby Industrial Area	3 lakh tonnes

in 20th century when in the year 1907 a plant, Tata Iron and Steel Company (TISCO), was established at Sankchi (Jamshedpur) by Jamshedji Tata. Later, Iron and Steel industries were established in the year 1919 in Barnpur (IISCO) and Mysor and in the year 1923 in Bhadrawati (Karnataka). Both Kulti and Hirapur plants were merged into Indian Iron and Steel Company later on. In this way the beginning of Iron and Steel industry took place in India in 20th century.

After independence this industry was developed under various Five Year Plans. In second five year plan industries were established in Durgapur (West Bengal) with British aid, in Raurkela (Orissa) with German aid, in Bhilai (Chhattisgarh) with Russian aid. In the beginning, their capacity was 10 lakh tons which was later increased to 16 lakh tons. In third Five Year Plan a plant at Bokaro (Jharkhand) was established which is the largest plant in Asia. In 1973 Steel Authority of India (SAIL) was established for quality improvement and rapid development of this industry. It performs the administrative work of all the industries under public sector. Three more industrial units placed at Vishakhapatnam (Andhra Pradesh), Salem (Tamil Nadu) and Vijaynagar (Karnataka) were included under its administrative supervision.

This industry is based on raw material and cheap transportation. That is why it is established near the mines for obtaining raw material like coal, iron ore manganese and cheap transportation.

In 2015 India became the third largest country in wrought iron production in the world. India is the largest producer of direct reduced Iron (DRI) or sponge iron. India is also the third largest consumer of produced steel in the world after

China and America. Steel sector contributes about 2% of India's of Gross Domestic Production and about 6 lakh people are employed in this sector

Map 11.1 : Iron & Steel Industries in India

Cotton Textile Industry-

It is an ancient industry of India. There is a mention of cotton textile in the Indus valley civilization. This industry creates highest employment opportunities. That is why it is first from expansion point of view, production and employment. India is the second largest country after China in production of cotton textile.

First modern textile industry in India was established in Fort Glaster of Kolkata in 1818 but this effort failed. First Indian textile mill was established in Mumbai by Kawasji Dabur in 1854. It started production in 1856. By 1861 twelve mills had been established. By 1947 there were 417 mills in India in which 3 lakh workers were employed. At present the number of these mills is more than 1200 in which about 40 lakh people have got direct employment. This industry contributes 40% in gross domestic production. The centralization of this industry is in cotton producing regions, places of cheap transportation, labour and moist climate. So it developed in following states.

1. Maharashtra:-

Maharashtra is at the first place in cotton textile production. There are 112 mills in this state and only Mumbai has 54 mills. It is known as the Capital of Cotton Textile. Apart from this, there are mills in Sholapur, Akola, Amrawati, Wardha, Satara, Kolhapur, Sangli, Jalgaon and Nagpur. In these mills, poplin, muslin, saris, dhotis, bedsheets, suiting and shirting cloth are prepared. This industry has developed due to presence of black soil and moist climate and Mumbai port. 39% of cotton textile is produced here.

2. Gujrat:-

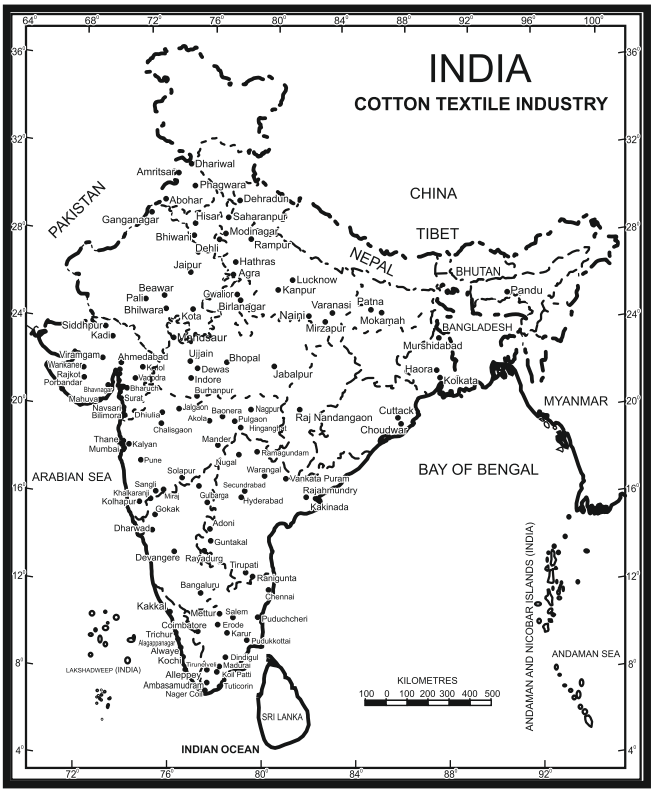
It is the second largest state in the production of cotton textile. There are 135 mills in this state in which 67 are in Ahmedabad. It is known as Boston of East. There are also mills in Surat, Badodara, Bahavnagar, Porbandar, Rajkot and Bharuch. This industry has developed much due to the availability of cotton growing regions, cheap labour, capital and Kandla port. 35% of cotton textile is produced here.

3. Tamil Nadu-

Tamil Nadu is the largest textile producing state in Southern India. There are 205 mills in this state and most of them are in Coimbatore where there are also thread mills along with cotton textile mills. There are also mills in Chennai, Perambur, Tiruchiappali and Ramanathpuram. This industry developed here due to moist climate from sea and Chennai port. 6% of cotton textile of the country is produced here.

4. Madhya Pradesh-

There are 36 mills in this state and most of them are established in Indore, Gwalior, Ujjain, Dewas, Jabalpur and Ratlam. There has been much development of this industry as it is well connected with transportation routes and availability of cheap labour due to more population. 5% of cotton textile is produced here.



Map 11.2 : Cotton Textile Industries in India

5. West Bengal-

There are 24 mills in this state and most of them are centralized in the Hooghly river regions in Kolkata, Hooghly, Howrah and 24 Parganas. Due to cotton supply from other states, there has been much development of this industry and also due to Kolkata port, well connected with transport routes and availability of cheap labour and high population.

6. Rajasthan-

Cotton textile industry in Rajasthan is in its initial stage. Due to cheap electricity from Chambal and Bhakhra Nangal project and cotton production in Hadoti plateau and irrigated plains of Ghaggar, cotton mills have been established in Bhilwara, Udaipur, Kota, Ganganagar and Pali. Cold storage is used to retain moisture. 4% of total cotton production is done here. Only suiting and shirting cloth is prepared in Rajasthan.

7. Other States-

Textile mills in Kanpur, Murdabad, Hathras, and Varanasi produce cotton textile from imported cotton. There are cotton mills at Amritsar, Ludhiyana and Phagwara in Punjab, in Bellary, in Mysore and Banglore in Karnataka due to availability of cotton from Telangana region. There are also cotton textile mills in Hyderabad, Varangal, Guntur in Andhra Pradesh, Kerala and Bihar.

Cotton textile industry in India has made 12 fold progress after independence. 351 crore sq. metre cloth was prepared in 1947. It is now 6500 crore sq. metre. Due to increased local demand, most of the production is consumed in the country. Remaining part is exported to European, African and Gulf countries. Apart from this Indian textile Industry suffers from the problems of inferior quality of raw material, old machines and competition from the products and production made from artificial fiber.

Cement Industry-

It is a basic industry. Cement was invented by Jospeh at Portland in England in 1824. That is why the cement used nowadays is called Portland cement. First cement plant in modern form was established at Chennai in Tamil Nadu in 1904 in which cement was made from sea-shells but the experiment proved a failure. First Indian cement plant was established at Porbandar in Gujarat in 1912-13 by Indian Cement Company. In the year 1915 cement factories were established at Katni (M.P.) and in 1916 at Lakheri in Rajasthan by Killick Nixon Company. It is second industry in this country from production and employment point of view. India is at second place in the world in production after China. The centralization of this industry has been due to availability of raw material and cheap transportation, because one ton cement needs 1.6 ton of limestone, 0.38 ton gypsum and 3.8 tons coal and these are heavy materials. It has developed in following states.

1. Rajasthan-

Rajasthan is an important state in case of cement production in India. First cement industry in Rajasthan was established at Lakheri in 1916. It

has centralised in single belt of Nimbhaera, Chittorgarh, Kota, Bundi and Swaimadhopur. There are also cement factories in Udaipur, Nagaur, Pali and Sirohi. 16 large, 5 medium and 130 small factories are operating in the state. Six large scale units of cement are in Chittorgarh district. That is why it is known as cement city of the state. 70% Portland cement and 16% of total cement is produced in Rajasthan. 90% portland cement and 10% white cement is produced in Rajasthan. White cement plants in the state are at Goton (Nagaur) and at Khariya Khangar (Jodhupr). There are factories of J.K. cement, Mangalam cement, Binani cement and J.K. Laxmi cement in Rajasthan.

2. Madhya Pradesh and Chhatisgarh-

Both the states are leading producers of cement. Both the states contribute 22% of total production in the country. Raw material is obtained from Kaimur hills. There are 17 large factories in Katni, Satna Durg, Mandhar, Banmore, Neemuch, Ratlam, Dewas, Nagda, Akaltra, Jamul Tilda and Mehar.

3. Gujarat:-

There are 16 large cement units in this state. 9.4% cement production of the country is done here. There are cement plants in Ahemdabad, Bhavnagar, Porbandar, Rajkot, Okha, Verawal, Jamnagar and Dwarka. Deveolpment of cement Industry in this region is due to availability of sea-shells, cheap labour, capital and Kandla port.

4. Tamil Nadu-

This state also leads in cement production respectively. Raw material is available from plateau parts of Tamil Nadu. There are large cement factories in Tirunelveli, Dalmiapuram, Thalaiyuthu, Shankardurg, Rajmalayam, Mondakrachi and Atiyalar.

5. Other States-

Uttar Pradesh and Jharkhand are also important in terms of production of cement and produce 4.8% and 4.4% of total cement production of the country respectively. There are cement factories in Churk, Chopan, Chunar, Dala in Uttar Pradesh and in Pantal, Sindri in Jharkhand. There are cement factories in Karnataka at Bhadrawati, Bagalkot, Banglore, Gulbarga and Bijapur due to availability of raw material from Westren Ghats and Karnataka plateau. Cement factories in Andhra Pradesh and Telangana developed due to the availability of raw material from Royal seema regions. So cement factories have been established in Hyderabad, Varangal, Adilabad, Vijaywada, Krishna and Nalkonda and also in Kerala and Bihar states.

There were only 23 cement plants in India at the time of Independence and out of which 5 went to Pakistan whose production capacity was 21.15 lakh tons. At present there are 124 large and 300 small scale units in the country from where 2250 ton cement is being produced. Most of the cement is consumed in the country due to high local demand in the country. Remaining cement is exported to East Asian and African countries.

Map 11.3 : Cement Industries in India

Paper Industry-

It is an ancient cottage industry of India. In

this industry pulp is made from waste of agriculture and trees and paper is made from it. 70% paper in India is made from sugarcane remains. Paper industry was established in Shrirampur (West Bengal). After this paper mills were established in Hooghly and Madras between 1810 and 1867 but this effort remained unsuccessful. The first paper mill in India was established in Lucknow in 1879 by the name of Indian Paper Mill. Titagarh paper mill was established in 1881. there were 17 paper mills in India at the time of Independence whose production capacity was 19000 tons. At present there are 800 small and large paper mills which produce 128 lakh ton of paper. 65% of this production is used as paper for newspapers and the rest is used for other purposes. The centralization of this industry is influenced by the availability of raw material and cheap transportation. The paper mills in different states are as follows:-

Map 11.4 : Paper Industries in India

1. Titagarh, Raniganj, Triveni and Kolkatta in West Bengal.
2. Mumbai, Puna, Chandrapur, Khapoli, Pimpri, and Kampti in Maharashtra.
3. Lucknow, Meerut, Saharanpur, Mujafarnagar, Pantragar and Basti in Uttar Pradesh.
4. Bhopal, Rewa, Hosangabad and Kamalai in Madhya Pradesh
5. Bhadrawati, Banglore, Ramnagar and Krishanrajsagar in Karnataka
6. Surat, Vapi, Badodara and Rajkot in Gujarat.

There is a paper mill to supply paper for news paper industry at Nepanagar in Madhya Pradesh and a government sector unit at Hosangabad to supply paper for printing currency. Due to high local demand, most of the paper is consumed in the country and it has also to be imported from other countries.

Industrialization in Rajasthan-

Rajasthan is a backward state in industries as compared to other states. It contributes merely 6% of total industrial production of the country and contributes 30% in gross domestic production of the state. Most of the industries in the state are based on minerals and agriculture which are centralized in Alwar, Dausa, Jodhpur, Bhilwara, Rajsamand, Kota, Baran, Ajmer and Pali district, Rajasthan is at leading position in gem ornaments, marble, cement, lead, zinc, salt, handicraft and oil seed industry.

Major Industries of Rajasthan:-

1. Lead-Zinc industry

There are large deposits of lead and zinc in Arawali mountain ranges in the state so the industrial units of lead and zinc have been established in Jawar, Debari (Udaipur), Chanderia (Chittor), Rajpura Dariba and Rampura Dariba. These industries have been established near mines. Rest of raw material is brought from Banera, Chouth ka Barwara and Gudha Kishoridas. 95% of total production of the country is from Rajasthan.

2. Cement Industry-

Rajasthan stands leading in cement production. Cement industry in Rajasthan was

started in 1916 in Lakheri. This Industry has centralized in single belt in Nimbahera, Chittorgarh, Kota, Bundi and Swaimadhopur. Apart from this there are also units of cement plants at Alwar, Nagaur, Pali and Sirohi. There are 18 large, 5 medium and 130 small units in the state. There are six large scale cement factories in Chittorgarh so it is called the 'Cement City' of the state. 16% of total cement production of the country is taken from Rajasthan. 90% portland cement and 10% white cement is produced in the state.

3. Handicraft Industry-

Gem crafting and ornament making is done in Jaipur, Pratapgarh, Nathdwara and statue artistic goods are made in Jaipur, Jodhpur and Udaipur, lac items and bangle making work is done in Jaipur and Jodhpur, dyeing and printing and bandhej work is done in Pali, Barmer and Sanganer and leather items are made in Jodhpur, Jaipur, Ajmer and Barmer.

4. Marble Industry-

High quality marble is available in Rajasthan so units of marble cutting, polishing and grinding have been established in Makrana, Sirohi, Rajnagar, Chittor, Udaipur and Kishangarh.

5. Salt and Chemical Industry-

Salt making in Rajasthan is being done from salt water since ancient times. Largest salt water lake of the country Sambhar lake produces largest amount of salt. Apart from this there is sodium sulphate industry in Didwana and magnesium sulphate industry in Pachpadra.

6. Wool Industry-

In India, highest number of sheep and wool giving animals are reared in Rajasthan. Due to availability of raw material at local level, woollen rugs and carpets are made in Bikaner, Jodhpur, Barmer and Pali.

7. Cotton Textile Industry-

Textile industry in Rajasthan is in its initial stage in Rajasthan. Due to availability of cheap electricity from Chambal and Bakhara Nangal project and cotton cultivation in irrigated plains of Ghaggar, textile mills have been established in Bhilwara, Udaipur, Kota, Ganganagar and Pali. Machines are used to retain artificial miosture. 4% production of cotton textile is done here. Mainly suiting and shirting cloth is produced here.

8. Oilseed Industry-

Rajasthan is at the first place in the country in oilseed production. Oil mills of groundnut, mustard, soyabeen, alsi and castor oil extraction units are established in Alwar, Jaipur, Dausa, Kota and Bundi.

9. Other Industries-

Sugar mills are established in Bundi, Chittor and Bhilwara, Gawargum mill at Churu, Jodhpur and Barmer, Paper industry is present in Ghosunda, Kota, Bhilwara, Udaipur, and Banswara.

Industrial Pollution:-

Manufacturing industries help in development of economic system, on the other hand, they give rise to such conduction which helps in destruction of human civilization and nature. The regions which experienced industrialization in the country also experienced urbanization rapidly such as Delhi, Mumbai, Kollkata, Ahmedabad, Nagpur and Surat. The level of water, air pollution in these cities is extremely high. According to Central Ground Water Board Ganga and its tributary Yamuna have been extremely polluted due to industrial waste of leather, paper, manure, chemical and drug industries. In the same way the Gomati river near Lucknow has become extremely poisonous due to the waste of paper and sugar industries. Dead fishes are often seen there. On the basis of a study, 30% of Urban population in the country is suffering from diseases related to breathing. There are poisonous and harmful elements in the air like carbon, lead, sulpher, which react with nitrogen and oxygen and leaves harmful effect on soil, water and human body.

Industrial waste reaches the oceanic parts

of the country through air and water and influences the local biological system which affects the food chain and destroys sea animals and vegetation. Disposal of waste from oceanic ships, accidents of oil tankers in the sea, leakage of oil from the sea, refining near sea shores and nuclear bomb experiments etc. are polluting oceanic water.

One out of eight birds in India is on the verge of extinction. Due to industrialization and increasing means of transportation, wildlife has been deprived of their natural habitat. In the same way due to acid rain, air pollution, dirty water, poisonous elements in the soil have destroyed its fertility. Water resources of perennial rivers like Gangotri and Yamunotri are going to dry due to rising temperature. If this industrialization continues, the day is not far when mankind will be suffering from various diseases and would face calamities such as famines, droughts and floods and nothing would remain for consumption for future generations. So it is necessary for us to adopt the path of sensible and moderate utilization of industrial development.

Fig. 11.1 : Impacts of Industrialisation on environment

Important Points

1. Industry is a process of value addition by transforming chemical and physical properties of substances obtained from agriculture and mining activities in multiple forms usable for human beings.
2. Iron and steel industry is the basic pillar and mother of other industries in India.
3. Iron and steel plants were established in Durgapur (West Bengal) with British aid in Raurkela (Orissa) with German aid and at Bhilai (Chattisgarh) with Russian aid during Five Year Plans.
4. Iron and steel plant established at Bokaro is the largest plant in Asia.
5. First modern cotton textile mill was established in Fort Gloster 1818 in Kolkata but the effort remained unsuccessful. First cotton textile mill was established in 1854 in Mumbai by Kawasji, Dabar.
6. Maharashtra stands first in cotton textile production. Out of 112 mills in the state 54

are in Mumbai which is known as the capital city of textile.

7. Cement was invented in 1824 at Portland in England by Joseph. That is why the cement used today is called Portland cement.
8. Machines are used to retain artificial moisture in cotton textile manufacturing in Rajasthan.
9. In India, there is a paper mill at Nepanagar in Madhya Pradesh which makes paper for printing newspapers and there is a government press for printing currency in Honshangabad.
10. White cement factory in the state is situated in Goton (Nagore).
11. Rajasthan stands leading in gems and ornaments, marble, cement, lead-zinc, salt, handicraft, and oil seed industry in the country.

EXERCISE

Very Short Answer Type Questions-

1. Which is the ancient evidence of iron and steel industry in India?
2. When and where was the first cotton textile mill established in India?
3. What do you mean by manufacturing industries?
4. Where was the first iron and steel industry established in India?
5. In which districts of Rajasthan are cotton textile mills established?
6. Where is the note-Printing press in India?
7. In which states of India are lead and zinc plants established?
8. Which city is known as the 'Boston of the East'?
9. Where are magnesium and sodium sulphate industries situated in India?

Short Answer Type Questions-

1. Describe the development of cotton textile industry in India.
2. Describe the development of iron and steel industry in India.
3. Describe the development of cement industry in India.
4. Describe the distribution of paper industry in India.
5. Describe the development of cement industry in Rajasthan.
6. Describe the industrial development in Rajasthan.

Essay Type Questions-

1. Describe the production and distribution of iron and steel industry in India.
2. Describe the distribution of cotton textile industry in India.
3. Describe the condition of industrial pollution in India.
4. Describe the major industries of Rajasthan.

Lesson-12

Human Resources

Human Resources-

Can you imagine a world without human beings? A human being utilizes human resources available in nature and builds social and cultural environment. There is great contribution of human beings in the development of society and economy. Human beings not only build and utilize resources; they themselves are resources of different merits. Coal was merely a piece of rock until human beings invented technique of obtaining and making it a resource.

Looking at the population from production point of view it emphasizes on the capability of contributing in generating national gross production. Population is a resource like any other resource. Resource is a huge positive point of population.

Population-

Population means the total number of persons living at a particular place at a particular time; social study has population as a base element. It is a reference point which observes other points and finds out their meaning and importance. Human population in any region, its growth, distribution and characteristics provide a background to understand and discuss all the forms of environment. Man uses resources on the earth so it is important to know how many people live in which country? How and where do they live? Why are they increasing in number and what are their qualities and characteristics?

Indian census provides us information regarding the population of the country. We mainly study these points in the definition of population-

1. **Size, distribution and density of population-** Total number of persons means ratio of men, women and children, population distribution, population density to evaluate population pressure on resources in particular regions etc.
2. **Population growth and population change-** reason of change in population in a particular place at a particular time period.
3. **Characteristics of population-** Age and sex ratio of people- means ratio numbers of male and female, their literacy and level of education, commercial structure and health status etc.

Size and Distribution of Population-

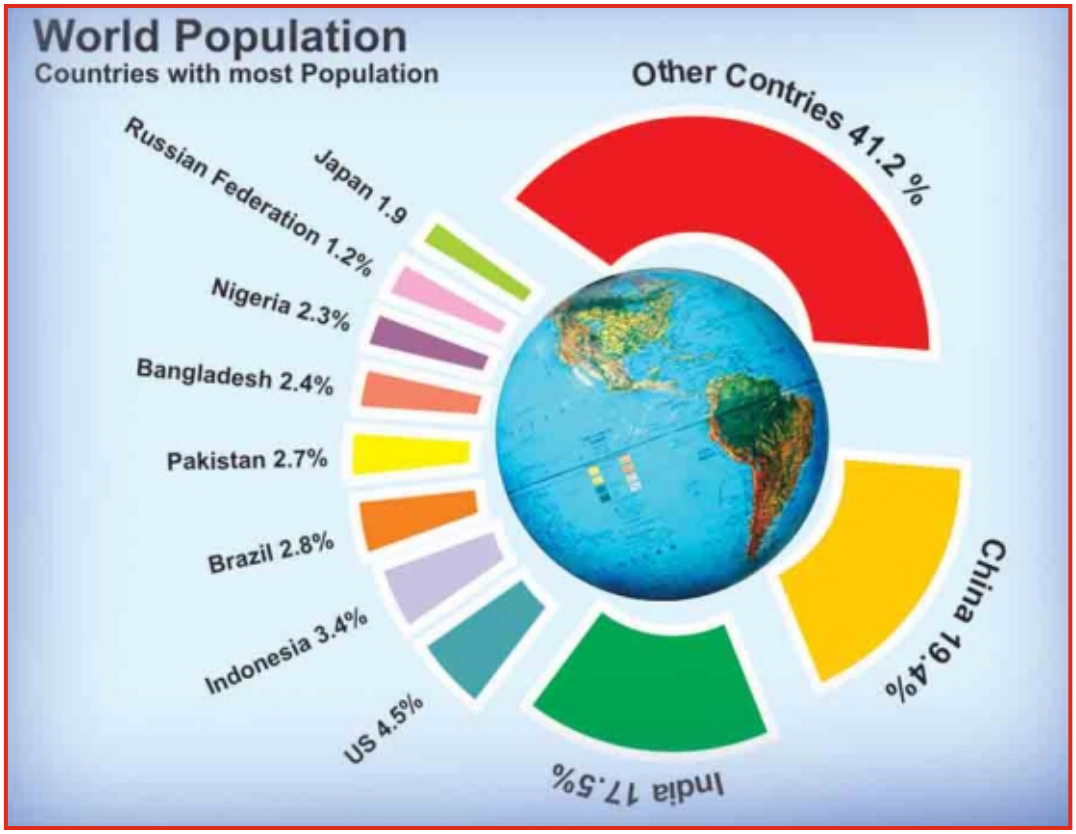
Table 12.1 : Countries of the world with highest population

Sr. No.	Country	Date of basis	Population (in Crore)	Decadal increase (in %)
1.	China	01.11.2010	1,34.10	5.43
2.	India	01.03.2011	1,21.02	17.64
3.	USA	01.04.2010	30.87	7.26
4.	Indonesia	31.05.2010	23.76	15.05
5.	Brazil	01.08.2010	19.07	9.39
6.	Pakistan	01.07.2010	18.48	24.78
7.	Bangladesh	01.07.2010	16.44	16.76
8.	Nigeria	01.07.2010	15.83	26.84
9.	Russian Republic	01.07.2010	14.04	–4.29
10.	Japan	01.10.2010	12.81	1.10
11.	Other countries	01.07.2010	284.47	15.43
12.	World	01.07.2010	690.87	12.97

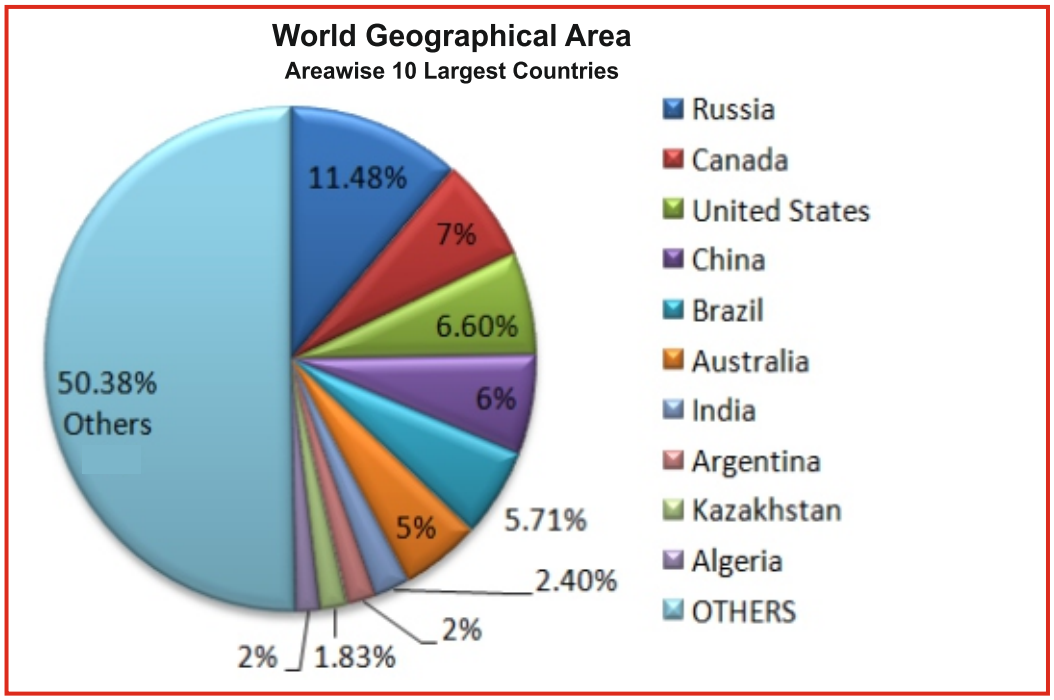
Sources – www.censusindia.gov.in

The population of India is large in size. It is

second in the world after China, U.S.A is third, Indonesia is fourth and Brazil is at fifth position. According to 2011 census the population of India was 1,21,01,93,432 which was 17.3% of world population. This population lives in 32.6 lakh sq km. of India (2.4% of world)

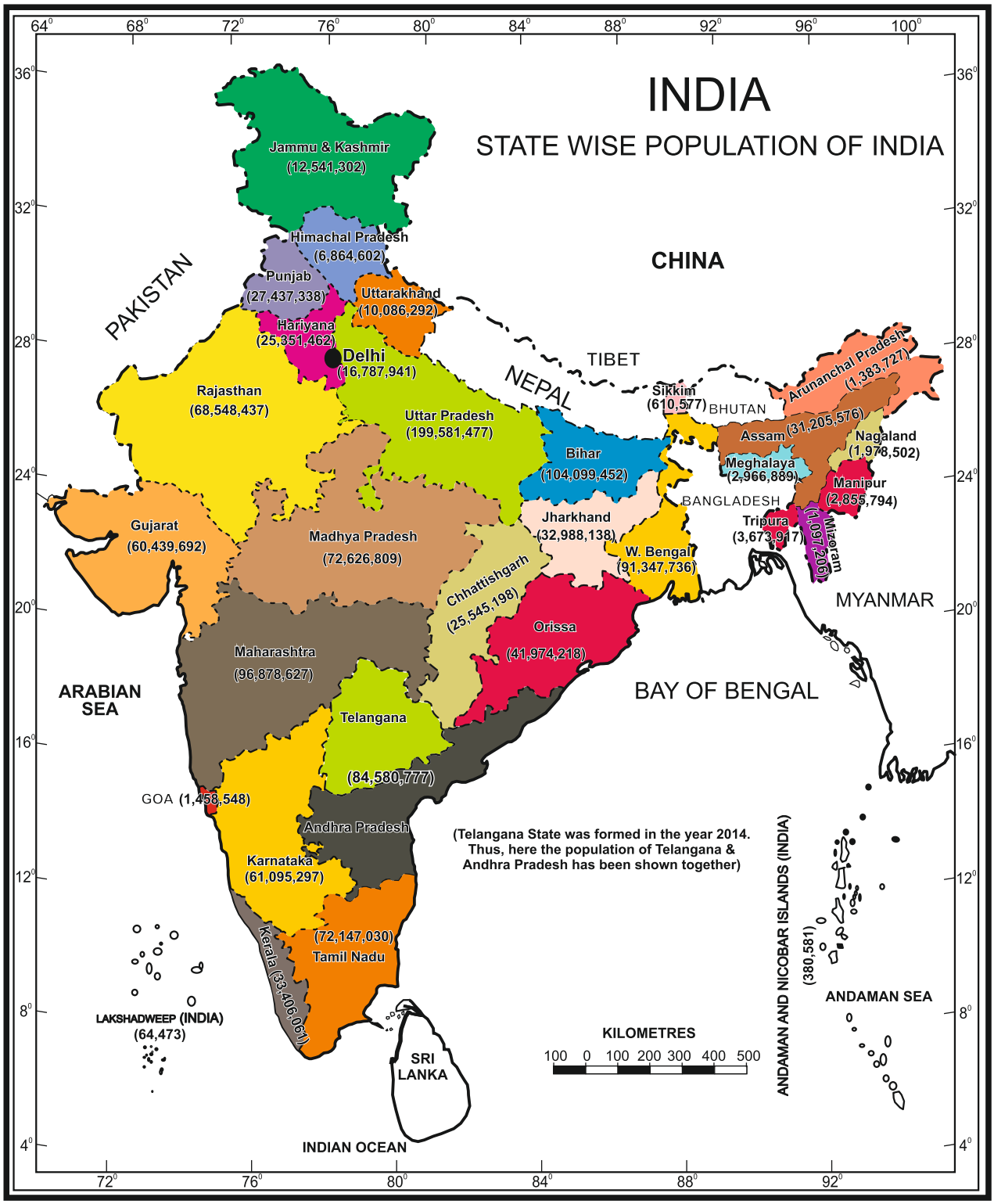


Diag. 12.1 : India's share in world population



Diag. 12.2 : India's share in area of the world

According to 2011 census Uttar Pradesh is the largest populated state in the country. Its total Population is 19,95,81,477 16.49% of total population of India resides in Uttar Pradesh where as the population of Sikkim a Himalayan state is only 6,07,688 which is 0.5% of total population of the country. Only 64, 629 people live in Lakshadweep.



Map 12.1 : State wise population of India

50% population of India resides only in five states. Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, West Bengal, and Andhra Pradesh. Rajasthan is the largest in area in the country and in at eighth position in population.

Table 12.2 : Total population of districts of Rajasthan and their rank in State according to Census - 2001 and 2011

Rank in State 2011	District	Population 2011	Population 2001	Rank in State 2001
1	Jaipur	6663971	5251071	1
2	Jodhpur	3685681	2886505	3
3	Alwar	3671999	2991552	2
4	Nagaur	3309234	2775058	4
5	Udaipur	3067549	2481201	5
6	Sikar	2677737	2287788	6
7	Barmer	2604453	1964835	10
8	Ajmer	2584913	2178447	7
9	Bharatpur	2549121	2100020	8
10	Bhilwara	2410459	2020969	9
11	Bikaner	2367745	1902110	12
12	Jhunjhunu	2139658	1913689	11
13	Churu	2041172	1696039	15
14	Pali	2038533	1820251	13
15	Ganganagar	1969520	1789423	14
16	Kota	1950491	1568705	16
17	Jalore	1830151	1448940	18
18	Banswara	1798194	1420601	19
19	Hanumangarh	1779650	1518005	17
20	Dausa	1637226	1323002	21
21	Chittorgarh	1544392	1330360	20
22	Karauli	1458459	1205888	23
23	Tonk	1421711	1211671	22
24	Jhalawar	1411327	1180323	24
25	Dungarpur	1388906	1107643	26
26	S.Madhopur	1338114	1117057	25
27	Baran	1223921	1021473	27
28	Dholpur	1207293	983258	28
29	Rajsamand	1158283	982523	29
30	Bundi	1113725	962620	30
31	Sirohi	1037185	851107	31
32	Pratapgarh	868231	706807	32
33	Jaisalmer	672008	508247	33

According to 2011 census the population of Rajasthan is 6,86,21,012 which is 5.67% of total population of India. It is scattered in 3.48 lakh sq km. area. Jaipur is the highest populated district with 66,63,971 population and Jaisalmer is the lowest populated district with 6,72,008 population.

Population Growth-

Population growth means the change in number of residents of a country, state or place in a particular time period (example : in ten years). Such change can be described in two forms, first total growth and second change in percentage every year or every ten years.

Increase or decrease in population of a particular place is directly influenced by birth rate, death rate and migration.

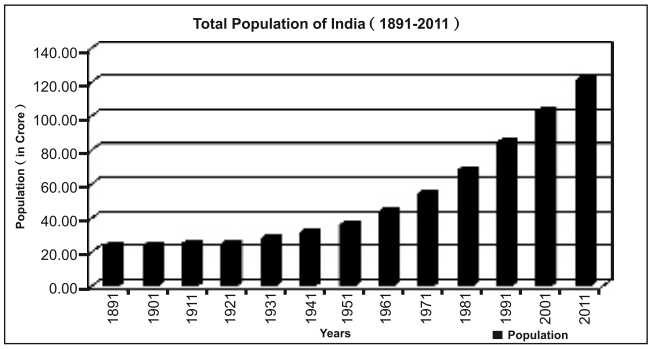
Change in population in a year or a decade is the result of positive or negative growth in total population. It can be calculated by deducting the population of earlier years (For Exa: 2001). From the later year (For exa: 2011). It is known as absolute growth. Population growth rate is the increase in number of people on every 100 people is the original population of a particular year. If there is an increase of 4 persons per 100 people in annual original population of a country or place, the population growth rate every year will be 4%.

The population of India which was 361

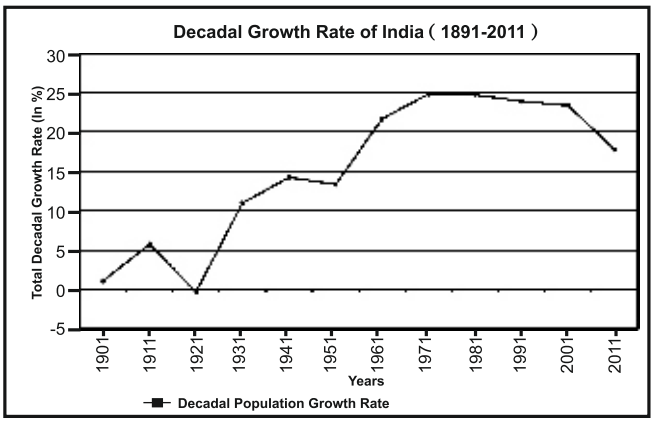
Table 12.3 : Population, Absolute growth and decadal growth rate in India

Year	Total Population (in ten lakh)	Absolute population increase in a decade (in ten lakh)	Decadal increase rate (percent)
1951	361.0	42.43	13.31
1961	439.2	78.15	21.64
1971	548.2	108.92	24.80
1981	683.3	135.17	24.66
1991	846.4	163.09	23.86
2001	1028.7	182.32	21.34
2011	1,21,0.6	131.45	17.70

million in 1951 has increased to 1210.6 million in 2011.



Diag. 12.3 : Population growth in India

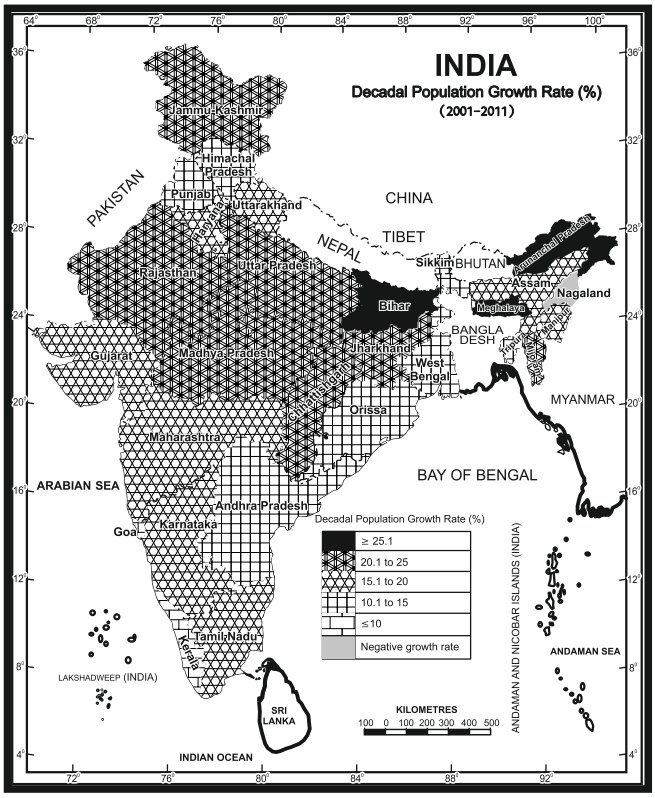


Diag. 12.4 : Population growth rate in India

The table and the chart show that the growth rate of population was increasing continuously from 1951 to 1981 which increased from 3,610 million in 1951 to 6,830 million in 1981. It shows rapid growth in population. But growth rate declined gradually in 1981. There was a decline in birth rate too during this period.

Population in Rajasthan is growing rapidly. The growth rate of population in a decade was 32.97% in 1981. Although later census has shown decline in population growth rate. The decadal growth in population declined to 28.41% in 2001 and 21.44% in 2011. Even then the decadal growth rate of 17.64 in 2011 in India was high. During the decade of 2001-2011 in Rajasthan the highest growth rate was 32.55% in Barmer and lowest 10.06% in Ganganagar district.

It is important to note that the population of



Map 12.2 : Decadal growth rate of population in India

India is huge. The present annual growth rate of India is 122 lakh persons per year which creates enormous pressure on resources and environment and is enough to destabilize the conservation of environment and resources.

Decline in growth rate indicates the successful efforts in controlling the birth rate. In India, since independence, such efforts are under taken to control population. Even after all these efforts, population is increasing continuously. This is an indication of the failure of our efforts in this direction. By 2045 India might exceed China in population and can become the country with highest population in the world.

Reasons of Population Growth-

There are three major factors for increase and change in population- birth rate, death rate and migration. Difference between birth rate and death rate is called the natural increase in population.

Birth rate refers to number of surviving children per thousand persons in a year. This

increase is important factor of population growth. After India's independence birth rate has always been higher than death rate.

Death rate refers to number of deaths per thousand persons in a year. Sharp decline in death rate after independence it is the major reason of population increase in India.

Till 1980 there was very significant difference between birth rate and death rate due to high birth rate and continuous decline in death rate and that is why rate of population increase was higher. Birth rate began to decline gradually from 1981 and due to which rate of population increase also declined.

Third major factor of population increase is migration. Movement of people from one place to another and change in their permanent residence is called migration. Migration can be internal (within a country) or international (to other countries). Internal migration brings no change in the size of population but it effects the distribution of population within a country. Migration plays a very important role in changing the factors and distribution of population.

Inter state migration in India is mostly from rural to urban areas because women migrate after their marriage. Secondly people migrate from rural to urban areas because weakening factors are inflectional in rural areas. Poverty and unemployment are negative factors in rural areas and employment opportunities and ambitions of good life style are the attractive factors in urban areas

Density of Population-

Density of population presents unequal distribution of population and pressure on land. Density of population refers to the number of people living in per unit surface area.

In 2011 the density of population in India was 382 people per sq km. Bihar had the highest density of population of 1102 persons per sq. km. and Arunachal Pradesh had lowest density of population of 17 persons per sq km.

The density of population in Assam and peninsular states is medium, Hilly, rocky areas, medium to low rainfall, less fertile soil affect the density of population in these states.

Northern plains and Kerala in South have high density of population due to plains fertile soil and sufficient rainfall.

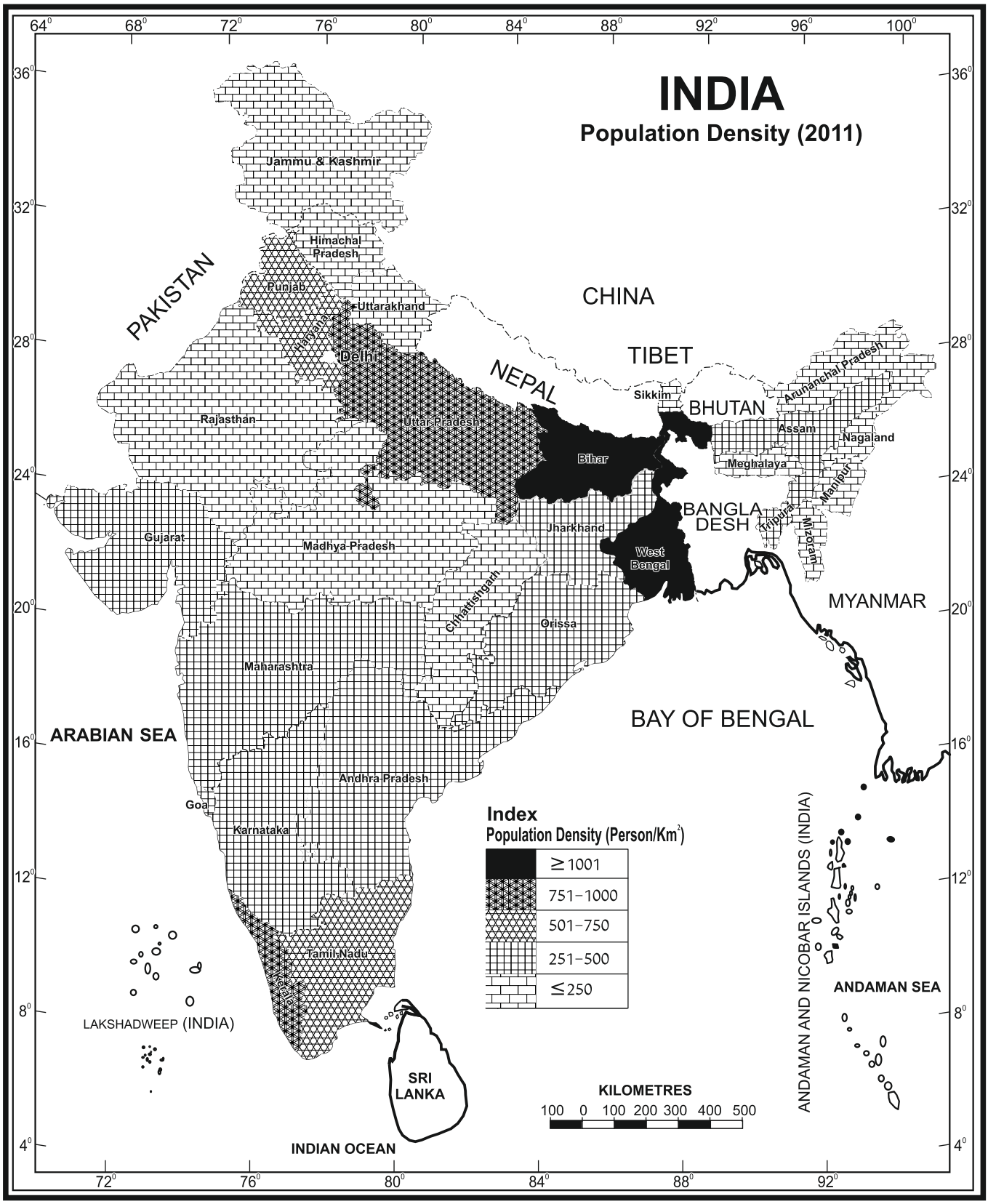
Table 12.4 : Density of Population in India (1901-2011)

Census Year	Population density (Persons/km^2)	Growth in a decade
1901	77	–
1911	82	5
1921	81	–1
1931	90	9
1941	103	13
1951	117	14
1961	142	25
1971	177	35
1981	216	39
1991	267	51
2001	325	58
2011	382	57

The Density of Population in Rajasthan is 201 persons per sq. km as per 2011 census. In 2001 it was 165 persons per sq. km. That shows the increase of 36 persons per sq. km. Table 12.5 depicts the unequal distribution of population at state level.

There is significant inequality in density of population in districts of Rajasthan. According to 2011 census the highest density of population is 598 persons per km. in Jaipur district and the lowest density of population is 17 persons per sq. km. in Jaisalmer.

Even after continuous increas in the density

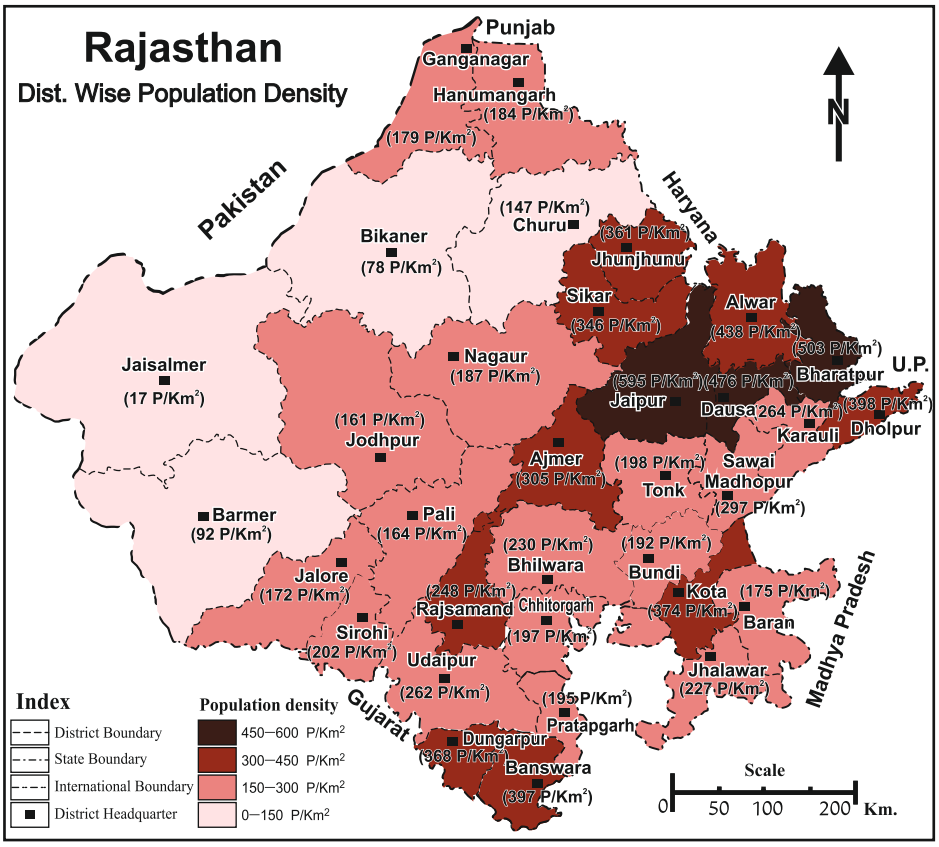


Map 12.3 : Population density in India

of population in Rajasthan, the density of population is lower than in India.

Table 12.5 : Density of population in the districts of Rajasthan and their rank in the State (2001 and 2011)

Rank in the State 2011	State / District	Density (Persons / km^2)		Rank in the State 2001
		2011	2001	
–	Rajasthan	201	165	–
1	Jaipur	598	471	1
2	Bharatpur	503	415	2
3	Dausa	476	384	3
4	Alwar	438	357	4
5	Banswara	399	315	7
6	Dholpur	398	324	5
7	Kota	374	301	8
8	Dungarpur	368	294	10
9	Jhunjhunu	361	323	6
10	Sikar	346	296	9
11	Ajmer	305	257	11
12	Rajsamand	302	256	12
13	Sawai Madhopur	297	248	13
14	Karauli	264	219	14
15	Udaipur	242	196	15
16	Bhilwara	230	193	16
17	Jhalawar	227	190	17
18	Pratapgarh	211	172	18
19	Sirohi	202	166	22
20	Tonk	198	168	19
21	Chhittorgarh	193	166	21
22	Bundi	193	167	20
23	Nagaur	187	157	25
24	Hanumangarh	184	157	24
25	Ganganagar	179	163	23
26	Baran	175	146	27
27	Jalore	172	136	28
28	Pali	165	147	26
29	Jodhpur	161	126	29
30	Churu	148	123	30
31	Barmer	92	69	31
32	Bikaner	78	63	32
33	Jaisalmer	17	13	33



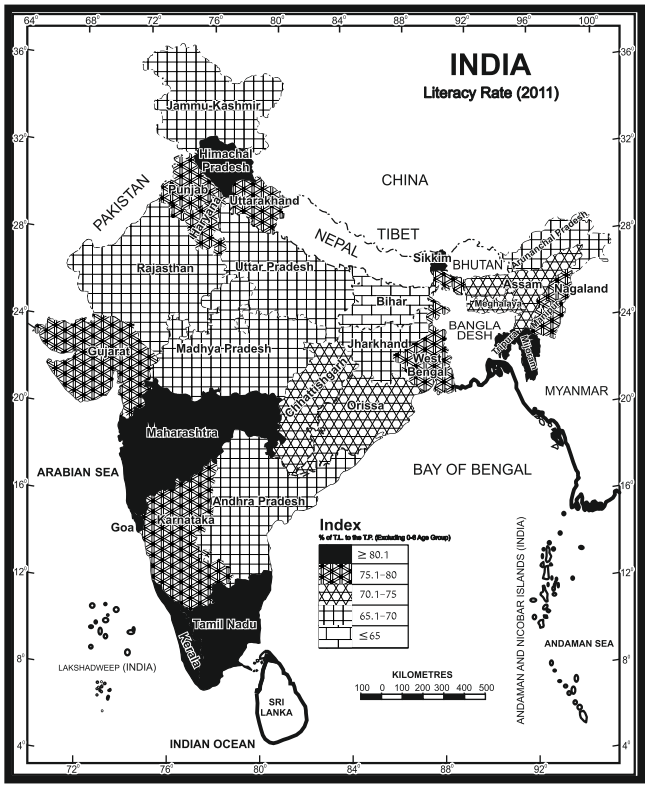
Map 12.4 : Population density in Rajasthan

Characteristics of Indian Population

Literacy rate-

Literacy is the most important quality of population. Only an educated and aware citizen can take right decisions and can be more helpful in development process. Low literacy rate is a serious obstacle in economic development.

According to census 2011 a child, who is seven years of age and who can read and write in any language with basic understanding can be considered as literate. Literacy in India is improving gradually. According to 2011 census literacy rate in the country is 73% in which literacy rate in males is 80.9% and 64.6% in females. According to 2011 census the highest literate state is Kerala where literacy rate is 94% and the lowest literate state is Bihar where literacy rate in 61.8%.



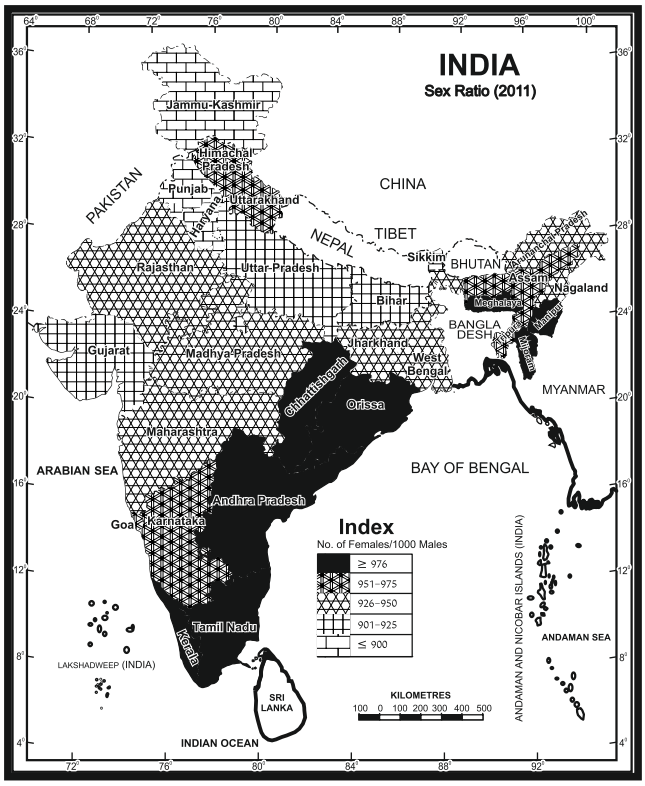
Map 12.5 : Literacy rate in India

According to 2011 census 3,89,70,500 persons in Rajasthan are literate. The literacy rate of the state is 67.07% in which the literacy rate in males is 80.51% and literacy rate in females is only 52.66%. Literacy rate in Rajasthan has increased in past decades but Rajasthan is still a backward state from literacy point of view and far behind from national average. There is poor literacy rates in rural areas of Rajasthan particularly in females. Kota district has the highest 77.48% literacy rate and Jalore district has the lowest 55.58% literacy rate.

Increase in literacy rate in the state has been possible due to various schemes like literacy campaigns, adult education, continuous literacy programs, special attention and focus on girl education, free and compulsory education etc. But female literacy is still much lower than male literacy. Various schemes are being run to promote girl education in which Kasturba Gandhi Aawasiya Balika Vidhyalaya (KGBV), transport vouchers to rural girls, Gargi awards, Aapki Beti Yojna, distribution of Devnaryana Chhatra-Scooty, free bicycle to girls and other encouragement schemes for girls.

Sex ratio:-

Sex ratio is the ratio of number of male and female of a particular place, state or country. In



Map 12.6 : Sex ratio in India

India, number of females per thousand males residing in some geographical region is its measurement unit. It means sex-ratio is the number of females per thousand males.

The information is an important social indicator to measure the extent of equality or condition of inequality between male and female members of the society. According to 2011 census the sex ratio of the country is 940, means number of females par thousand male is merely 940. Sex ratio of Kerala is highest at 1084 and sex ratio of Haryana is lowest at 879 only.

According to 2011 census the sex ratio of Rajasthan is 928 which is slightly higher than sex ratio of 2001 census (921 females per thousand males). The sex ratio of 2011 census is the highest of all other census since 1901. This is an indication of social progress is the state.

The number of females per thousand males is highest in Rajsamand and Dungarpur districts of Rajasthan. There are 990 females in Dungarpur and 968 females in Rajsamand per thousand males. Dholpur has lowest sex ratio in the state where there are 845 females per thousand males.

Sex ratios in urban areas have been higher than rural areas. The reasons behind sex ratio in favour of males are sub standard position of females in society and their poor access to social, economic and health related services. Other then this female feticide is also an important reason for this. Government is trying its best to save the girl child. But the solution to this problem can be possible only through public awareness and spread of education in society.

Urbanization-

Urbanization means the ratio of urban population to the total population of a region. The responsible factors for the increasing level of urbanization in India are migration of people from rural areas to urban areas, physical expansion of cities, population increase in urban areas and transformation of rural areas in new urban centers.

After independence the number and size of cities have increased rapidly and percentage of urban population has also increased. On one side urbanization and modern industrialization are the indications of development but on the other side it is creating imbalance between environment and exploitation of natural resources and responsible for degradation of environment in many ways.

As per Indian census an urban center is a place where population size is 5000 persons and above, population density is 400 persons per sq. km. and above and minimum 75% male working population engaged non agricultural works. Other than this a place with municipality, municipal council, municipal corporation, cantonment boards and notified areas are also considered in the category of urban areas.

The rural population of India is more than the urban population. About 2/3 population of India lives in villages. It shows that agriculture is the main occupation in the country. In India rural population is declining gradually and the proportion of urban population is increasing accordingly. The main reason behind it is the migration of people from villages to cities for employment, education and other facilities in cities.

Table 12.6 : Percentage of rural and urban population in India (1901 - 2011)

Year	Percentage of total population	
	Rural	Urban
1901	89.2	10.8
1911	89.7	10.3
1921	88.8	11.2
1931	86.0	12
1941	86.1	13.9
1951	82.7	17.3
1961	82	18
1971	80.1	19.9
1981	76.7	23.3
1991	74.3	25.7
2001	72.2	27.8
2011	68.8	31.2

Out of 121 crore total population of India 83.3 crore population lives in villages and 37.7 crore population lives in urban areas. That means about 70% of population of India is living in rural areas. Table No. 12.6 shows the ratio of rural and urban population in various decades. These figures are clearly depicting that the proportion of urban population is increasing in every decade which indicates the migration of rural population towards urban areas.

In Rajasthan 75.13% of total population lives in rural areas and 24.87% lives in urban areas. Although, the tendency of urbanization is increasing in state but still three - fourth population of Rajasthan lives in rural areas and agriculture is their main occupation.

Population Problem :

The base of population of India is very broad that is why small annual increase in population is also contributing in big way in the total increase of population. In case of India this excessive increase in population is an obstacle in the economic development of the country. Over population also effects the life style of people. We have to use more resources in order to fulfil the basic needs of food, clothing, shelter, and education and health care services. Apart from this it creates problems of unemployment and poverty. There are also other problems like scarcity of drinking water, electricity, means of transport and housing.

Decline in death rate in population of India has also been its good characteristic. The main reason of population problem is decline in birth rate which can be solved by reducing birth rate.

Population Policy-

Health and welfare of the population of the country can be improved by keeping the family size small. Keeping it in mind the Government of India started Family Planning Programme on a large scale in 1952. Family welfare programme is working to encourage responsible and planned fatherhood. National Population Policy is the result of planned efforts of many years.

National Population Policy 2000 -

In this population policy the issues related to population are given in three parts, which indicates the time bound efforts of population control and the aims of this policy.

Short term issues : In this part those issues are focused for which immediate action was required such as expansion of birth control measures along with improvement in basic health infrastructure.

Medium term issues : In this it was aimed to bring down the birth rate of India at replacement level by 2010.

Long term issues : In this part to achieve the objective of sustainable economic and social development with environmental conservation, it was aimed to get stable population level for population of India by 2045.

Population Policy of Rajasthan-

The reason of population growth in the state is its special geographical, social, economic and cultural background. Two third part of the state is desert and larger part is hilly and tribal area. Female literacy is low, only 52.66% and lack of social awareness is an issue of concern. In rural areas this is still in practice that females prefer delivery by a midwife than to a hospital delivery. Due to this the infant mortality rates are higher in this region. The birth rate in the state are higher because of less possibility of survival of the child, poor health of child, marriage at early age and desire to have a male child.

To face the challenge of increasing population efforts are being made in Rajasthan for stablising of population through various programs and schemes. Eligible couples are being educated to keep the size of family limited by providing them family welfare services. Regular vaccination schemes (Matra Shishu Swasthya Poshan Diwas , Mukhya Mantri Panchamrat Abhiyan) nutritious meal to pregnant women and children are being provided with all the necessary services in order to reduce child and mother death rate.

Resources are being provided from village to village under Jan Mangal Jod Pariwar Kalayan through Jan Mangal Yojana. Women play important role in family welfare programmes to strengthen women health care centers so that women living in different areas may get information about family welfare and public health programmes and get benefit. Government is also providing health care and family welfare schemes in remote areas under various schemes.

Important Points

1. Human resource is a concept that takes population as an asset rather than liability.
2. Total number of persons living at a particular place at a particular time is called the population of that place.
3. India is at second position from population point of view after China.
4. Official counting of population during a fixed interval is called census.
5. According to 2011 census the population of India was 1,21,01,06,000.
6. According to 2011 Uttar Pradesh is the most populous state and Rajasthan is at eighth place.
7. Jaipur is the highest populated district and Jaisalmer is the lowest populated district in Rajasthan.
8. According to the data of 2011 census the growth rate of population during the decade of 2001-2011 has been 17.64 %
9. Ten years population growth rate of a place is called decadal population growth rate. It may be positive or negative.
10. The increase and decrease of population takes place due to the difference between birth and death rate.
11. The number of persons living in per square km. is known as density of population.
12. According to 2011 census the literacy in India is 73%.
13. Kerala is the most literate state in India where the literacy rate is 94% according to 2011 census.
14. Literacy rate in India is increasing. Male literacy rate is higher than female literacy rate.
15. Females per thousand males are known as sex ratio According to 2011 census the sex ratio of India is 943 and 928 in Rajasthan.
16. Family planning programme plays an important role in controlling the size of population. Government is providing health care and family welfare services in remote areas through the programmes.
17. A little more than 2/3 population lives in villages.

Exercise

Very Short Answer Type Questions.

1. Which state has the highest population?
2. At which place is Rajasthan in area in India?
3. Which state has the highest density of population?
4. What is the sex-ratio in Rajasthan according to 2011 census?
5. At which place is India ranked in population in the world?
6. After how many years of interval is census conducted in India?
7. What are main reasons of increase and decrease in population of a place or country?
8. Which is the highest populated district in Rajasthan?
9. Which three factors are responsible for change or increase in population?
10. What is sex-ratio?
11. What is literacy rate of the country according to 2011 census?

12. Which programme did govt. start to limit the size of the family?

13. Which district of Rajasthan has the highest density of population?

Short Answer Type Questions-

1. What is literacy rate?

2. What do you mean by resources?

3. What is population growth rate and in which decade it began to decline and why?

4. What important information does the census of a country provide?

5. Write measures to control the growth rate of population?

6. Mention the reasons of migration of people from rural areas to urban areas.

Essay Type Questions-

1. Describe some important features of population policy.

2. Describe in detail the reasons of rapid increase in population and the problems associated with it.

3. What is urbanization? Mention its advantages and problems caused by it.

4. What is population policy? Describe the population policy of Rajasthan.

Lesson-13

Transport and Communication

We use different products and services in our daily life. Some of them are available around us and some other needs are fulfilled from somewhere else. We need means of transportation for meeting the demand and supply of goods and services.

Means of transport have developed remarkably due to high scale of investment in capital and technology after Liberalization in 1991.

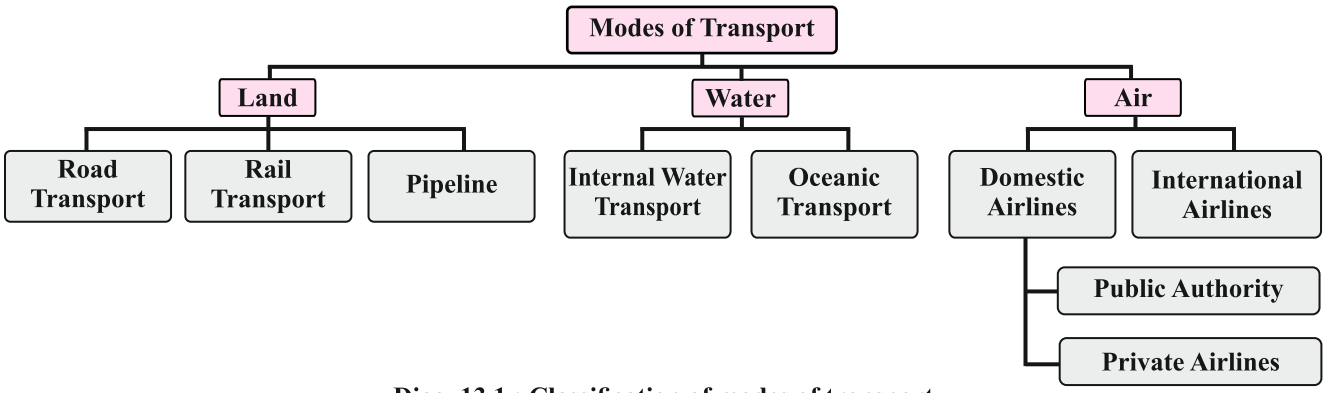
Infrastructure has an important role in industrial development. The regions which have better basic infrastructure facilities, develop rapidly. Infrastructure can be divided in two parts. In this first is structural infrastructure. It includes transport, electricity and communication. The second part is basic social infrastructure. It includes mainly development of human resources.

For a long time trade and transport facilities were confined to some specific regions only. With the development of science and technology, trade and transport also developed and its effect can be seen everywhere in the world. Development of transport was possible with the help of means of communication. Thus, transportation, communication and trade etc. are supplements of one another.

Today India is well connected with all regions of the world despite its large area and diversities in many fields. Road, Air and Sea-transport, newspapers, radio, television, cinema, internet etc. are helpful in its social and economic development in many ways. International trade has given new life to the economy through transport and communication. In this way our lives have become more facilitated and comfortable.

Rajasthan has not been included among the advanced states due to lack of infrastructure development. But now, with the improvement in basic infrastructure, economic development is taking place with good pace in the state.

Modern means of transportation and communication are the roots of economic development of the state and the country. So it is clear that the compact and efficient network of transportation and means of communication are essential for international, national and local trade.



Diag. 13.1 : Classification of modes of transport

Transport:-

Well planned transport system plays an important role in the continuous development of a country. There has been large scale development in transport sector in last few years. Transport facilities have reached to the remote areas of the country and people are benefitted out of it.

Transport has much importance in economic development of any region. It is essential for industrial development and it also develops other sectors of economy. Transport network is very useful during natural calamities. Means of transportation are being classified in three sectors- land, sea and air transport.

Land Transport:-

Carrying goods and services from one place to another on land are means of land transport. They are categorised in the form of roads, railways and pipelines.

Road Transport:-

Roads are leading and most important in transport sector. At present about 65% goods are transported by roads and 80% passengers travel by road. The road transport is increasing by 7-10% every year and the number of vehicles are increased by rate of 10-12% every year.

Road transport plays an important role in social and economic development of a country. It is also very cheap and convenient for short and medium distance transportation. It is also facilitating other means of transport because it is reliable, fast, and flexible and provides door to door facilities. Rail transport in India is limited to some areas only due to distinct physical features of the country. Thus the road transport becomes important here.

Total length of roads in India in the year 2015 reached upto 54 lakh and 72 thousands kilometers. It includes national highways, main district roads, other district and rural roads. In the national highways there are standard double lanes, four lanes and more wide roads.

Due to following reasons road transport is more important than rail transport :-

- Cost of construction of roads is much less than railway lines.
- Roads can also be constructed on uneven, undulating land surfaces and in widely spread remote areas.
- Roads can be constructed in steep slope gradient and in hilly terrain.
- Road transport is much cheaper for short distance, lesser amount of goods and small number of passengers.
- It provides door to door services and cost of loading and unloading of goods is less than other means of transportation.
- Road transport works as a link with all other means of transport as it connects railway stations, airports and sea ports.

Metropolitan and big cities are generally well connected with rail transport and air transport facilities but roads are the only means of transport in rural areas. Roads in transport sector are similar to veins and blood vessels in the human body.

Three - fourth population of Rajasthan lives in villages only. Prosperity can be automatically seen in the villages of the state which are connected by roads. Villages seems to be incomplete without roads. In the absence of roads the social and economic development of villages could not achieve actual speed.

Investment in transport development has increased in planned development of Rajasthan. Expenditure on transport development has also increased in various Five Year Plans. At present the development of road transport is a priority in development heads for the state government.

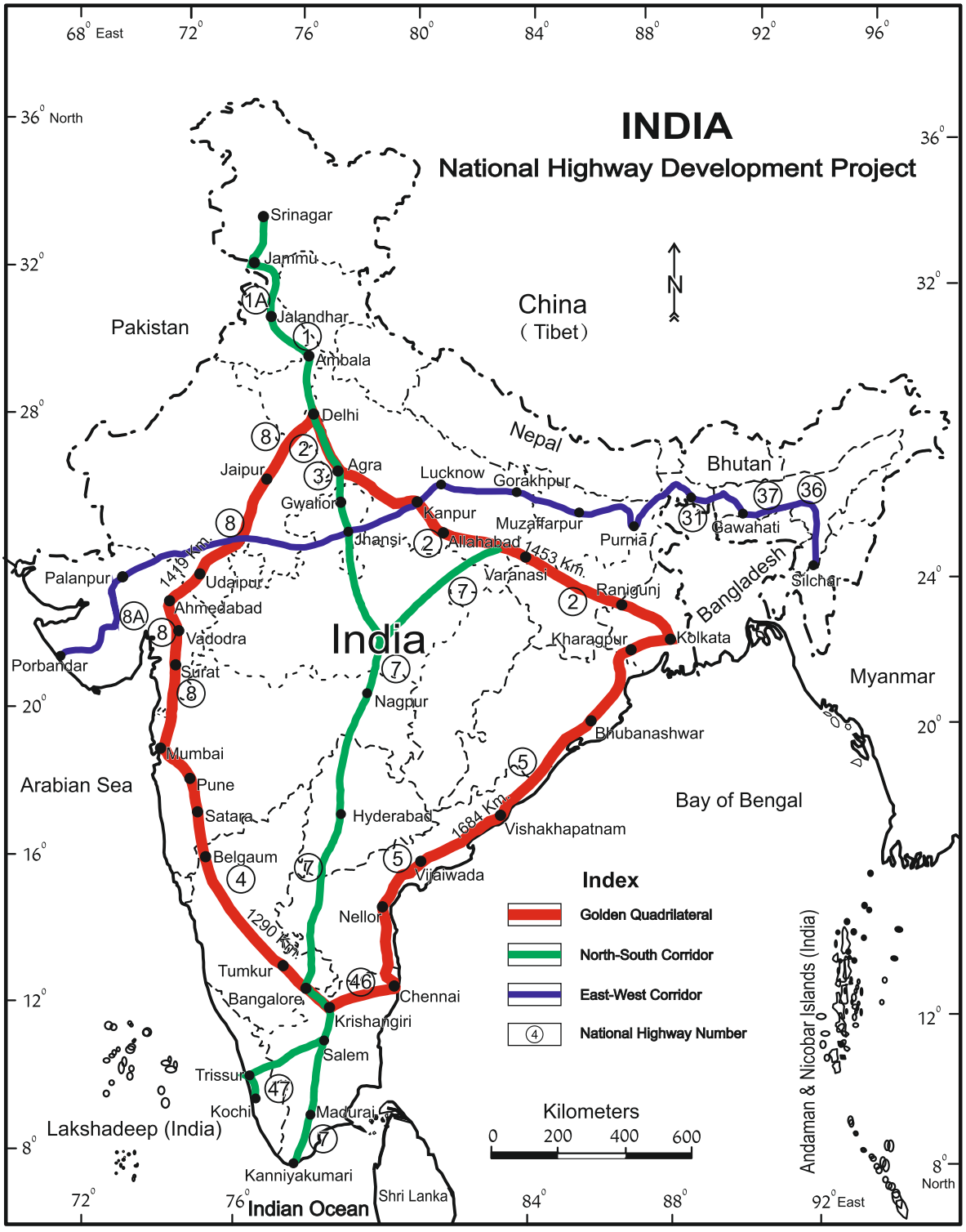
Roads in India have been classified in the following categories on the basis of their capacity:-

- Golden Quadrilateral Supper Highways
- National Highways
- State Highways

- District Roads
- Other Roads
- Border Roads

Golden Quadrilateral Super Highways-

Government of India has started a six lane road project of super highways for connecting Delhi, Kolkata, Chennai and Mumbai. Two

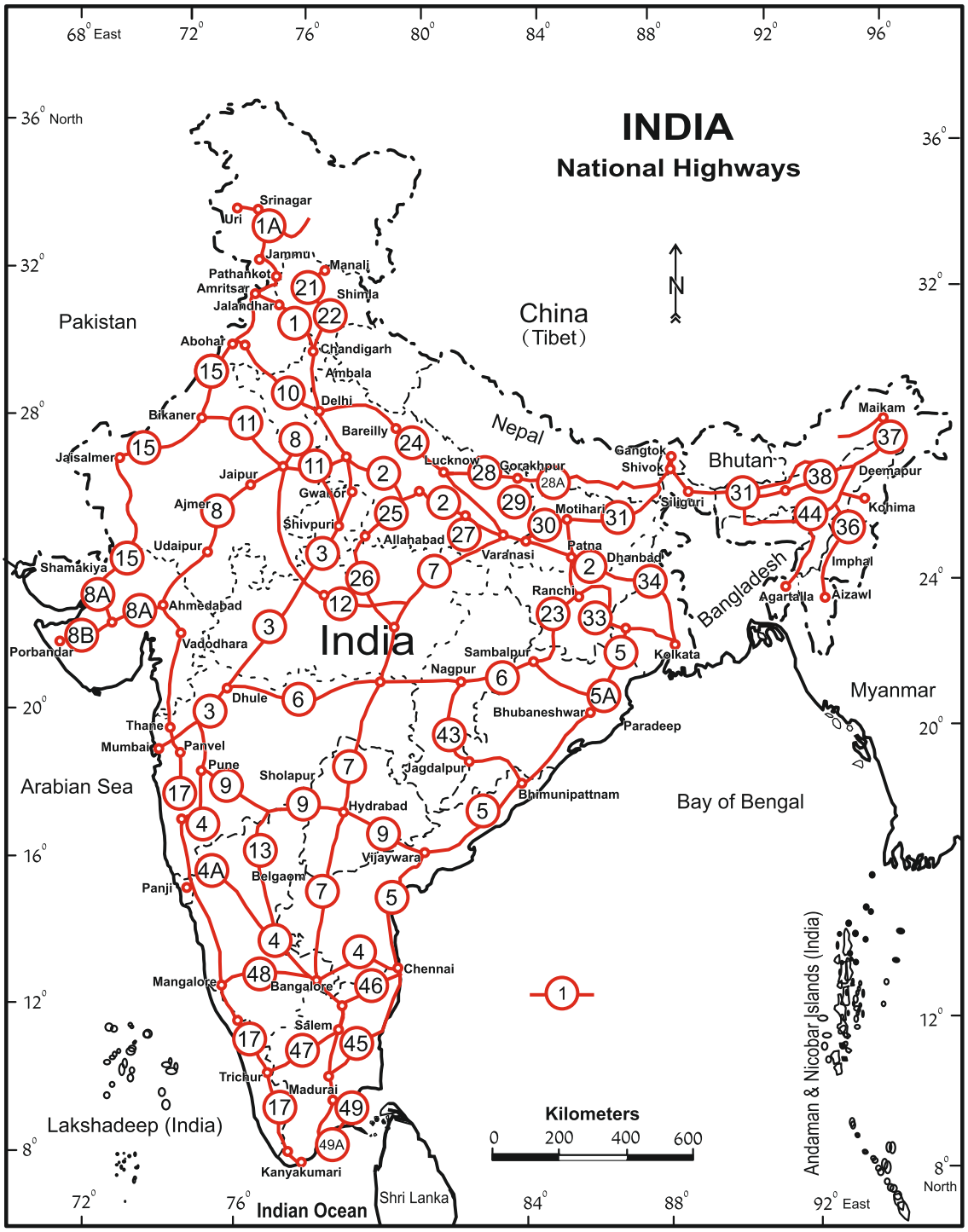


Map 13.1 : Golden Quadrilateral Super Highways and important Corridors

corridors are proposed under this project. First North-South corridor which joins Srinagar to Kanyakumari and the second West-East corridor which joins Porbandar to Silchar. The main objective of this super highway project is to minimise the distance and transport time between the metropolitan cites of India. This super highway project is under jurisdiction of National Highway Authority of India (NHAI).

National Highways:-

National highways connect distant places



Map 13.2 : Major National Highways of India

of the country. This is primary roads network system and its construction and maintenance is under the jurisdiction of Central Public Work Department (CPWD).

Various important National Highways are spread from North to South and from East to West directions. The historical Shershah Suri road from Delhi to Amritsar is known as National Highway-1. The total length of national highways in India is about 66590 kilometers.

Under national main highway development programme total 45,974 km. of 4 and 2 lane roads have been proposed to be constructed during 11th five year plan. Its total cost will be 2,20,000 crore. It has been initiated by the government on the basis of public and private partnership. All the villages with a population of 100 persons in plain areas and in hilly areas with a population of 500 persons and above shall be connected with roads under Pradhan Mantri Gram Sadak Yojana. The villages of India shall be brought under market economy through this programme.

Total seven National Highways pass through Rajasthan. Among these National Highway No. 8 is the most important and the busiest highway. Its total length in Rajasthan is 685 kms. This national highway starts from Delhi and passes through Jaipur, Ajmer, Udaipur etc. before it reaches its final destination i.e. Mumbai. The National Highway Number 11 is very important from security point of view. This highway starts from Agra and passes through Bharatpur, Dausa, Jaipur, Sikar etc. before it reaches its final destination i.e. Bikaner. The national highway no. 12 starts from Jaipur and it reaches to Bhopal via Tonk, Bundi, Kota and Jhalawar. The National highway no. 14 passes through Beawar, Pali, Sirohi, Abu-road and finally reach upto Kandla. Its total length in Rajasthan is 299 kilometers. The National Highway no. 3 has only 28 kilometers length in Rajasthan. It passes through Dholpur district of the state. The National highway no. 8 has been converted into 6 lane from Jaipur to Ajmer under Golden Quadrilateral Project. On the similar lines the development of road transport is taking place in the state.

State Highways:-

State highways connect important cities, towns and district headquarters in the state and also connect national highways and other main highways of neighbouring states. Construction and maintenance of these highways in states and union territories is the responsibility of Public Works Department (PWD). Total length of state highways in the country is 1,31,899 km.

Some major state highways in Rajasthan have been connected with Mega Highway project and they are being developed into Mega Highways by converting these from 2 to 4 lanes. At present the construction and maintenance of these Mega highways and State highways is being done on contractual basis. For this, contract firms charge toll tax from the vehicles passing through these highways. Government vehicles, ambulances, agriculture vehicles, army vehicles, emergency vehicles and two wheelers are exempted from paying toll tax.

Major District Roads-

Major district roads connect different tehsil-headquarters, major cities and industrial areas to district headquarters and interconnecting roads.

Other Roads-

These roads connect villages to cities and towns. They have been developed under Pradhan Mantri Gram Sadak Pariyojana. The main aim of these roads is to connect every village of India with major cities by pucca roads. With the objective to connect all the villages with main roads the Prime Minister of India has launched Pradhan Mantri Gram Sadak Yojana on 25 December 2000. According to 1991 Census, a target was fixed to connect all the villages with roads having population 1000 or more persons and villages with population 500 to 1000 persons by 2003 and 2007 respectively. There is plan to connect villages with population of 250 persons and above in tribal areas under this project.

Border Roads-

Border roads are constructed and

maintained by Border Road Organization under the authority of Government of India. This organization was formed in the year 1960 to strengthen defense preparedness and rapid economic development in India, with integrated and rapid development of road transportation in border areas of Northern and Eastern regions of the country.

At present the developmental activities of this organisation are being run in Rajasthan, Jammu & Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Sikkim, Assam, Meghalaya, Nagaland, Tripura, Manipur, Mizoram, Arunachal Pradesh, Bihar, Andaman & Nicobar islands and Bhutan. With development of these roads the accessibility have been increased in these remote areas. These roads will also be helpful in the economic development of these regions.

Table 13.1 : Length of tar roads in Rajasthan (31-3-2016)

S.No.	Types of Road	Length (in Km.)
1.	National Highways	8120
2.	State Highways	14970
3.	Major District Highways	6598
4.	Other District roads	27707
5.	Rural roads	114780
	Total	**172175**

Source : website of Public Works Department, Rajasthan

Rajasthan Road Vision 2025-

Rajasthan road vision 2025 was prepared to make fundamental change in road network system in Rajasthan. A Long term vision of 25 years was prepared by Public Works Department for the development of roads in the state during first 25 years of the 21st century. In this emphasis has been laid on the construction of roads, their maintenance and assurance of quality. In the first 15 years of road vision, all the villages will be connected with roads and then in the next 10 years focus will be on construction of express ways, flyovers and four lane state highways. In this vision, it has been felt that it is essential to develop connecting roads to connect religious places, tourist centers, mining and industrial areas. Rajasthan can be considered as a model state in road transportation.

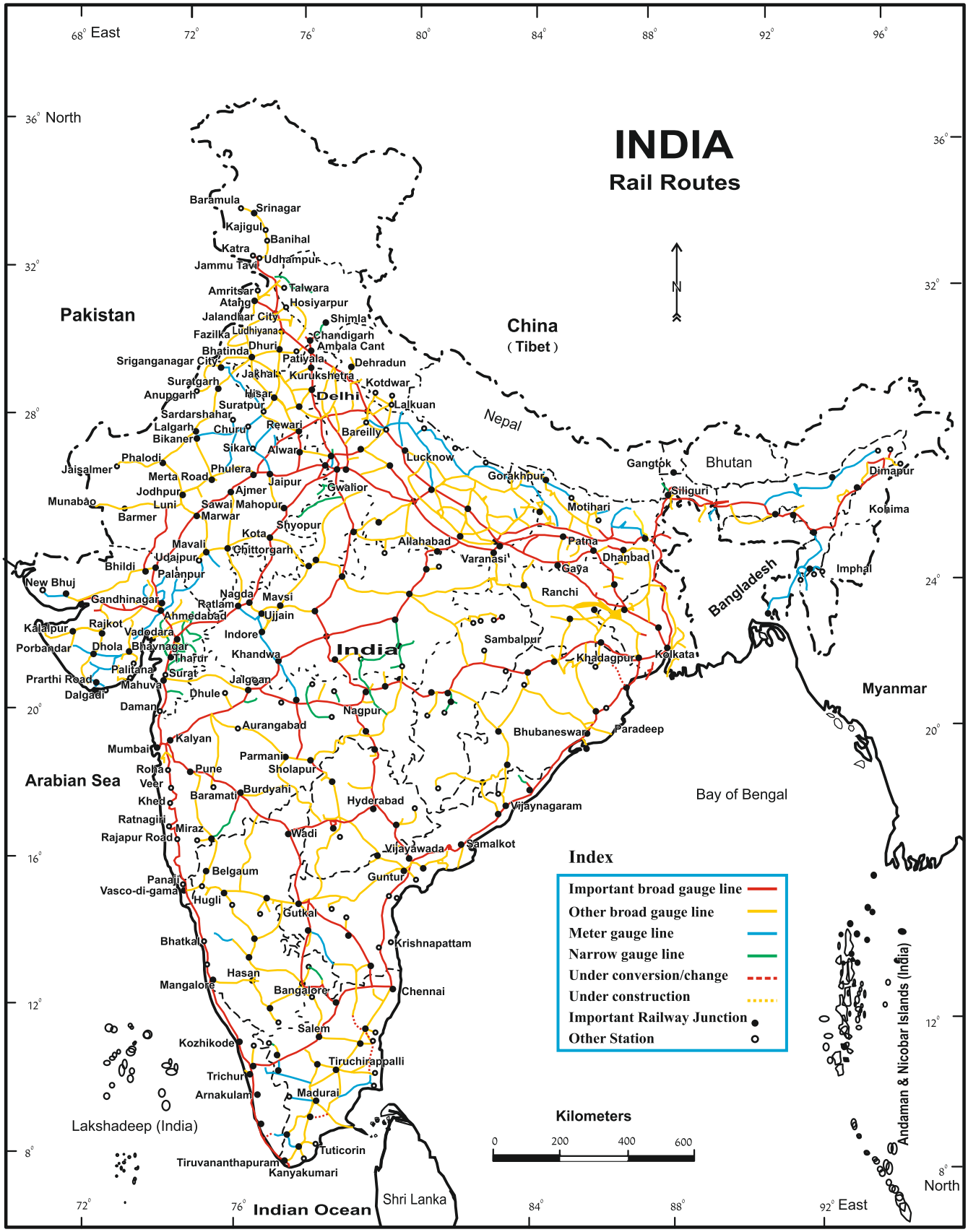
Rail Transport-

Rail Transport is an important mode of transportation of goods and people in India. Light and heavy goods are transported to long distances by rail transport. Indian railways, as important mode of transportation, have been known as good coordinator of transport network from last 150 years. Indian railway has contributed much in the rapid development of industries and economy of the country. Total length of Indian railway lines was 67,312 km. as on 31 March 2016. There were 7133 railway stations, 9213 railway engines, 53,220 passenger trains, 6493 other coaches and 2 lakh, 29 thousand & 381 trains in Indian Railways.

In India, the first train was started in the year 1853. It was run between Mumbai and Thane on 33.6 km long railway line on 16 April 1853. Indian railway was nationalized in 1951. The first electric train in India was the Deccan Queen which was run in 1929 between Goa and Pune. Today there is a wide network of railways in the country.

Fig. 13.1 : Passenger transportation through railways

There are many types of railway lines in the country. Broad-gauge, meter-gauge and narrow-gauge are the main lines. The regions which are rich in natural resources, economic products and heavy minerals like iron ore, coal, mineral oil, minerals and fertilizers are having broad gauge lines and maximum transportation of these take place from this only. But raw material for industrial units is transported through meter gauge only.



Map 13.3 : Major Rail routes of India

Although, the transportation by these narrow lines is time consuming and expensive. As a solution to this problem Indian railways has started uni-gauge project or similar railway line project in the 1992. Under this scheme all the meter gauge lines are being converted into broad gauge.

Natural landscape, economic and administrative factors play an important role in the Railway transport in our country. Railway lines pass through hilly areas, plains, swampy regions of Gujarat, forests of Madhya Pradesh and tunnels and connect all parts of the country. Today rail transportation is more important than other means of transportation in national economy the country. There are many problems also associated with rail transportation. Indian Railways is heavily burdened with the pressure of freight and passenger transportation and at the same time it faces challenges from road transportation. The Indian railway is also struggling from many problems such as poor security arrangement, obsolete machinery and technology, poor maintenance, robbery etc.

Keeping in view the increasing pressure of passengers and goods, there are attempts for doubling of railway lines, electrification of railway tracks and changing meter-gauge into broad-gauge rapidly under different projects. For the smooth transportation of goods double railway line of 1534 km. is being constructed from Mumbai to Rewari under Dedicated Front Corridor Project which will fulfil the needs of container transport.

Rajasthan has 11% of total railway line network of India. Total length of railway line in Rajasthan was 5870 km. in March 2013-14, which was 9.4% of total length railway lines of 64000 km. Broad gauge in Rajasthan is 82.9% of total length. Here the proportion of the meter gauge and narrow gauge is 15.6% and 1.46% respectively. The average length of railway track in Rajasthan was 17.2 km per thousand sq. km. on 31 March 2012 which was 19.2 km per thousand sq. km. at national level.

Major Railway Routes in Rajasthan are as follows:-

1. Jaipur	-	Mumbai Railway Route
2. Jodhpur	-	Howrah Railway Route
3. Delhi	-	Ahmedabad Railway Route
4. Udaipur	-	Delhi Railway Route
5. Bikaner	-	Delhi Railway Route
6. Jaipur	-	Delhi Railway Route
7. Jaipur	-	Ganganagar Railway Route
8. Phulera	-	Delhi Railway Route
9. Jaipur	-	Sawaimadhopur Railway Route
10. Jaipur	-	Agra Railway Route
11. Jaipur	-	Jammu Tavi Railway Route
12. Jodhpur	-	Guwahati Railway Route
13. Jaipur	-	Luharu Railway Route
14. Jaipur	-	Chennai Railway Route
15. Jodhpur	-	Haridwar Railway Route

Pipeline Transport

Fig. 13.2 : Pipe-line transportation

• Pipeline is comparatively a new mode of transport in India. Earlier use of pipeline was limited in cities and industries for water supply only. Today it is used to supply crude oil, petrol products and natural gas to oil refineries, fertilizer factories and thermal power stations. Solid and soluble substances are transformed into liquid form and carried through pipelines. Establishment of oil refineries in interior areas of the country such as Baroni, Mathura and Panipat and gas based

fertilizer plants in the interior parts have been possible due to the network of these pipelines only. Initial cost of laying pipelines is high but the operating cost is low.

- In pipeline transportation delay in supply and loss in process of transportation is negligible. There are three major pipelines networks in the country.
- One branch is from the oil regions of upper Assam to Kanpur via Guwahati, Baroni, and Allahabad, then from Baroni to Haldia via Rajwandh. The second branch is from Rajwandh to Maurigram and from Guwahati to Siliguri.
- From Salawa to Viramgam in Gujrat and Jalandhar in Punjab via Mathura, Delhi and Sonipat. Another branch connects Koyali near Vadodara to Chaksu and other places.
- Gas pipeline connects Hazira (Gujrat) to Jagdishpur (U.P). It passes through Vijaynagar in Madhya Pradesh. Its branches in Rajasthan are in Kota, Shahjanpur in U.P, Barala and other places in Uttar Pradesh.

Water Transport-

Water transport is the cheapest of all means of transportation in a country for long distances because there is no need to construct transportation routes and only construction of ports as well as the means of water transport are sufficient to develop water transport facilities. Though, natural and artificial waterways are essential for its operation. Indians have been undertaking sea voyages since long. Sailors have spread trade and culture far and wide. It is easy to carry heavy and bulky goods by water transport. It is also favourable for saving energy and environment friendly and mode of transportation. Both internal and external water transport is carried on in the country. Transport was done since ancient times through rivers as internal waterways. At present there is 14500 km long navigable water way including rivers, canals, lakes and narrow bays. About 3700 long waterway is being used in major rivers for water transportation. Out of 4300 km. long canal network, only 900 km. route is usable for water transportation. About 450 lakh ton goods are being carried through internal waterways. There is 14,500 km. long navigable water way in India but only 5685 km. route is used by mechanical ships. Internal waterways are important means of transport in North Eastern states of India.

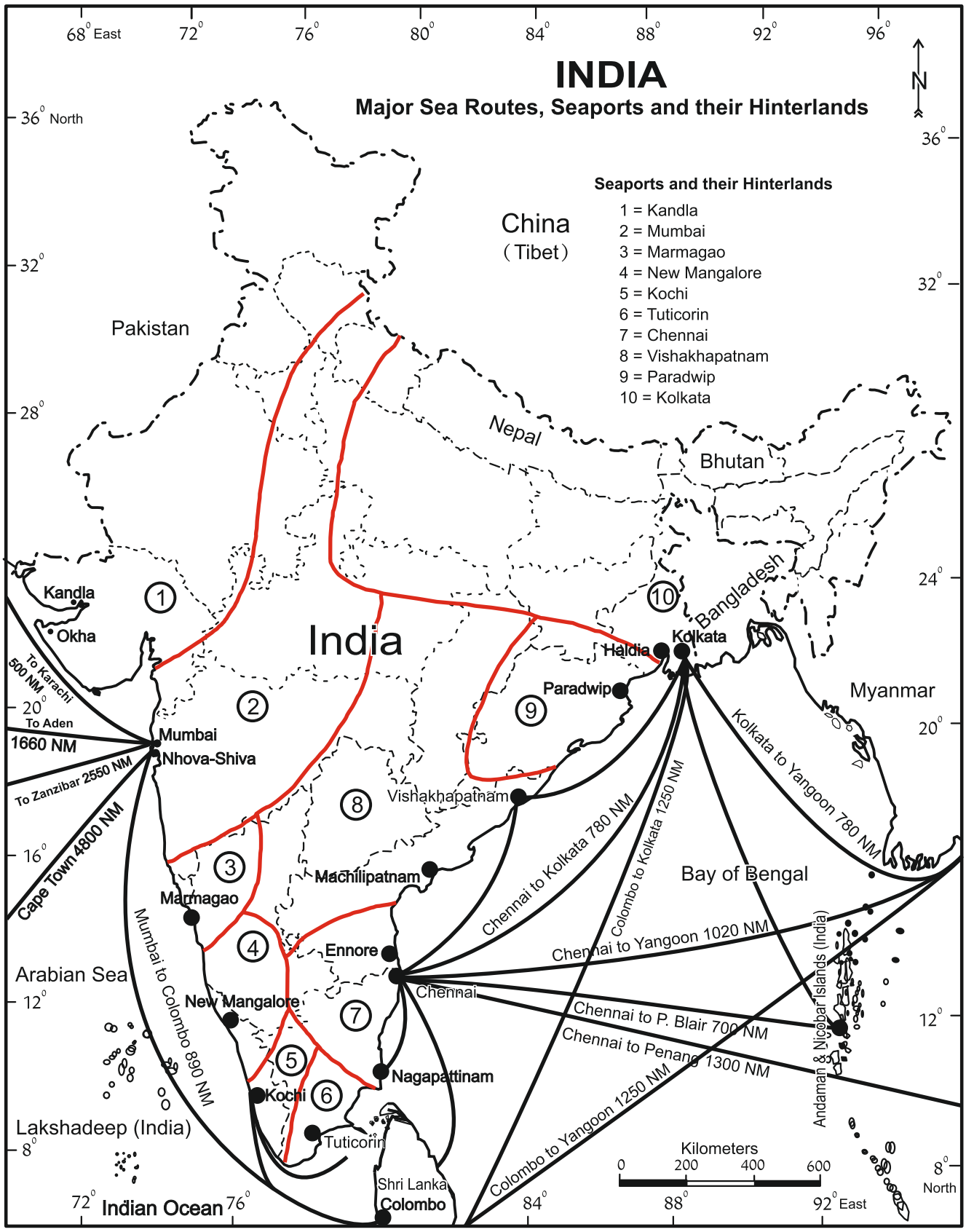
National Waterways-

Rivers of the country like the Ganga, Hoogly, Yamuna, Brahmaputra, Narbada, Tapti, Bharudi, Krishna, Mahanadi, provide internal waterways. The following waterways have been declared as National waterways by Government of India.

- National Waterway no. 1 - 1620 km. long Ganga waterway between Haldia and Allahabad.
- National Waterway no. 2 – 89 km. long Brahamputra waterway between Sadia and Dhuvari.
- National Waterway no. 3 – 205 km. long canal from Katapuram to Kollam near the west coast of Kerala from Udyogmandal to Chandraprakash.
- National Waterway no. 4 – 1100 km. long waterway from Kakinada to Bharkanan.
- National Waterway no. 5 – 588 long waterway from Matai river, Mahanadi, Delta channel, Brahamani river along the East coastal canal.

There are also some waterways for transport including Mandvi, Zurari and Kambariya, Sundarvan, Barak, back waterway of Kerala and tidal extension of some rivers.

Most rivers of the country face water shortage after rainy season so no transport is possible in this season. According to a survey made by the Ministry of Land Transport, there are ten riverways where water is available for the whole year. These riverways have been declared National Waterways.



Map 13.4 : Major Sea Routes, Seaports and Hinterlands in India

Major Seaports-

Activities such as anchoring of ships, fuelling, loading and unloading goods are done at seaports. There are 12 major seaports and 187 medium and small seaports along the 7516.6 km. long coast line. 95% of foreign trade is conducted from these seaports.

Fig. 13.3 : Seaport for Water Transportation

After independence Kandla seaport in Kutch was developed as the first seaport. It was developed as complement to Karachi seaport after partition to lessen the trade pressure from Mumbai seaport. Kandla is a tidal seaport. It operates import and export of the industrial and agriculture products from Jammu-Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan and Gujrat.

Mumbai is the largest port. It has a natural open large and good harbour for ships. Jawahar Lal Nehru seaport near Mumbai port which could provide facilities of combined port to the region. Marmagoa is an important seaport for iron ore export. About 50% of iron ore of the country is exported from here. New Mangalore seaport in Karnataka exports iron ore from its Kudramukh mines. Kochi seaport is situated at the far South Eastern part on the beach of a lagoon and is a natural port.

Tutikorin seaport is on the South Eastern coast in Tamil Nadu. It is a natural harbour and its hinterland is also very rich. It operates trade of different goods with Sri Lanka, Maldives and coastal regions of India. Chennai is the oldest port and Vishakhapatnam is the best natural port of the country. Ships are built and repaired here. Chennai is the second largest port in foreign trade and loading of goods. Paradeep seaport in Orissa exports iron ore. Kolkata is an internal river port. It is situated on the banks of Hoogly River 148 km. away from the seacoast. It has to be cleaned regularly as it is a tidal port and there is constant deposit of sand at the bottom of Hoogly River. Haldia port has been developed as secondary seaport to reduce the increasing pressure of trade on Kolkata port. Haldia has well equipped coast and oil containers. There is almost no waterways in Rajasthan due to absence of seacoast and perennial flowing rivers. Kandla and Mumbai are ports closet to Rajasthan.

Air Transport-

Air transport is the fastest, most comfortable and prestigious means of transport. India is a vast country with its physical diversity so this transport is very important. Remote areas like high mountains, desert, dense forest and long sea routes can easily be crossed by it. It connects the remote areas of the country. Air transport in the country started in 1911 when the first postal service was sent from Allahabad to Naini. Air transport was nationalized in 1953. Today in India domestic and international air services are provided by Indian Airlines, Air India and many private Airlines. Pawanhans Helicopter Limited is the leading helicopter service in India which provides services to Oil and Natural Gas Commission in emergency and inaccessible remote parts of the country such as North Eastern states, Jammu & Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh and Uttrakahand etc. It is also working for tourism promotion in India. Indian Airlines also provides its services to neighbouring countries like Nepal, Bangladesh, Pakistan, Afghanistan, Sri Lanka, Myanmar and Maldives.

International Airport Authority of India manages four major air ports of India. Mumbai, Kolkata, Delhi and Chennai where as National Airport Authority manages national Airports and run ways of civilian flights on defence airports. At present the responsibility of management of many

airports is given to the private sector.

Fig. 13.4 : Airport and Air Transportation

The airports of the country have been divided into four categories according to their work, characteristics, importance and facilities provided by them.

International Airports- International air services are available here. The following airports in the country provide international air services. Jawahar Lal Nehru Airport (Santacruz Airport Mumbai), Subhash Chandra Bose Airport (Dumdum Airport Kolkata), Indira Gandhi International Airport (Delhi), Meenambakam (Chennai) and (Thirunvanthpuram Airport). Besides these, there are also international airports at Bangalore, Hyderabad, Ahmedabad, Kochi, Thrunvanthpuram, Calicut, Coimbatore, Nagpur, Pune, Jaipur, Lucknow, Shrinagar,Goa, Amritsar,Guwahati, and Nedumbsery.

First Class Airports- They provide landing and taking off facilities to all kinds of aeroplanes. They are in Agartala, Ahmedabad, Rajsansi (Amritsar), Amusi (Lucknow), Patna, Begumpet (Hyderabad) Saint Thomas (Chennai), Safdarganj (Delhi), Guwahati, Jaipur, Nagpur, Tiruchirapalli and Barapan (Shilong).

Apart from these, there are **38 airports of medium and 28 airports of small level** and government aided flying clubs where children are given training.

Sanganer Airport at Jaipur in Rajasthan is a first class airport. There are two terminals where government and private airlines operate domestic and international flights. It provides flights to all major cities of the country. Then there are airports of medium level at Ratanada (Jodhpur) and Dabok (Udaipur). They provide flight services to some important cities of the country. There is a small airport in Kota and an airport at Kishangarh near Ajmer is also under construction from where air services will be available in near future.

Communication services-

Man has been using means of communication since inception of human civilization. Man has made much progress. He has made achievements which have provided him comfort and all facilities. Man has made revolutionary progress in communication sector. He is the creator and master of new communication facilities and techniqes. New sources and means of communication have provided him better facilities.

Today, sitting at one place sending and receiving message from distance has become very easy. The major medium of communication such as radio, television, newspaper groups, press, cinema, internet, cable, mobile, satellite services are provided by private sector. Public communication network of India is very large. Postal communication of India handles personal letters and speed post services. It operates parcels, cards, envelopes and sealed letters. They are carried to different places by buses, trains, railways, aeroplanes and waterways. Telephone, internet and mobile services are modern means of communication.

Fig. 13.5 : Postal - Letter Box

Internet-

Internet started in 1969. At that time it was used in limited areas as exchange of information. Launching of e-mail in 1972 brought about a revolution in communication. Through e-mail any message or information can be sent to any corner of the world in seconds where internet service is available. Some message can be sent to thousands of persons through e-mail. Video conferencing is done with the help of internet which is less expensive and saves time. Persons sitting at different places in the country or abroad can have conversation through audio-visual aids.

Photos and films can be sent from one place to another easily and fast. Events taking place in one corner of the world can be seen and sent to another within minutes. Internet services can also be had through telephone lines, broadband services and mobile services through 2G, 3G and 4G network services.

Fig. 13.6 : Tower and radar for internet, mobile and satellite services

Telephone-

Telephone is a very important means of communication invented by Graham Bell. After its invention working improved rapidly. Persons sitting at different places can talk to each other and also exchange information. After introducing S.T.D. and I.S.D it was possible to talk to people in foreign countries by dialing number directly. There are code numbers for cities and countries in STD and ISD to talk directly without any delay.

Mobile-

Invention of mobile phones brought about a revolution in telephone communication services. Direct contact can be had through mobile service with the persons using mobiles. Fast internet services like 3G and 4G are also available on mobile phones. Videos calling facility is also available on mobile phones. Different mobile applications have made communication services fast and easy. New techniques are being introduced regularly in this sector.

Important Points

1. Transport is needed to carry goods and services from where they are produced to the places of demand.
2. Transport and communication are the backbone of the economy of a country.
3. There are three major sectors of transport-

   1. Land 2. Air 3. Water
4. Land transport takes place via railways, roads and pipelines.
5. Golden Quadrilateral Super Highways connect four major metros of the country named Delhi, Kolkata, Chennai and Mumbai with one another.
6. Seven National Highways pass through Rajasthan and their length is 685 km.
7. National highway no. 8 is the main highway passing through Rajasthan. It proceeds from Delhi via Jaipur, Ajmer and Udaipur to reach Mumbai.
8. State Highways are those highways which connect towns, cities, district head quarters, national highways and state highways connecting neighbouring states.
9. The first train in the country was operated on 22 December 1851. The first train was run between Mumbai and Thane on 16 April 1853 and the distance was 33.6 km.
10. Pipeline transport is a new means of transport. It was used to supply water to cities but today

it is used to supply crude oil, petrol, gas, diesel and ores (in liquid form) from one place to another.

11. Water transport is the cheapest means of transport because there is no need to construct roads.
12. There are five National Waterways and other waterways in the country through which transportation is carried out.
13. Air transport is the fastest and most comfortable means of transport and it can cross remote places like high mountains, deserts, dense forests and long routes easily.
14. Air transport service in Rajasthan is available in Jaipur, Jodhpur, Udaipur and Kota and very soon it will also be available in Ajmer.
15. Television, radio, postal services, telephone, mobile and internet services are important mediums of communication.
16. Message from one place to another can be sent quickly through e-mail services.
17. Mobile services and inventions coming up frequently in this sector are responsible for revolutionary changes in communication.

Exercise

Very Short Answer Type Questions-

1. What is transport?
2. Which are major sectors of land transport?
3. Name the Super Highway which connects four major metro cities of the country.
4. How many National Highways pass through Rajasthan?
5. Write the name of first electric train of India.
6. Write the name of separate railway project under construction for the operation of goods trains.
7. Name the cheapest means of transport.
8. Which is the fastest means of transport?
9. Write the full form of e-mail.
10. Write the name of essential communication service for video calling.

Short Answer Type Questions-

1. What is Pradhan Mantri Gram Sadak Yojana?
2. Give the classification of the major road transport routes.
3. What is the importance of border roads?
4. Why is water transport the cheapest way of transport?
5. Write the names of major international airports of India ?
6. Mention the advantages of pipeline transport.

Essay Type Questions-

1. Mention the reasons of the increasing importance of rail transport as compared to road transport.
2. Why are means of transport and communication called the life line of the country and its economy?
3. What is Rajasthan Road Visions 2025?
4. Describe the progress made in transport sector in Rajasthan.
5. Describe the modern means of communication.

Lesson-14

Economic Concepts and Planning

14.1 General Introduction of National Income-

We use the term 'income' many times in everyday life. Income is the measurement of welfare of a person or a family. We know that income is not the only determiner of welfare but it is one of the most important factors among many other. The income of a person or family shows the physical life, social status and economic progress to a large extent. Just like a person or family the income of a nation can also be determined. The calculation of National Income for economy of the country is important in following ways:

(a) National Income is the indication of the economic progress and economic condition of a country.

(b) We can compare the economy of other countries on the basis of national income.

(c) Contribution of different sectors and their relative importance in economy can be found out from national income.

(d) On the basis of National Income estimates, future policies can be formed for economy.

14.1.1 National income-

National Income is the monetary measurement of economic achievement of an economy. It is defined as monetary value of all products and services during a particular period (one financial year) in a country. Remember that the value of end product and services is included in national income. It is not included in the process of production. It is important to note that National Income is the total income of the sources of production and not the income of citizens.

Fiscal year - India as a financial year from 1 April to 31 March.
Production - Creation of utility and value addition is production only.

All factors of production by joint efforts, produce final goods and services of such value, value addition equal to that is created. The value is distributed among the owners of factors of production. The factors of production are given reward for their factor services. Rent to land, Wages to labourers, Interest to capital and profit. to entrepreneur are received. The payment received by all factors of production equals to value addition by all the factors. Thus what ever is produced is received as factor income by the factors of production. Therefore, gross national products equals gross national income for a country. It may be simply said that national income is the sum of income received by all factors of production for their contribution in the production process during a financial year (generally a year) in a country. National income may be shown as the sum of domestic factor income and net factor income from abroad.

Household means income refers to the means of income generated within the country's domestic borders.

There are many forms of national income, which are called national income concepts. All these concepts have specific scientific names, meanings and utilities. Among them are GDP, net domestic product, gross national product, net national product etc. Even though they are separated from each other, all these concepts exhibit the income of an economy. Generally, the gross domestic product is used to measure the

performance of an economy. The sum of the monetary values of all the final goods and services produced in the domestic borders of the country during a financial year is called GDP.

14.1.2 Per Capital Income

National income is not an appropriate measure of financial well-being. It does not adjust the effect of population change. Per capita income, in comparison to national income, is more appropriate to major economic well-being and economic development when the impact of change in population is taken for calculation. To calculate per capita income, national income of the country is divided by the population of that country.

$$\text{Per capital Income} = \frac{\text{National Income}}{\text{Population}}$$

14.1.3 Calculation of National Income in India-

There was no government agency to calculate National Income before independence in India. The first National Income was calculated by Dada Bhai Nauroji in 1868. After this Findlay Shiraj, Dr. V.R. Rao, R.C. Desai estimated national income. All these scholars used different methods and basis for the calculation of national income. But they did not have reliable data and information so could not apply statistical methods in calculation.

After independence National Income Committee was formed under the Chairmanship of P.C. Mahalonobis in August 1949.This committee submitted its first report in 1951 and final report in 1955. This work of calculating National Income was handed over to the Central Statistical Organization (CSO) and it has been doing the work of calculating National Income since 1955.

14.2 Sectors of Economy-

we find people involved in different economic activities. Some activities produce goods and other provide services. These activities go on around us at the time. How can we understand them? One way to understand them is to classify them in different categories on the basis of some important criteria. These categories are also known as various sectors of economy.

14.2.1 Three Sectors of Economy-

Primary Sector – It produces goods by using natural resources in direct form. There are many activities based on direct use of natural resources as cotton cultivation. It is a seasonal crop. We depend on natural factors like rainfall, sunlight and climate for the growth of cotton plants. So cotton is a natural product. In the same way dairy, mining provide products by using natural resources. These are also primary activities. It is also known as agriculture allied sector.

Secondary sector- In this sector products are transformed into other forms through manufacturing process. It is next to Primary Sector. Goods are manufactured. It can be done in some factory, workshop or at home. For example, spinning from cotton fiber and then weaving textile. Sugar and Jaggery are made from sugarcane. We make bricks from clay and then we build houses and buildings with bricks. This sector is associated with different industries so it is also called Industrial Sector.

Tertiary sector- It is quite different from the first two sectors. They make no products. These activities help in the development of Primary and Secondary. Products of first two sectors need to be transported to retail or whole sale dealers for sale (by trucks and trains). Sometimes products need to be stored in warehouses. We also need to have telephonic communication, correspondence and banking facilities for smooth trade. These are some examples of the activities of this sector. They also provide service instead of producing goods. So it also known as Service Sector.

There are also certain indispensible services which do not help in making any production. The services of teachers, doctors, washermen, hairdressers, cobblers, advocates, administrators and accountants

are among them. Nowadays, the new services based on information technology like internet cafe, ATM booths, e-kiosks, call centers and software companies are also important.

14.2.2 Historical Changes in Sectors-

It has been noticed in most developed countries that Primary Sector was very important in the initial stage of development. Gradually, changes came in agriculture system and this sector became prosperous. There was more production than in the past. Many people got engaged in other occupations. The number of craftsmen and traders increased. Activities of purchase and sale increased manifold. Many people joined transport, administrative and army services. Yet most of the goods were produced by Primary Sector and most people were employed in this sector.

Factories came into existence with new methods of manufacture, their number increased and people began to work in them. This secondary sector became most important from production and employment point of view because products were cheap in factories. Work started to be done in extra time also. There has been change from Secondary sector to Tertiary Sector in last 100 years in developed countries. Importance of service sector increased in total production. Most of the workforce is employed in service sector.

14.2.3 Increasing Importance of Tertiary Sector in Production-

Production has increased in all sectors of economy in last few years but highest increase in production has been noticed in tertiary sector. So this sector emerged as the largest sector in production in India replacing the primary sector. Although contribution of all the three sectors in gross domestic products has changed yet there has been no important change in employment. Why did employment not shift from primary sector? It is so because there was no creation of employment opportunities in secondary and tertiary sectors. With the result about 50% workforce is employed in Primary Sector mainly in agricultural sector and its contribution in gross domestic product is even less than 15%. On the other hand more than 85% contribution in gross domestic product is from secondary and tertiary sectors. These sectors provide employment to 50 % people.

14.3 Economic Growth and Economic Development-

Countries with higher income are considered more developed than those with low income. More income means the availability of more goods to fulfil human needs. As different nations have different size of population so for comparison among nations total income is not a suitable criterion. By comparing total income we cannot determine how much the average person is earning. So average or per capita income is given more importance than national income. With change in time increase in National Income and per capita income is defined as increase in economic growth. National Income and per capita income are very useful in calculating development level and progress of a country. But it is not the suitable index to show the development and welfare progress of a country.

When we see personal ambitions and targets we notice that people not only want good income, but also require security, dignity, equality, freedom etc. So income is not the only important ingredient for the development of the nation. We cannot get developed social structure and good environment only by money. It was considered that people will be happy with increase of national income.

But it is now believed that economic development is not the only objective. There should be improvement in social, political and all other fields of life. Economic development means positive change in standard of living along with economic progress.

14.3.1 Economic Progress -

Economic progress is the increase in income or actual production of a country along with time. It indicates the increase in National Income and per capita income. It is the direct assessment of changes in economy. Generally it is seen as measurement of development. Economic progress is the development of natural, physical, human and capital resources of a country. By increase in quality and its best use highest standard of income and production can be achieved. Economic progress is a long term quantitative process.

There are no qualitative dimensions of economic progress. It is a value less concept. No attention is paid to changes in social, political and institutional conditions.

14.3.2 Economic Development-

Economic development is a broader concept than economic growth. It is a process in which net National Income and per capita income increase in an economy and there are also favourable changes in social status, cultural form, Institutional structure, techniques of production and economic structure. Economic development assures economic, social and political welfare of the nation. There are also qualitative aspects of economic development. These qualitative aspects cannot be expressed by increase in net National Income and per capita income. The sum total of economic development and favourable changes in social cultural, political and institutional structure is called economic development. Economic progress is an important aspect of economic development so there can be no development without progress. Economic development is considered more suitable than economic progress in measuring welfare and standard of development of a nation.

In development of social science when it was considered that the level of income and per capita income were insufficient criteria for measuring economic development, some other concepts of development like continuous development and human development became popular.

Continuous Development or Successive Development or Sustainable Development:-

Continuous development fulfils the present needs without compromising with capability of satisfying the needs of future generations. It is such an economic development which is done without harming natural resources. The development which is done maintaining natural resources is called continuous development.

Assimilated Development-

Assimilated development assures that benefits of development should reach the people of all the sections of the society. Many people are deprived of the benefits of development due to gender, linguistic, regional differences, poverty, and physical disability. Assimilated development insists on including deprived sections of society in the mainstream of development. It is a broad concept which favours equality of income, opportunity and human rights in every aspect of life.

Human Development-

The concept of human development came into existence in 1990 with the formation of Human Development Index. Under the leadership of Mehboob Ul Haq an index was prepared to measure the level of the human development by including three major aspects-knowledge, health (life expectancy) and standard of living (per capita income) by United Nations Development Programme. This index was prepared keeping in mind that last criteria of evaluating the results of development should be expansion of alternatives of mankind. In this procedure economic development is a means and not an end. This index made the issue of development from money oriented to human oriented. It is an effective index in measuring the level of development and welfare comparing between different nations.

14.4 Planning in India-

We want to use resources, time and money in such a way that maximum work can be performed by using these resources in a proper manner. First of all an outline is made to conduct any family function. After this the person or family tries to use resources in the best possible manner.

Just like a person or a family, a nation also wants to fulfil its many objectives by using the resource available in best possible way. Planning is a technique in which efforts are made to achieve objectives by distributing favourably the resources and fixing targets on priority basis. Planning has some important factors. First it has well defined definite aims and objectives. Secondly, estimation of available resources is done. Thirdly– after estimation, their distribution and use in various targets is important. Economic planning can be defined in many ways but in simple words, economic planning is the science of achieving certain social objectives by using available economic resources. Important decisions in economic planning are taken by a central authority. It determines management, speed and direction.

Planning is a technique of using available resources and achieving targets. A nation uses this technique in achieving different objectives like family planning, Economic Planning etc. When the technique of planning is used in the development of economy or to achieve desired economic objectives, it is called economic planning.

Technique of economic planning at the national level was first adopted by Soviet Union. Soviet Union declared central planning in 1928 and the path of economic planning was adopted through Five Year Plans. First Five Year plan proved to be a revolution in itself. After independence, India also joined the list of nations who adopted the model of economic planning at national level to achieve rapid economic development.

The idea of economic planning influenced the Indian scholars and intellectuals greatly. Many scholars presented several suggestions and supported the path of development during the decade of 1930 to 1940. The first effort in the history of Indian economic planning was made by Shri M.Vishveshvaraiya in 1934. He presented a programme in his book 'Planned Economy of India' for planned development in India.

After independence the government of India formed the Planning Commission under a resolution in March 1950. The main objective of the commission was to evaluate the resources of the country and make plans for the effective and balanced use of resources. Another important function of the commission was to fix various objects on priority basis and suggest the allotment of resources.

Planning Commission was an advisory and Constitutional institution. In August 1952 govt. of India established a National Development Council. The main objective behind its establishment was to include states and union territories in planning and execution and decentralization of planning process. National Development Council approves the plans prepared by Planning Commission and reviews the progress of plans from time to time. State chief ministers, administrators of deputy Governors of union territories are also its members. It is also a Constitutional and advisory board. Planning Commission works under the supervision of National Development Council.

14.4.1 Objectives of Economic Planning in India-

Planning in India was adopted as an important tool for transformation of the country. Before independence planning was adopted to fulfil the dreams for a good economic future of the country. In every five year plan many aims and objectives were fixed and efforts were made to achieve them. Main objectives of planning in India are given below in brief -

1. to achieve the objective of economic development
2. to solve the problem of poverty
3. to reduce the inequality in income. To establish social justice by ending inequality of income and poverty,
4. to make maximum use of human resources and provide more employment opportunities,
5. to achieve self dependence in all sectors specially in production of industrial raw material and food grains,
6. modernization of traditional Indian economy,
7. expansion of education and health services and achieve condition of social welfare,
8. to achieve economic stability because economic development is meaningless without economic stability,
9. rural development expansion of social and community services and increase in energy production,
10. to end regional inequalities.

14.4.2 Five Year Plans in India-

Twelve Five Year Plans have been made so far under the policy of planned economic development.

S.No.	Five Year Plan	Fixed Time
1.	First Five year plan	1st April 1951 to 31st March 1956
2.	Second Five year plan	1st April 1956 to 31st March 1961
3.	Third Five year plan	1st April 1961 to 31st March 1966
4.	Four Five year plan	1st April 1969 to 31st March 1974
5.	Fifth Five year plan	1st April 1974 to 31st March 1979
6.	Sixth Five year plan	1st April 1980 to 31st March 1985
7.	Seventh Five year plan	1st April 1985 to 31st March 1990
8.	Eight Five year plan	1st April 1992 to 31st March 1997
9.	Nineth Five year plan	1st April 1987 to 31st March 2002
10.	Tenth Five year plan	1st April 2002 to 31st March 2007
11.	Eleventh Five year plan	1st April 2007 to 31st March 2012
12.	Twelveth Five year plan	1st April 2012 to 31st March 2017

Indo-Pak war, continuous droughts, price-rise and depletion of resources interrupted the planning process so three annual plans were made between 1968 and 1969. This period is called as Plan Holiday.

The then Janata government ended the five year plan before time in 1978 and made continuous yearly plans from 1978 to 1983.

In 1980 the Congress government ended this continuous plan and announce sixth five year plan from 1 April 1981 to 31 March 1985. The financial year 1978 – 1979 was included in fifth plan and 1979-80 plan was considered as a one year plan. In the same way, the eighth five year plan could not be implemented due to rapidly changing political situation.

The basis of twelfth five year plan was assimilated and sustainable rapid development. The revised target of this plan was to achieve 8% growth rate.

There were also some other achievable targets like abolition of poverty, reducing unemployment and expansion of health and education services.

Rolling Plan-
Under this plan a current plan is updated and reviewed after a certain period of time. It has flexibility of changing targets, estimates, resource allocation and duration of current plan.

Niti Aayog -

Niti Aayog or National Institution for transfarming India was formed on 1st January 2015 under a resolution by the central cabinet. At present the Chairman of Niti Aayog is Honourable Prime Minister Shri Narendra Modi, Vice Chairman is Shri Arvind Pangadiya and the Chief Executive Officer is Shri Amitabh Kant.

All the state Chief Ministers and Deputy Governors of union territories are the members of Niti Aayog. Niti Aayog is providing technical advice along with making long term policies and strategic programmes for the government of India. It acts as a think tank for the government of India under its reform agenda. Government of India has formed Niti Aayog by discontinuing planning commission. It is an important change. All the states should work for the welfare of the nation and Niti Aayog is the best platform for it. It encourages cooperative federation. There are two main points in the formation of Niti Aayog - Team India Hub and Knowledge and Innovations Hub. Team India Hub joins state governments with Central Government. Knowledge and Innovation Hub strengthens the capacities of think tank of Niti Aayog. Niti Aayog is a revolutionary reform based on co operative federation.

Important Points:-

1. National Income is the total of income in a financial year by contributing in production process by all means.
2. Gross domestic product is the total monetary value of all goods and services during a financial year in the country.
3. National Income divided by population is per capita income of a country.
4. Central Statistical Organization performs the work of calculating National Income in India
5. In an economy the activities of production of goods and services have been classified in three parts – primary, secondary and tertiary sector.
6. Agriculture, animal husbandry and other produce are included in primary sector.
7. Manufacturing and construction work are included in Secondary Sector.
8. Tertiary Sector is known as Service sector. It is associated with production of services.
9. Economic progress means increasing National Income and per capita income. It is a quantitative concept.
10. Economic development means increasing National Income and per capita income along with Favourable Changes in economic structure, institutional structure, and technical and social outlook.
11. Economic planning is a science of achieving a fixed target by utilizing economic resources.
12. Twelve Five Year Plans have been made in India so far This work of making plans is done by Planning Commission.
13. Planning commission was replaced by Niti Aayog on 1st January 2015.
14. Niti Aayog works as an advisor to government, makes different policies and programmes.

EXERCISE

Very Short Answer Type Questions-

1. Define national income.
2. Define Gross Domestic Product.
3. When was the National Income Committee formed for calculation of national income?
4. Who performs the work of calculating National Income in India in the present

times?

5. Into how many sectors has economic been classified? Write their names.
6. Name three services included in tertiary sector.
7. Explain the meaning of economy development.
8. Write the name of the book written by Shri M. Vishvehvaraiya.
9. Which Five Year Plan was ended one year before completion?
10. Who is the Chairman of Niti Aayog?

Short Answer Type Questions-

1. Why should National Income be calculated? Give any three reasons.
2. Who made the first calculation of National Income and when?
3. Mention the names of three scholars who made calculations of national Income before independence.
4. Explain the concept of per capita income.
5. Explain the increasing importance of Tertiary Sector in India?
6. Explain the concept of economic progress.
7. How is the concept of economic development more elaborate than economic progress?
8. Explain the concept of economic planning.
9. what suggestions were made for planning before independence?
10. What is the tenure of twelfth plan? What are its major objectives?

Essay Type Questions-

1. What is national income? Explain the relation between national income and national product.
2. Describe in detail the different sectors of economy.
3. Describe the changes in the importance of different sectors of economy along with economic development.
4. What were the objectives of adopting technique of economic planning in India?
5. Write an essay on Niti Aayog.

Chapter-15

Characteristics and New Trends of Indian Economy

Indian economy was very poor at the time of independence. The British had damaged Indian agriculture, industries, trade, etc. in colonial period. When India got freedom, It was the biggest challenge before Indian economy to proceed rapidly on the path of development. During last few decades there have been great changes in the nature of Indian economy due to the efforts for development. Many Important decisions were taken in the decade of 1950 which fixed the road map of the development of Indian economy. The economic reforms like, Globalization, Privatization and Liberalization have played an important role to chalk out the course for future of Indian economy.

At present the Indian economy shows mixed characteristics of both undeveloped background and developing economy.

Economy- The system connected with the activities of production, trade, consumption etc. of the goods and services of a country or a region is called 'Economy'. For example, Indian economy.

1.1 Indian Economy in the form of Undeveloped Economy-

The low per capita income and quality of life (which can be determined by the level of health and education) shows the backwardness of economy. Increased hidden structural unemployment, population growth and excessive dependence on agriculture, old techniques of production etc. are the main characteristics of economic backwardness. These characteristics are present in our economy in the form of an undeveloped economy.

(i) Low Per Capita Income- Per capita income in India is very low which is the symbol of undeveloped economy. According to the World Bank report, India's per capita income was 1590 US dollars in 2015. India was at 170th place in the world regarding gross per capita income. India's per capita income stands not only lower than America, England, France, Germany, (developed countries) but also lower to neighbouring countries like- China and Srilanka. The living standard of poor remains low due the low per capita income.

(ii) Low quality of Life- Education and health both are the most effective factors of standard of life. These are basics of human welfare. The income is meaningless without these parameters. When people gain education and proper health, they will be able to use their income properly. The education level in India is very poor which can be observed through the rate of literacy. The literacy rate was 74.04 percent in India according to the census-2011. About one fourth of the population is illiterate even today. The level of health at birth time can be measured by the 'life expectancy'. According to World Bank report in 2014 India had 68 years life expectancy at birth time. Compared to Japan and China it is very low . The low level of education and health also presents the undeveloped form of Indian economy.

Life Expectancy at birth – The statistical measures of expected average life of an infant in the current demographic situations is called the life expectancy at birth.

(iii) Problem of poverty- India is also facing the problem of poverty like other undeveloped countries. There were 21.82% poor people in 2011-12 according to Suresh Tendulkar. Poverty is the state of a person in which he is unable to fulfill his basic needs. Since Independence there has been no solution of poverty till now. Poverty can be considered as the biggest challenge for Indian economy. A very slow progress has been detected in the direction of fulfilling basic needs and our economy seems ineffective in comparision to other countries. The advantages of progress have not reached to the weaker sections of society. One fourth of the population is still cobwebbed in the vicious circle of poverty also. No country can come out of its backwardness having the problem of poverty. So our economy is certainly undeveloped.

(iv) Too much Dependence on Agriculture- As our economy develops, dependence on agriculture decreases and dependence on Industry and service sector increases. Dependence on agriculture has decreased in India very slowly. About 72% population was dependent on agriculture at the time of Independence. Still today 49% employments depend on agriculture and related sectors. The labour movement from agricultural to non agricultural sector has increased but slowly. It is a symbol of undeveloped economy of India dependent on agriculture.

(v) Demographic Factor- Many demographic factors show the backwardness of Indian economy. The birth rate is very high in India. Mother, child and infant mortality rates are too high. The rate of population growth is very high in India. In the decade of 2001 to 2011 the rate of population growth in India has been 17.64%. It can be said that population growth in India every year is equal to the total of Australian population. The size of Indian population is very big and it is prepetually growing in a rapid mode.

Demography: Scientific and statistical study of human population is called Demography.

(vi)The Problem of Unemployment- The main characteristic of undeveloped countries is the problem of structural and hidden unemployment.Due to the flawed structure and prepetual structural changes in these nations this type of unemployment is generated. The magnitude of demand changes due to the structural changes happened in various sectors. So it causes imbalance between demand and supply. Due to India's high dependence on agriculture and slow development of Indian agriculture and of industrial and service sectors, it faces the problem of hidden unemployment. Although there are many kinds of hidden unemployment, yet mostly hidden and structural unemployment can be seen which is very serious.

Hidden unemployment means that a person seems working but his contribution in production is very low or about zero. In India, in a farmer's family all the members work in domestic agriculture but the contribution of many of them is zero. It is difficult to estimate the hidden unemployment.

(vii)Obsolete Technology-The major factor for economic backwardness is poor technology of production. Productivity level is low due to lack of modern technology. It was considered for long time that natural resources are the most effective factors of development but the fast development of Japan proved the role of technology to be so. The major cause of Indian economy's slow progress is only lack of the new technology. The expenditure on technological devoplment in India is very little. Importance is not given to

research and inventions. So, India is technically undeveloped even today.

(viii) Other characteristics - Besides the above characteristics, the wide inequality, weak basic structure etc. express the form of Indian economy. According to United States Development Programme report 2015 shown on the subject of Human growth Index, India stood at 130th place. In this regard we are grouped in the countries of average human development Index. Our neighbouring China (90th position) and SriLanka (73rd position) are ranked ahead of India. We are also worried about the present economic and non-economic disparities. There is unequal distribution of income, capital, and also diffrerence in social structure found in India. There are many disparities in India based on gender, and vast differences on the basis of availability of educational and health services too. The infrastructure of India is too very weak. Because of this, Indian economy is facing the problem of low productivity, high production cost and slow growth in production. It is clear that Indian economy is an undeveloped economy.

Infrastructure - The infrastructure stands for the availability of goods and services which makes the mechanism of economics easy. They increase the productivity and give base to the economic development. Eg. roads, electricity, education, health, insurance, banking etc.

15.2 Indian Economy is in Developing Form- From the above study it can be concluded that Indian economy is undeveloped. But it is not absolutley true. Indian economy is improving. Moving fast on the road of progress during last few years, many favourable changes have been taken place with effective economic and social reforms. It can be termed as a developing economy. National Income and per capita income both are increasing continuously and many constructive changes are being made in favourable direction.

(i)Prepetual and rapid growth in National and Per Capita Income :

The perpetual and rapid growth in the national and per capita income of India is the most effective character of Indian economy in its developing form. The development rate in 1950 was only 3.5% per year. Dr. Rajkrishna termed this as the Hindu Development Rate. In 1980 this rate reached at 5% and between 1991 and 2011, the economy of India increased 6.8% per year on an average. During 11th five year plan (2007-2012) the growth rate of India was 8%. At present on the basis of growth rate, Indian economy is one of the fastest growing economies in the world. The improvement in India's economic growth rate began in 1980s, but the economic progress was seen remarkable after the economic reforms of the decade of 1990. Indian economy is improving fast due to efforts and reforms made by the present Government.

The measurement of economic development is based on the growth in per capita income. It increased during the period of 1950-51 to 1990-91 at the average rate of 1.6% per year. Almost in all years after 1990-91 the annual growth rate of per capita income has been maintained at more than 5% per year.

In the year of 2015-16, 6.2% per capita income growth was recorded. The continuous and rapid growth in per capita income as well as in national income can be considered as a great achievment of Indian economy.

Normally the growth rate of actual national income or Gross Domestic Product (GDP) is called

Economic Growth Rate.

(ii) Change In Economic Structure- Economic structure changes along with development. As economy develops, Primary Sector (agriculture) level goes down, while secondary (industry) and tertiary (service) sector level goes up. In India the share of agriculture in National Income was more than 50% in 1950-51, which came down to 15% in 2015-16. There was a huge increase in the contribution of industry and service sectors in the national income. The contribution of the secondary sector (industry) in the National Income has risen more than one fourth. Role of the service sector has been increased rapidly in national income. At present about 60% of National Income is generated by the service sector. It is clear that the contribution of Primary Sector is gradually decreasing. And the share of secondary and tertiary sector is increasing continuously. Tertiary sector is increasing faster than the secondary sector. This change in the structure of economy shows its developing form.

It is believed that secondary sector creates more employment than the service sector. So due to relatively sluggish growth of secondary sector, the problem of unemployment in India has become serious.

(A) Huge and rapidly growing Service Sector- Huge service sector is found all developed countries. By continuous fast growth rate service sector in India has become now the largest sector of the economy. At present the service sector is producing about 60% part of national income. Along with the growth rate of service sector being high than the growth rate of agriculture and industries, India is one of the top ten countries in the of world service trade and India has strong potential to emerge as Super Power in its service sector. Extensive and continuously growing service sector is the indicator of the developement of Indian economy.

(B) Change in Commercial Structure- Changes in commercial structure also show that Indian economy is a developing economy. Almost 72 percent of the workforce in 1951 was employed in agriculture and allied sectors. It has come at a steady decrease. At present less than 50% of working population is employed in agriculture and allied sectors.

Today more than half of the Indian work power is getting employment in industry and service sectors.

(iii) Improvments in Economic and Social Infrastructure: Economic and social infrastructure in India is changing rapidly. India's total installed power generation capacity has increased about 100 times in the last 65 years. The total length of Indian roads was about 4 lakh kilometers, which at present has reached about 50 lakh kilometers. Similarly there has been a massive expansion of banking and insurance services. Literacy rate was 18.3% in 1951 which increased to 74.04% in 2011. Similarly, life expectancy at the time of birth in 1951 was 32.1 years which became 68 years in year 2014. The improvement in this economic and social infrastructure are the pillars of development.

On the basis of education and health service expansion, we can say that Indian economy is a developing economy.

(iv) Other factors- Here, foreign trade is changing positively. Indian population growth rate is coming down sufficiently. In the decade of 1961 to 1971 the growth rate of India was 24.80%. Falling down it became 17.64% in the decade of 2001 to 2011. All these factors are the indicators of development of Indian economy. On the basis of the study we can say that although many characteristics of undeveloped

economy are seen in Indian economy still it is proceeding fast on the path of development. Due to this rapid growth of development the Indian economy will certainly become a developed economy one day.

15.3 Economic Reforms- (Privatization, Liberalization and Globalization)

After independence India adopted the policy of planned development and mixed economy.By giving public sector a powerful place it was made a chief motive of development. Private sector was kept under control. During 1950 to 1990 so many rules and regulations were made for the operation and management of the economy that the development process was almost stopped. Besides this, the government had to spend a big amount of its resources on defence and social sectors too.

Many times, the money borrowed from international organizations and other countries was spent in an irresponsible manner on consumption functions by the government. The expenditures of the government were more than its income. The government was going to increase amounts of loan to fulfil their expenses. There was clear absence of Fiscal discipline in government policies.

Fiscal Discipline: Refers to the policies and efforts made by government which are adopted to reduce the load of deficit and debts on government.

Along with fiscal indiscipline, the Indian economy was suffering from trade deficit. No care was taken to curb the rising import and to promote export before 1990.

TRADE DEFICIT – The superiority of Imports over exports in a country is measure of its economy. It shows the increased value of the import over the values of exports of that country. This is the measure of deficit in goods trade of the country. The Industries were given unimportant protection in the economic policies of 1950 to 1990. Unskilled management of companies and other economic bodies took place. There was a lack of expertise in the use of resources. The whole structure of the economy was defective. So the production prices increased and the level of production decreased very much.

The slow growth in production, maximum public expenses and other reasons created the problem of inflation. The increasing prices of commodities shook the whole economy. Due to these circumstances the balance of payments for India remained adverse, and the foreign exchange reserve reduced to a low. In early ninties the foreign exchange reserve of India had been reduced to such a point that India could barely finance two weeks worth of import.

Balance of Payments: A brief account of a country's transaction with rest of the world in a finacial year is defined as 'Balance of Payments'.

Govt. of India applied economic reforms according to New Economic Policy in July 1991 to reform the fiscal imbalance, defective structure of economy and the crisis of balance of payments. Although the process of economic liberarlisation had started in 1980's, yet it was not regulated at that time with absolute seriousness. Thus, these problems became intense. India requested for financial assistance from two international organizations named World Bank and International Monetary Fund in that condition in 1991. These organizations provided loans to India on certain conditions. India followed these conditions and announced a new economic policy in 1991 and implemented economic reforms.

World Bank- In 1944 by the agreement of Bretton Woods conference, International Bank of Reconstruction and Development was established. Generally it is known as World Bank.

Under economic reforms the solutions of economic stability and structural reforms were implemented. The solutions of economic stability were short termed in nature. Under this, solutions to control the problem balance of payments and inflation

were included. Structural reforms were long termed in nature. Their objectives were to increase reform of economic structure and workability. Under these reforms the government redefined its policies and started many new schemes. Economic reforms were implemented through the process of liberalization, privatization and globalization.

15.3.1. Liberalization: In Economics, the meaning of liberalization is the process to simplify the economic policies, rules and laws. The government was in the role of economic controller and producer in the development policy adopted before 1991. Many controls and regulations were imposed to play this role. The government's plans in 1991 in the new economic policy to eliminate unnecessary controls and restrictions were called liberalization. Under these plans a new economic policy was announced in July 1991 and the process of expansive reforms started in various sectors of the economy. Comprehensive reforms were introduced in financial sector, external sector, foreign exchange, management etc. and several unnecessary rules and controls were eliminated.

By the process of liberalization, Indian economy transformed from socialist mixed economist to capitalist mixed economy. Interference of the government decreased by this and the Indian economy started to transform into free market or capitalist economy. Structured rigidness of the economy ended through liberalization. Therefore it can be said that liberalization refers to the process of simplifying the activities of production and trade by eliminating government obstacles in economic sector and policies.

What is called Liberalization in India, in actual terms means implementation of foreign experiments without giving it any thought. Mixed economy of India was reached such crossroad, from where it was impossible to return to the actual meaning of Swadeshi due to its inclination towards Liberalization. Liberalist countries took advantage of this situtaion and India emerged on world platform in the form of a new research laboratory in the name of economic Liberalism. Our large population and its potential middle class emerged on the horizon of liberalist countries. It was impossible for the future governments to move ahead on the path on which the earlier government had placed the country as a big market in the name of Globalization.

15.3.2 Privatization- In economy the process which increases the role of private sector, is called Privatization. In this economy more chances are given to the private sector and the role of public sector is decreased. In the process of privatization all such economic policies are included which promote the expansion of private sector. Traditionally, privatization meant the process of giving away ownership and control of public or state properties in the private hands.

The industrial policies adopted after independence to 1990 many industries were reserved only for the public sector and the license was a requisite for the establishment of them. As a result of this the public sector unnecessarily expanded and productivity of this sector reached a low. Many public sector establishments had become a burden on the government, Industrial licensing was almost abolished in the economic policy of 1991 and a decline in the number of reserved industries for public sector opened new doors of development for the private sector. With privatisation in 1991 those sectors which were hitherto banned were also opened.

Disinvestment is also made in government sector under privatization. This is also a method of privatization. Disinvestment is the process of liquidation of assets in actual form, but in general form it refers to the selling of state's share from public sector undertaking to private sector. The government or state can sell a part of its share or its entire stake in public sector undertaking to the private sector. Disinvestment programme was started in 1991-1992 for privatization in India. Government got assistance in establishing fiscal discipline through privatization. Competitive power of economy was enhanced due to this.

15.3.3 Globalization- The assimilation of domestic economy with world economy is known as Globalization. Globalization is such a process through which national economies expand out of their political boundaries. Globalization increases economic openness and economic dependence between countries. Free flow of products and

services, free flow of capital and consolidated financial market, free flow of labour, free flow of technology and spread of knowledge, between various countries is included in various dimensions of Globalization.

After the Independence many restrictions were imposed on foreign trade and foreign investment in India. This was considered essential in order to provide protection to domestic producers to compete with foreign goods. In the year 1991 the government decided that time has come for the Indian producers to compete with world producers. It was believed that workability of industries and quality of goods will be improved through competition. In the process of globalization, ban on foreign trade and investment was lifted up to a large extent. Obstacles in trade were removed and imports were facilitated. Barring a few items, most of the items have been allowed for free trade.

Multinational companies are playing an important role in the process of globalization. A multinational company is one which controls and keeps ownership of production in more than one country. At present time investment and technology is being exchanged in services amongst various countries. Exchange of information and communication technology has provided a rapid pace to globalization. This has played a major role in increasing production and services in various countries. With the help of information and communication technology, India has also obtained the benefits of globalization by selling its services in the international market. The process of globalization has improved the allocation of resources in the entire world and has made them more functional. Production costs have declined as a result of this, and quality of goods has been enhanced. International monetary, fund, World Bank and World Trade Organization have played an important role in implementing this profitable process of globalization and making it a success.

World Trade Organization was established on 1st January 1995. It performs the work of formation of trade policies and coordination between nations. It also implements and controls multilateral trade agreements. It provides a suitable forum for agreements and discussions to its member nations. It also settles trade disputes between various nations.

15.4 The Concept of Swadeshi- The concept of Swadeshi is an effective economic policy of India with the viewpoint of further strengthening the economic condition of the country. The term 'Swadeshi' means 'of one's own country'. In today's age of globalization, various foreign companies have come to India and started production over here. In this changing scenario, the term 'Swadeshi' is now used for goods and services produced by Indian companies. Therefore at present time the concept of swadeshi lays emphasis on using those goods and services which are made by Indian companies and Industries under the country and avoid goods made by foreign companies. Products made by Tata, Godrej, Amul, Hero, Bajaj, Patanijali etc. are examples of swadeshi goods.

The concept of Swadeshi is not a new concept for Indian economy. This idea has performed the work of unifying the nation on various occassions. The spirit of Swadeshi had played a significant role in the Indian war of Independence. In Swadeshi movement for independence, a policy of revival of domestic industries and occupations and boycotting of foreign goods was adopted.

Mahatma Gandhi used Swadeshi as a weapon in the freedom struggle. Gandhiji made each and every Indian citizen aware and inspired them to adopt Swadeshi. Mahatma Gandhi believed that India should also be self dependent along with being independent and self ruled. The concept of swadeshi is an effective concept in context of making India self dependent.

The concept of swadeshi lost its importance for some time with the beginning of Globalization in early 1990s. Gradually the developing nations realized that the developed nations ignored the rules of World Trade Organization and did not follow the policy of free trade honestly. Developing nations got some benefites by the globalization, but the losses were more in comprasion. Due to the pressure of globalization and competition, various Indian industries and trade were destroyed and the problem of unemployment became more severe. Due to international laws and agreements, Indian

government does not put effective sanctions on foreign companies. These conditions forced the citizens of India to think about all this. In the absence of judicious globalization, the demand for swadesh again started to rise. In the present time the increasing spirit of nationalism has made the concept of Swadeshi more meaningful.

The spirit of swadeshi produces a socio-economic revolution. It infuses the spirit of patriotism and dedication amongst the citizens. Following are some important benefits of Swadeshi:

1. Demand of goods produced by Indian industries will increase due to the concept of swadeshi. Immense opportunities of development of Indian industries will emerge due to this.
2. Domestic product and National Income of the country will rise by adopting swadeshi goods.
3. Indian companies are more laborious as compared to foreign companies. Therefore, along with the promotion of swadeshi employment opportunities in India will definitely increase.
4. Due to increase in domestic production, import will decline and valuable foreign currency spent in importing various goods will be saved.
5. Foreign companies take away a large amount of wealth from India to their respective countries in the form of profits and dividends. This outflow of capital will be checked if swadeshi is adopted.
6. A country's self-dependence increases by adopting swedeshi. In situations of emergency, self-dependence acts as a major protective layer.
7. The government receives comparatively greater revenue by increased domestic production.
8. The work culture of Swadeshi companies is also favourable for the country. These companies make sensible use of natural resources.
9. Some nations earn huge profits by selling their products in India and even after this they create problems for India by opposing our country on international plateform. Such nations will come under pressure if swadeshi goods are used.
10. The spirit of swadeshi enhances the feeling of nationalism.

Nationalism is an influential factor for development of the country.

In the context of swadeshi, we should remember that in the name of 'liberalization', 'privatization' and 'globalization', the human and natural resources of our country should not be exploited in such a way, that nothing remains to be utilized by our future generations. The concept of globalization is already present in the civilization and culture of India in the form that the entire world is a family and every citizen of this family should remain healthy and happy. In Indian tradition, we pay attention to another's health and happiness on the basis of keeping every citizen of the world healthy and happy, while the form in which globalization is defined by Europe and America, it only concentrates on making more and more profits. Swadeshi economy is such a concept under which all the persons move forward for the welfare of the entire world instead of welfare of a person, family, community or state. We all should move from individualism to totality.

15.5 Skill Development

Labour is the most important resource as compared to all other sources of production. When labour is provided capability and skill through education, health and training, it becomes human wealth. Human wealth refers to skilled, capable, knowledgeable and experienced human resource. It is clear that skill is an important factor in converting human resources into human wealth. Productivity of labour enhances due to skill. Skill refers to the qualification and capability of performing work in an efficient way. Workforce can be made more productive by skill development. It is a well known fact that high level of productivity increases the opportunities of

employment for and quality of workforce. It can be said that availability of skill is a valuable indicator of benefit, production and welfare of workforce. Today, around 65 per cent population of India is included in the working age group (15 years to 64 years). When population is productive, it is beneficial for a nation, otherwise it is not. Through skill development, qualification, productivity the standard of living of a person is enhanced and he can give greater contribution towards economic development of the nation.

Noticing this importance of skill, there is an immense requirement to lay emphasis on skill development in a labour dominated country such as India. Realizing the importance of skill in the development of the country, Government of India launched National Skill Development mission on 15th July 2015. The major objective of this mission is to achieve the target of skilled India by providing training in various skills. Honourable Prime Minister Mr. Narendra Damodardas Modi is the head of this mission. After independence, this is the first incident in which the Ministry of Skill Development and Entrepreneurship has been formed to prepare employment oriented youth. This is one such initiative of the government of India under which youths are being provided with skills through various training programmes and curriculums. Pradhan Mantri Kaushal Vikas Yojana (PMKVY) alone has helped lakhs of people in making their lives prosperous. Skill development can be regarded as one of the several steps for public welfare taken by the government of India. We all know that the success of a nation always depends upon the efficiency of its workforce. Through skill development, workforce of India will get numerous benefits and opportunities. Consequently every Indian citizen will become prosperous and capable of living a respectable life.

Important Points

1. Rapid and continuous development in National Income and per capita income of India in the past decades is an indicator of India's developing economy.
2. Favourable changes taking place in the form, professional structure and basic infrastructure also exhibit the developing form of Indian economy.
3. In 1991 CE, India made a big change in its development policy and announced various economic reforms.
4. In order to improve the condition of fiscal imbalance, defective structure of economy, problem of balance of payments, economic reforms were adopted under the new economic policy.
5. Economic reforms were implemented through the process of liberalization, privatization and globalization.
6. Liberalization refers to the process of eliminating unnecessary controls and restrictions and bringing the government in the role of a service provider.
7. Privatization refers to all those policies which give increasing importance to private sector and limit the interference of the government.
8. Globalization is the process of unifying domestic economy with world economy.
9. Through economic reforms, improvement has been made in the structure of Indian economy and the rate of economic development has increased.
10. The concept of swadeshi lays emphasis on adopting goods produced by Indian companies and boycotting goods made by foreign companies and imported items.
11. India will get various social and economic benefits by adopting swadeshi. By promotion of the concept of swadeshi. Indian economy will become increasingly self-dependent.
12. Skill development enhances the productivity of labour. The government is making serious efforts to provide skills to Indian youths and make them job oriented.

EXERCISE

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. What was the per capita National Income of India in the year 2015?
2. Which factors are used to measure the quality of human life?

3. What was the percentage of Indian workforce engaged in agriculture at the time of independence?
4. What was the population growth rate of India during 2001-2011?
5. Which institution prepares Human Development Index report for the entire world?
6. When did the Indian government implement economic reforms?
7. What is liberalization? Explain.
8. Write the meaning of Privatization.
9. What is the meaning of Globalization?
10. What is human wealth?
11. Explain the meaning of the concept of Swadeshi.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. "Low standard of living exhibits the underdeveloped form of Indian economy." Elucidate.
2. Mention the census characteristics which portray the backwardness of Indian economy.
3. Explain the condition of excessive dependence of Indian economy on agriculture.
4. What do the changes, which took place in the National Income of India in the past decade, show?
5. Which changes have taken place in the form and structure of Indian economy due to the process of Liberalization?
6. What do you mean by Disinvestment?
7. Explain the various dimensions of globalization.
8. Mention the advantages of globalization.
9. Mention the reasons due to which the concept of swadeshi has become relevant in today's age of globalization.
10. Write a note on skill development.

Essay Type Questions

1. Throw light on the characteristics which exhibit the developing nature of Indian economy.
2. What were the reasons behind adopting economic reforms in India during the decade of 1990s? Present a detailed analysis.
3. Mention the economic reforms adopted under the New Economic Policy.
4. Mention the advantages obtained from using swadeshi goods.
5. Why is skill development important? What steps have been taken by the government for skill development

Lesson-16

Challenges Before Indian Economy

India is one of the fastest growing economies in the world today and the whole world is accepting its growing economic power. But along with this development the Indian economy has to face many challenges. **We learn from** discussion in newspapers, among public, on T.V channels and various information from the internet, that there are many challenges before the Indian economy like price rise, poverty and unemployment and these are serious ones. These problems are Inter-linked and have persisted since independence.

It will not be an exaggeration to accept that poverty and unemployment are the most prominent socio-economic problems of the Indian economy. Due to these problems not only does the economy face negative situations, but the society also has to bear many hardships. In order to broaden our general sense and knowledge in this context, we need to understand the meaning, form, cause, result and preventive measures required for its dimension.

16.1 Price rise or Inflation-

We buy many kinds of goods and services from the market to fulfill our needs and make life comfortable. You must have bought textile, toys, confectioneries, slippers, sweets, ice-creams etc. or seen your relatives buying items for the needs of families. You must have observed that you pay higher price compared to the previous years. The scenario of these rising prices is known as inflation. In financial terms the word 'inflation' is used for the appreciation of the currency.

Price- In monetary system, the exchange of the unit of an item or a service with all those units of the currency is called the price of that item or that service.

In description the situation of continuous increase in the general price level is termed as inflation.

It indicates the average increase in price of a group of things or commodities. It is possible that in the market you are experiencing an increase in the prices of vegetables while newspapers are showing low inflation. On the contrary it is also possible that you are observing a fall in the prices of some commodities, but the newspapers are reporting about inflation. Inflation is related to the increase in the average level of prices of many commodities in the economy but not in the increase of the price of one item.

The meaning of general price level is the average of price levels of many items or a group of single item. So the general price level does not indicate the price of one item. It expresses the average price of a fixed group of commodities.

16.1.1 Measurement of Inflation-

In order to safeguard against price rise and to control it effectively, it is necessary to measure it. Therefore all economies have different types of price indexes for measuring the rate of inflation. In order to measure the change in general price level, a variety of price indexes are prepared in India too. These indices include wholesale price index, consumer price index and national income index. These indices measure the average change in the prices of a fixed group of commodities. Inflation is measured in proportionate change or percentage change over time in a fixed price index.

The indices express the average of measurable units on different scales. Indices indicate changes in the size of a variable in relation to a given base.

16.1.2 Inflation in India-

Inflation rate in India is generally measured with the wholesale price index. Since the time of Independence, the rate of high inflation has been a serious problem in India. In the decade of 1950, the average rate of inflation was pegged at 1.7 percent, But in 1960s it became 6.4 percent. In the seventies, it reached more than 9 percent. The period of high inflation continued till 1995 A.D. After this there was a fall in inflation and between 2000-2001 and 2011-2012 it remained around 4.7 percent.

16.1.3 Losses from Inflation-

A common man realizes that due to inflationary spiral, he has to pay more than the previous price. But the problem does not end here. Rise in price or value creates a series of losses for both individual and the nation. It reduces the value of currency. Due to inflation, less quantity of goods and services can be purchased by a certain amount of currency as compare to the previous years.The constantly rising inflation drops the value of currency rapidly.

The value of currency means its purchasing power which expresses its ability to purchase goods and services.

Due to the inflation, there is a loss to the fixed salary group and wage earners. This class gets the decreased value of currency for similar tasks and services. Inflation is considered to be unjustifiable as it reduces the value of savings of the common man. And the debtor is benefitted from inflation because he has to pay back low price of the currency.

Inflation also affects the rate of economic growth, poverty, unemployment, inequality, and distribution of wealth. This will be studied in higher classes. In essence, it can be said that currency inflation eliminates the benefits of development, so it needs to be kept under control.

16.1.4 Demand Driven and Cost Driven Form of Inflation-

Who determines inflation, means, what are the causes of inflation? why does it fluctuate? In order to get the answers of the questions it is essential to know the demand driven and cost driven forms of inflation by the concepts of aggregate demand and aggregate supply. The sum of expected expenditure on the final commodities and services produced in a country is called the aggregate demand. The level of the aggregate demand includes the sum of- demand for consumption, demand of goods for the investment, purchase of goods by the government and the sum of exports to abroad . Aggregate supply refers to the amount of production that an economy can produce through given resources and available technology.

Imbalances arising out between aggregate demand and aggregate supply in the economy generate changes in the prices. In the condition of an increase in the aggregate demand or the decrease in the aggregate supply or if both the conditions arises at the same time then a pressure on the prices is generated upwards.. When the inflation increases due to the increase in aggregate demand, it is called demand driven inflation. Inflation generated due to the downfall in aggregate supply because of increasing costs is called cost driven inflation.

16.1.5 Reasons of Inflation-

There is no definite reason for inflation. It is the result of many reasons. Some major factors responsible for inflation are mentioned below:-

(a) Fast Growth in supply of Currency-

Many economists of the world have the opinion that excessive supply of the currency than the need is chiefly responsible for inflation. In the economy, when the supply of money increases rapidly in comparison to the production of goods and services, then the a huge amount of currency runs behind a few items. Due to this, at a given price level the level of aggregate demand becomes higher than the level of aggregate supply and the tendency of rise in the prices is generated.

(b) Slow Growth in Industrial and Agricultural Production-

After the Independence the rate of industrial growth in India went lower than the expected rate. Between 1965 and 1985, the performance of the industry was very disappointing. Demand for industrial products has been steadily increasing for many reasons, but the industry has failed to satisfy this demand. Growing demands in the industrial sector increased the price rapidly.

Despite many reforms and revolutions, the productivity of Indian agriculture is very low. With

this, the Indian agricultural production failed to satisfy the demand. In such a situation, high demand of agricultural products is increasing their prices steadily.

(c) High level of public expenditure-

Due to the growing responsibilities along with the development, government expenditures have increased steadily. This increase of government outlay is not fully profitable for the society.

The unproductive expenditure made by the government does not increase the aggregate supply, but by granting purchasing power to the public, the aggregate demand increases. This results in inflation conditions.

(d) Other Reasons -

Due to the growing population the level of demand for goods and services in India always remains high. Many items are priced by the government. When the government increases the cost of these items to reduce its deficit, then the problem of price rise is seen in the economy. Expensive imports, high minimum supports prices for agricultural products, rising level of income, higher level of indirect taxes ,higher rates of daily wages, obstacles in the growth of industrial production are also the reasons for growing Inflation.

16.1.6 Measures to Control Inflation -

There is no definite reason for inflation so it is not easy to control it. Inflation produces many difficulties before the country. So it is necessary to stop it. Following are the measures that can be taken to control inflation.

(a) MonetryMeasures-

Monetary measures are adopted by Central Bank of India (Reserve bank of India) to control the inflation. Under these measures, the Central Bank tries to reduce the availability demand and increase the aggregate supply through the amount of currency, availability of credit and by manipulating the interest rates.. When the amount of money or the credit reduces, the aggregate demand also decreases, Thus the inflation also goes down.

(b) Fiscal Measures-

Fiscal measures are also taken by the government. Through these measures, the government tries to control the aggregate demand and increase the aggregate supply by making changes in taxation, reducing public expenditure and public debts. The government can reduce inflation by increasing direct tax,reducing public expenditure and controlling aggregate demand and by public debts. The government can also control inflation through increasing the aggregate supply by reducing indirect taxes and increasing investment in productive measures.

(c) Other Reasons-

In addition to the appropriate measures mentioned above, through the public distribution system, necessary goods should be made available at the low price shops, by importing goods which excessively sought after. The price increase can also be checked by decreasing administrative expences. The investment incentive for agriculture and industries by government is also useful in controlling the inflation by increasing the aggregate supply.

16.2 Poverty-

Poverty is a situation in which an individual fails to fulfill his minimum living requirements. Poverty is a broad concept with many dimensions, but in general the word poverty is derived from economic point of view, ie. lack of wealth and resources is called poverty.

We see that on one hand some people live in such homes which are very big and beautiful and on the other hand some people do not have a home or live in mud houses. You must have seen many children who are not able to attend school. They have to go at work to fulfil their family needs. We can say that some people in the society are rich and some are poor. The poor lack wealth and they do not enjoy a minimum level of food, clothing, housing, education, health etc. for leading a peaceful life.

16.2.1 Absolute Poverty and Relative Poverty-

Absolute Poverty- A level of minimum or basic needs is set for the subsistance in this . After this, those people are considered in the state of absolute poverty who cannot attain the fixed level of the minimum requirements. Therefore, absolute poverty is a situation in which a person does not

meet the minimum requirements of life. The idea of absolute poverty is more relevant in undeveloped nations. When the word 'poverty' is used in nations like India, it means 'absolute poverty'.

The standard level of minimum or fundamental requirements varies in all the nations. This standard depends on the status of the nation's development, the level of life of people, inflation status in the economy etc. These factors are different in all nations. Thus in all countries the measure of poverty is also different.

Relative poverty-

The measure of relative inequalities in the various groups of society or nation in the distribution of income, money,or consumption expenditure is called the Relative Poverty. This idea is comparatively more relevant in developed countries.

16.2.2 Measurement of Poverty in India-

The first attempt to measure poverty in India was made by Dada Bhai Naroji in 1868 A.D. Estimates of poverty were presented by the independent national Planning Committee. After independence, a study team was formed by the Planning Commission in 1962 to determine the poverty line and define poverty. In 1971, V.M. Dandekar and Nilkantha Ratha defined a criterion for poverty. In this context, the year 1979 is significant, when the "working group on effective consumption demand and minimum requirement" which is also known as Y.K. Alagh committee submitted its report related to poverty. On the basis of this report, it was decided by the government that 2400 calories per person in cities and 2100 calories per person in rural areas should be given daily. If a person receives less calories than stated above, is considered poor. Its is called calorie or consumption based poverty line. After this the working groups were also formed by planning commission in the chairmanship of D.T. Lakadwala, Suresh Tendulkar and C. Rangarajan to assess the poverty. Poverty estimates were made by Lakadwala formula for the year 1993-94 and 2004-05.

According to Suresh Tendulkar and C. Rangarajan consumption- expenditure has been considered as the base of determining poverty. To determine the poverty line they prepared a 'minimum quantity group of food and non-food items (poverty line basket) and estimated that how much consumption expenditure is required to purchase this minimum quantity group of commodities at the market price. In their estimates they found that in 2011-2012 a person having less than ` 1000 per capita monthly consumption in urban areas and less than 816 per capita in rural areas is poor. On the basis of Suresh Tendulkar's estimates, 21.92% of the population in India is poor. That is, about 27 crore people are living below the poverty line.

C. Rangrajan considered ` 927 per capita monthly consumption expenditure in rural areas and ` 1407 per capita monthly consumption expenditure in urban areas as poverty line. On this basis, poverty in India was 29.5% in 2011-12 a person consuming ` 1000 per month in urban areas and ` 816 in rural areas is poor.

The United Nations Development Programme and Oxford poverty Human Development initiative created multi-dimensional poverty index which was released in the 2010 Human Development report. Three dimensions and ten indicators were used to assess this poverty index. In India, the work of the compilation of reliable data is done by the National Sample Survey Organization. Many experts get assessments on the basis of the data related to consumption -expenditure collected during various trips.

Recall period- Two types of recall period is used to compile the datas for the assessment and presumption of the poverty. Consumption-expenditure datas are collected for 30 days in the Unifom Recall Period (URP). In Mixed Recall Period two different periods (30 days and 365 days) are used jointly to compile the datas of consumption- expenditure on food and non food itmes.

16.2.3 Reasons for Poverty-

In India social, economic and political factors are responsible for poverty. Reasons are

described as follows:-

(a) Social factors:

The basic structure of India has increased poverty. Birth, marriage and death related traditions are the reasons which put a man in to debt. A person does not come out of the burden of debt throughout his life. The desire for a son has contributed in the growing population which is a big factor of poverty.The rural Hindu society divided into castes was such in a condition where a large backward section of the society was made to live in an inferior state And it was not given any approtunity to come out of constant poverty for a long time.

In the discussion of the causes of poverty, the name of Regener Knerks is very important. Knerks presented the hypothesis of the vicious cycle of poverty and thought that a nation is poor as it is already poor. The implication of the vicious cycle of poverty is that the cause of poverty is poverty itself and the result of poverty too is poverty.

(b) Economic Factors-

Most of the people of India are victims of economic backwardness. People cannot invest in education and health in the state of economic backwardness due to which the quality of their lives remains low. Due to low quality they get less income and they can-not come out of the vicious cycle of poverty. Before independence most of the Indians relied on agriculture and their base of resources was very weak. Due to lack of investment, agricultural productivity remained low. For these reasons the income incurred by small farmers and agriculture labourers is still continued to remain at the minimum level of livelihood. Economic backwardness reduces the availability of opportunities for a person. In the absence of opportunities,a person can not come out of the vicious cycle of poverty.

(c) Political factors- The lack of political will is responsible for the gruesome poverty in India. No special efforts were made by the government to eliminate poverty since the fifth five year plan. Many schemes were set up by different governments for poverty iradication but due to lack of political will the benefits of these schemes could not reach the target population. There are many leakages in our administration too. Due to the direct benefit transfer policy being adopted by the current government, there has been a significant reduction in these leakages.

(d) Other Factors- Low level of education, lack of entrepreneurship, lack of employment oriented and vocational education, poor infrastructure, lack of capital formation and unavailability of health services in India are responsible for the awful conditions of poverty. We have low levels of productivity and income in the country, which is a major cause of poverty. There is lack of self confidence in poor because of poverty, so they are not in a position to take financial risk, and they cannot come-out of the vicious cycle of poverty by establishing their own profession. Poverty also grows due to inflation or price rise. Due to the increase in prices many people cannot afford to buy goods related to their basic needs for their livelihood; and move below the poverty line.

Read:-

Rajesh lived in a slum of the city with his wife, four children and aged parents. He used to get up early in the morning and distribute newspapers and worked in the factory of a wealthy man (factory owner) in day time to look after his family. He was uneducated so he got little wages. A major part of his meagre wages was spent on the health care of his parents. The owner having bought new machines required less workers. At the same time Rajesh became ill because of too much workload and lack of proper and enough food. The owner removed him from his job. Being uneducated he had no opportunity to find other work. Besides, he did not have the ability/qualification and capital to start a business of his own. Now it became difficult for Rajesh and his family to lead their lives.

Think-

(a) Whether the family of Rajesh should be considered as poor or not?

(b) Is there some deep relation between unemployment and poverty?

(c) What is the relation between population and poverty?

(d) Does education increase the opportunities for employment?

16.2.4 Poverty Elimination Measures-

(A) Expansion of Education and Health Facilities-

The root cause of most evils in the society is illiteracy. In the absence of education, people do not get the benefit according to their ability and opportunities available. There is need to spread education in all sections for eradicating poverty problem. As a result of the attainment of education, the efficiency of labour and productivity will increase. By increasing health services the skills and ability of the poor can help in increasing the productivity. Education and health changes the general labour into human capital. Japan and America have become economically developed due to human capital. Therefore, the government should expand education and health services in the poorer sections.

(B) Increase in employment opportunities-

There is a deep corelation between unemployment and poverty, they co-exist. This problem can be decreased by increasing the number of employment opportunities. Those people in the society who have skills or abilities can be brought out of the poverty circle by encouraging self employment and providing resources. Poor people lacking in skills can increase their purchasing power by earning wages. However many programmes of employment and self-employment have been started by current and former government but they were not enough to solve the problem of poverty. It is necessary to increase employment opportunities and reduce poverty by making education more employable.

(C) Need to control social evils-

Evil practices in Indian society kept limited opportunities for different sects of society as well as individuals and thus kept them poor. Many social practices such as marriage and death cause heavy unproductive expenditure by which the poor person gets trapped and he is not freed from the clutches of poverty. Indian individual also becomes stressed considering poverty as a decree of fate unless these miscreants in society and culture are removed then only poverty reduction seems possible.

(D) Population control- India is the second most populous country in the world. After independence, the spread of health services decreased the death rate rapidly but the expected improvement in the birth rate did not take place. Due to differences between birth and death rates, the population of India increased rapidly. Due to this rapid growth, some of the very few assets were divided among the sons and poor people become poorer. Due to higher population of children poor families could-not invest in education and health for them Therefore, it is necessary to control the population growth rate for poverty irradication.

(E) Reach the benefits to targeted persons or community- For the eradication of poverty many ambitious schemes and programmes run by the government but there are many leakages in it due to which we fail to get expected result. Due to these leakages, a major portion of the allocated resources for the poor is allocated to not so poor people. If the government is serious about poverty alleviation, then it will have to ensure that the benefits of the schemes reach the poor.

16.2.5 Measure adopted for poverty Alleviation-

Before the decade of 1970, the government did not make significant efforts for poverty alleviation. The government believed that the effects of economic progress would gradually reach the weaker sections of society and solve the problem of poverty automatically It was later accepted that India's rate of development was very slow and its benefits also could not reach the poor in required amount. After 1970, a new multi-dimensional policy was adopted in India for poverty alleviation. Many programmes of labour employment, self-employment were launched and efforts were made to eliminate the problem of poverty. The government has identified the families living below the poverty line (BPL). They have adopted in their policy, necessary services and services for their upliftment free or at low cost.

These policy measures taken by the government have helped in reducing the poverty but still it is not sufficient

16.3 Unemployment-

If a person is qualified and willing to work, But fails to get employment, then this situation is called unemployment. In other words, it can be said that a person who is not employed in any productive action is unemployed, it is unemployment. India is a country of youth but this young power will be beneficial only if it can be employed in higher employment. Many people in the villages and cities are engaged in agriculture work other people are engaged in business. Some other people are employed in education, health, banking and other insurance sectors. Every employer receives self-money from work and contributes in the production for his nation as well. Employment is also available to the person with the realization of wealth, which increases his work efficiency. If a person remains unemployed then he has a loss of money and skill and faces mental depression. Unemployment makes one person inefficient and un-social. The situation of unemployment creates numerous losses for the individual, society and the nation.

In order to understand unemployment, first of all the necessary labour-force, work force and unemployment rate should be understood. The work of labour-force is form the population who supplies labor for the current economic activities for the production of goods and services. It includes both employable and unemployed. Work-force is the part of the manpower that is in the employment. If the person desiring to work at the rate prevailling wage does not get the job according to his merit, he is called unemployed, The unemployment rate, the number of unemployed people, is the ratio of the number of people involved in the labour force.

Estimates of the unemployment rate are set at three different approaches respectively, in general, weekly current status and current daily status, which are to be studied in higher classes. In order to estimate unemployment in India, statistics are collected by organizing separate rounds of tours by National Sample Survey Organization (NSSO).

In order to mobilize unemployment related data, this organization had organized 68th round in 2011-12. It was found that on the basis of normal condition, the work-force was 395 per thousand population and the work-force was 386 and in the 68th round 2011-12, the unemployment rate at normal position was 2,3 percent.

16.3.1 Types of Unemployment-

(A) Seasonal Unemployment:- There are many such businesses that end with the changing of weather. Such business offers employment only in a certain period or season of the year. Agriculture and Agro based industries are the best example of it. When the weather is unfavourable, people in this seasonal business have to face unemployment. Thus, it is called seasonal unemployment.

(B) Structural Unemployment- Along with the development the structure of the economy varies. In one area demand is low, and demand increases in other area. Along with changes in the structure of the economy the nature of demand also change. Thus, due to structural changes by which unemployment arises, it is called structural unemployment.

(C) Technical Unemployment- The unemployment due to improvements in production techniques and the use of new machines is called unemployment. use of new machines is called unemployment.

(D) Frustrating Unemployment- It is also called fractional unemployment, The unemployment generated between the two employment periods is called distressing unemployment. This work is generated due to change, hartal, lockout etc. This employment is temporary.

(E) Cyclical Unemployment- Regulatory activities occruing in the economy are called up and down (speed slow down) business cycle. When there is a recession in business cycles, the level of overall demand becomes very low. This also results in decline in production and employment. Due to lack of overall demand or business cycles, the problem of cyclic unemployment arises.

(F) Hidden Unemployment- Many times it happens that the person appears to be engaged in employment but his contribution to total production is zero or negligible. If excessive or extra labour is taken away from that work then there is no decrease in the quantum of total exemption. This is called hidden unemployment.

This unemployment occurs more in agricultural activities in rural areas of undeveloped countries. Due to being a major agricultural economy. This structural and hidden unemployment is highest. In developed countries, there are generally more active and chronic unemployment.

16.3.2 Reasons of Unemployment-

The problem of unemployment is the result of many reasons. The main reasons are given below-

(A) Lack of Employment Education and Training-

The level of literacy and education in India has been steadily increasing, as well as new issues of educated unemployment have also become visible. There is lack of everyday education in Indian education. The practical viability of education is very low here. Despite of getting education here, students fail to get employment. similarly there is lack of training centers in India. Through training person becomes human capital by which the employment opportunities increase for him.

(B) Increasing Population and Labour Force- A number of schemes are being run by the government to provide employment but it has failed to fully consolidate the rising labor-force along with the population. Labor-force in India is increasing rapidly. It requires fast creation of employment opportunities.

(C) Inappropriate Technique- Modern technology is being adopted in Indian agriculture and industries. This technique is capital intensive and labour saving. This technology is not beneficial for countries such as India. In India there is a need to adopt such techniques which can also be used in the huge labor-force. Sophisticated technology is responsible for unemployment in India.

(D) Agricultural Backwardness- Agricultural backwardness and slow growth is also the major cause of unemployment in India. Even today almost 50 percent of the labor-force receives employment in agriculture and related regions. Slow growth of the agricultural sector failed to create enough employment opportunities for this vast population.

(E) Jobless Economic Development:- Normally employment increases with development. India has progressed rapidly in the past 35 years. But the service sector contribution is relatively high in this development. The employment intensity of service sector is less than that of agriculture and industries, so despite the rapid economic growth, there is not enough increase in employment opportunities.

(F) Lack of Political will and Systematic planning:- Along with the development in India, there was a need to be spent in other by systematic planning of excess labour due to structural changes. Although many programs were run by the government for redressal of unemployment but there was lack of coordination. Due to the very high leakage in these programs the benefits of it could not reach the targeted individuals.

16.3.3 Remedial Measures for Unemployment:-

Unemployment and poverty problems are associated with each so closely that the measures to be taken for their redress are not different. Government has tried to eliminate the co-existence of many wages by running the employment & self employment program for the last 40 years. By providing employment through MNERGA , there has been enough reduction in poverty and unemployment in rural areas. Several self-employment programs running in parallel have reduced the unemployment of educated and skilled people. Economists are of the opinion that unemployment rates cannot be zero down. The existence of structural and frustrating unemployment remains in the minority in the economy. Due to unemployment, a nation cannot achieve its highest possible level of production and it loses a certain part of production forever which could be produced by providing employment to everyone. By adopting following measures by the government, adequate reduction in unemployment can be done.

(A) There should be maximum co-ordination between the wages and self-employment programs run by the government and the minimum leakage in them.

(B) Education should be made employment oriented and encourage youth to self-employment through training and skill development.

(C) Accelerate the growth rate of industries to increase the excessive labour due to development along with agriculture.

The promising program "Make In India" and investment promotion measures adopted by the probable sector will provide a fast pace to the growth rate of industry. Due to rapid industrial development unemployment can be reduced significantly.

(D) Need for skilled planning:- In India, millions of new youth join labor-force. This is also an opportunity as well as the challenge in India. By making proper policy, these youths have the need to create employment. The employment related policy should be prepared in such a very addition to the present unemployment, new entrants in the labor-force be kept in mind.

Important Points

1. Inflation means continuous increase in general price.
2. In order to know the rate of inflation the wholesale price index and many consumer price indexes are created in India.
3. Contrary relation is found between price and value of currency.
4. Moderate and fiscal measures are adopted for inflation control.
5. The estimate of poverty in India was first put up by Dada Bhai Naroji in 1868.
6. According to suresh Tendulkar 21.92% of the population in India was poor during 2011-12.
7. Absolute poverty is the situation is which a person is not able to fulfil his basic needs.
8. Unemployment is situation in which the eligible and willing person of the working age group is unable to get employment at the rates of forced wages.
9. Hidden unemployment and structural unemployment are found more in India.
10. The task of coordinating the compilation of poorer and unemployment is done by the national sample survey organization (NSSO).

EXERCISE

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. What are the challenges that come before the Indian economy?
2. Which index is used for inflation?
3. Which monetary measures are used to control Inflation?
4. The latest estimates of poverty in India are presented by whom?
5. Explain the concept of absolute poverty.
6. Write the name of the scholars studying poverty after independence.
7. Who has first attempted to measure poverty in India and when?
8. Define labour-force.
9. Define hidden unemployment.
10. Which unemployment is found more in agriculture sector?
11. What kind of unemployment is found more in developed economy?
12. What is the body that is compiling reliable association in India?

Short Answer type Question-

1. What is inflation?
2. Explain inflation trends in India after independence.
3. Explain the fiscal measures of inflation control.
4. What are the monetary measures taken for inflation control? Explain
5. What is the difference between absolute and relative poverty?
6. Why are poverty lines different in different countries?
7. Discuss the economic causes of poverty in India.

8. Explain the estimate of poverty presented by Suresh Tendulkar.
9. What is the estimation of labor-force, work-force and unemployment rate for the year 2011-2012?
10. What are losses for a person due to unemployment?
11. What do you understand by frustrating unemployment?

Essay Type long Questions-

1. Discuss the reasons of inflation in India.
2. Write an elaborated article on the losses arising from inflation.
3. Explain the efforts made by various economists for estimating poverty.
4. Explain the measures that can be taken for poverty alleviation.
5. What measures have been taken to reduce unemployment and what other measures can be adopted?

Lesson-17

Money and financial Institutions

Money is one of the biggest inventions made by man. Like fire and wheel invention of money has made great contribution in the development of human life. Whatever is paid for goods and services is called money. Generally money is used as means of exchange. General acceptance as means of exchange or payment is the special quality of money. Everybody by has faith that shall be accepted in economy everyone. This faith makes money as 'money'. Thus money is accepted for goods and services.

Exchange: Taking and giving of goods and services for money of any another goods services is called exchange.

We purchase many things from the market. you must have also purchassed thinghs from market. If you buy a pen or biscuits worth ten ` the shopkeeper accepts it without any protest. In the same way we or any member of our family purchases things from market, we pay the price and the shopkeeper accepts money gladly. It makes it clear that Indian rupee is currency.

Think:-
Can purchasing made in England and America be paid in Indian rupee?
What is the mode of payment there in the market means What is the currency of America and England?

There are many forms of money which are used as means of payment. Money for common man is currency (bank note) or coins because payment system in India is related to currency notes and coins. Indian currency is known as 'Indian National Rupee. One rupee is equal to 100 paise. The symbol of Indian rupee is ` .This design is like devnagri letter **R** and capital R of latin and their are two horizontal lines on it. This symbol was prepared by D. Udaikumar. In the same way $ is the symbol of American currency $ dollar. **£** is the symbol of British sterling pound. € is the symbol Europen union currency Euro and ¥ is the symbol of Japanese currency yen.

Origin of Money and Development:-

17.1.1 Origin of money:-

The English word 'money' has been derived from the latin word Moneta First mint in Rome was established in the temple of goddess Moneta and the coins from this mint were named money after the name of goddess Moneta.

Gradually the word money was used for currency. It is believed that India was the first to release coins along with china in the world history of Indian coins starts before Christ.

Silver coins of Mauryan period found in excavation prove that coins were in circulation In India even before Christ. The first 'rupee' in India was released by Shershah Suri (1540-1545).

At present coins of 50 paisa, 1 rupee, two `, 5 ` and 10 ` are being released in India. Reserve Bank of India is also releasing bank notes of 10,20,50, 100,500 and 2000 ` Bank notes of ` 1, ` 2 and ` 5 have been stopped but they are in circulation. Horn 'able Prime Minster Shri Narendra Modi has declared demonetization of 500 and 1000 ` notes. Ceasing legal tender of currency notes in circulation is demonetization.

The Reserve Bank of India has started Project Financial Literacy to impart financial education. Its objective is to provide information regarding

Central Bank and general banking conception to all. If we want to know about financial system it is possible through: **https://rbi.org.in/financial education/home aspx.** It is very effective and attractive step in imparting financial literacy by **Reserve Bank of India**. There are many interesting films games and comics available on this website regarding Indian financial network. The information and knowledge available here is reliable.

17.1.2 Development of Money- Regarding the origin and development of money. Some people say that nobody invented money. It is a coincidence. First of all, Barter System started then came money. Some scholars think that to remove problems of Barter System, money came into circulation. Whatever be the reason; everybody agrees that Barter System was at prevalent initially then came money in present form.

(A) Barter System In this system goods and services were exchanged directly for goods and services. Barter System is a matter of history now. There were problems in Barter System regarding requirment of both parties. It means a person who wants to sell a thing; the buyer must also need it. In Barter System both purchaser and seller must have needs and it was difficult. There was lack of standard measure in Barter System. There was great problem in transfer of value or deposit of money. It was risky to transfer money or value in form of goods, then there was also problem of indivisible goods. If a person wants to buy a horse for a sheep, he can neither exchange the whole horse nor divide it for a sheep. If they are divided. because of these problems Barter System was stoped. It was replaced by money exchange.

(B) Metallic Currency- Money in the form of goods was replaced by metal money In the beginning metal pieces were used as money. Then they were stamped and value was marked on them. Use of metal coins started in China, India and Egypt but transfer of metal money was not convenient. It cost more and the increasing demand was impossible to fulfill with metal money.

(C) Paper money-

Due to limitations of metal money, Paper money was developed paper money was free from faults found in metal money. Paper money costs less and its transfer is very convenient Increasing demand of paper money can easily be fulfilled. In sequence of development of paper money, credit money and virtual money is also working as money. we shall study them in higher classes.

17.2 Functions of money and role of money in economy- Functions of money can also be seen as role of money in economy. Money mainly works as medium of exchange, measure of value, a standard for delayed payments and store of value. It also plays an important role in completing many actions.

Different Functions of Money

(A) Medium of Exchan - Money has the basic role of medium of exchange or as mode of payment in economy. This function of money ends the problem of double needs. This money works as medium of exchange. This quality of money differentiates it from other properties. Money makes exchange convenient.

(B) **Measure of value** It means that money works as measure of value. It shows exchange value as money in all goods and services, An account statement is prepared showing similar unit in money of exchange value of goods and services on different measures. The problem in measure as money is that its value keeps on changing.

© **Standard of payment** Money is a unit by which all future payments can easily be made. The payments which are not made immediately and avoided are deferred payments. So loans are easy to be paid in money. Value of money is stable in comparison to other properties. It is generally accepted. So money is the best standard of such payments.

(D) Store of Value- It means that people can keep wealth and property in the form of money. Money works as storage of value. Value of money means purchasing power of money. Money is not

only store of value, other goods and property are also stores of value and compete with money. As store of value money is special because it is a liquid asset.

In this way money is generally used as medium of exchange, measure of value, and standard of payments. According to Wakers and Hartley Withers. " Money is that which works as money" According to Crowther money can be defined as a thing which is generally accepted as "medium of exchange" and also works as measure and store of value.

(E) Other functions of money and its role in Economy- With the help of money the value can be transferred easily. It provides a base for credit. People deposit some portion of their income in banks as money. This deposited money creates credit of bank. Money has also played an important role in economy by money circulation. Transfer of capital from one industry to another and from one place to another has been possible due to money.

Saving have been used as investment made possible due to money. There are two classes in economy-savers and investors. Savers deposit their savings as money in banks and other financial institutions. These institutions lend money to businessmen for investment. Firms and businessmen invest money in some productive investment. It increases the production capacity of economy and economy makes progress in economic development.

Investment- Investment means that expenditure which increases the actual assets of production in economy.

A consumer can get maximum satisfaction or welfare only by money. Money is easily divisible so the consumer spends his money on goods and services in such a way that he gets maximum satisfaction. Money also gives freedom and leverage to consumers in selection of things.

Money also plays an important role in production. Production on a large scale has been possible by adopting division of labor and specialization with money. Specialization is possible when an economic resource produces special goods or services. When production is subdivided into different types of labor and every unit does special work in production of goods and service, it is called division of labour. Division of labour and specialization increase the efficiency in production and achieve higher standard in production. In the absence of money it was not possible to distrubute the production in various units Through money the distribution of production in all units engaged in production is possible. It is not always possible to divide goods and total production but its value in money and be distributed in all production units following economic laws. Rapid increase in national and international trade has been possible due to money. In Barter System the area of trade was limited and trade on large scale was not possible. Much emphasis has been given to the welfare of the state in the present time. In running many schemes for the welfare of the public, govt. has to spend a lot. It is obtained throgh public loans and taxes which can be obtained through money. In present time the development level of human has been possible due to invention of money. There is no field of life where there is no role of money. Money is a means not an end.

17.3 Saving and credit

It is necessary to understand the concept of saving and credit to comprehance financial institutions properly. For the concept of saving and credit, we need to understand the following three situations:

Situations-1

Pankaj lives at Katrathal village in Sikar district with his parents, two brothers and a sister. He is an educated and energetic young man. He got his vocational education from a good institution and he wants to establish his own business. He has many options and good knowledge of the market. He also knows the techniques of business perfectly well. Yet he is not in a position to set up his business for lack of money. His father is a simple farmer and can fulfill only the needs of the family. In this situation Pankaj has only one option that is to borrow the requisite capital.

Situations-2

Sanjay lives at Rajpura village in Jhunjhunu district. His parents are old. He is the eldest of three brothers and sisters and the only earning member in the family. He has a small field of 2 hectare. He earns for his family from the income of agriculture on his field. He has the liability to fulfill the needs of his family members. Income from agriculture is insufficient for his family. It is necessary for Sanjay to borrow money from a person or an institution to fulfill the basic needs of the family.

Situations-3

Nitesh and his wife Chandani live in Jaipur. Nitesh is a bank employee and his wife is also in government job. Both are economical in nature. They have also inherited good economic base. Both fulfill their basic needs with a small portion of their income. So they have surplus amount from their income as saving.

In situation 1 Pankaj needs to take loan to set up his business and in situation 2 Sanjay has to take loan for consumption. Giving loan or lending money is called credit in Economics. Generally credit shows the reputation of financial credibility. On that basis a person or institution can take loan on a promise to pay in future, or get goods or services without paying in cash. It is clear that the word 'credit' in economics is used for providing finance for loans. In exchange one party purchases goods and the other sells it. Purchase and sale are two sides of the same merchandise. In the same way in financial transactions one party borrows or takes loan and the other party provides credit (lending or loaning) thus in financial transactions the amount loan will be same as amount given on credit.

Think over situation 3. We see that Nitesh and Chandani have large unused portion of income. The portion of income which was not consumed is called 'saving'. So surplus of income over consumption is income.

Many questions arise here. From where Sanjay will get loan to fulfill the needs of his family? Where will Nitesh and chandandi keep their savings safe? Can Nitesh and Chandani directly lend their savings to Pankaj and Sanjay? But there are many possible practical problems in it first Nitesh and Chandani do not know the financial behavior of Pankaj and Sanjay, they will always have the fear of losing their hard earned money. Second In case they have sudden need of money somehow and Pankaj and Sanjay may or may not be able to return money at short notice. Third it is also possible that Nitesh and Chandani do not know Pankaj and Sanjay. Actually there are two separate parties one who takes loan and one who lends money. We need a mediator between them who can connect both the parties. Financial mediators play this role.

Financial mediators-

Financial mediators are those institutions or persons who work as link between lender and borrower in the market. These institutions get money from those who spend less than their income and thus save money and provide credit to those persons and institutions who need money for consumption or production. When the investors deposit their saving with them, they get due interest and there is little risk of losing money. Deposit or can take back their deposits at short notice. In the same way borrowers and institutions also get much benefits from these financial mediators. Financial mediators have also availability of money. They lend money at normal rate of interest and on easy terms. Bank is an important mediator.

17.4 Traditional and non-Traditional source of credit-

There are many people whose expenses are more than their income. They need to lake loans to meet out this extra expense. In the same way people who are engaged in production work or business, need more money to increase their business. For this they take loans. People can borrow money from different financial sources. On the other hand there are people, whose expenses are less than their income. They want to earn interest on their savings. For this they deposit their saving in those financial institutions. Financial institutions borrows and lend money. (Like deposits, loans, investments etc). Bank, cooperative societies, money Lenders and local bankers are financial institutions. They

can be classified as traditional and non-traditional sources. Traditional money lending institutions are registered under government and Reserve Bank. They are governed, controlled and guided by Reserve Bank of India and the government. They inform about all activities to their controlling institutions. They do not work only for benefits. They have to afford many social liabilities. They also lend money to the poor and weaker sections. They have an important role in establishing economic equality by financial investment to economicly weaker sections.

Financial Inclusion-

Financial inclusion means to provide financial services to poor, weak backward and low income group sections at different affordable rates and join them with financial services.

17.5 Commercial Bank- We have seen that Nitesh and Chandani spend less than their income. They would like to manage their savings in such a way that there would be no risk of losing money and they also get normal interest on their deposited capital. Those who have small savings invest in the institutions where there money is safe and can get it back easily whenever they need Banks are important financial mediators to do this work. Banks accept deposits from consumers and lend it to those who need money for production and consumption. Bank works as a link between consumer and creditor. Consumers can withdraw money from banks whenever they need. So this deposit is known as demand deposit. It is an important quality of money as a medium of exchange. You might have heard about payments by cheque instead of cash. For payment made by cheque, Payee who has an account in bank, issues a cheque. Cheque is a kind of order which order banks to make payment to the person, the amount mentioned in it.

Tagore Education Institute has issued a crossed cheque worth ₹500 to Rajendara Prasad for payment. It has been maked by two parallel slanting bars. This crossed cheque indicates that the payment shall be deposited in the account of the account holder. There are seven entries in the crossed cheque

1. Two parallel slanting bars.
2. Date of issue
3. Name of the receiver
4. Amount of payment in figures
5. Amount of payment in words
6. Account number of cheque issuer
7. Signature of cheque issuer

Non crossed cheques are also in circulation. Any representative of receiver can go to a bank and receive payment. Such types of cheques are risky.

Thus we see essential features of money in demand deposit. Through cheque, payment is directly deposited in the account as demanded. Now the question arises, What do the banks do with the amount deposited in accounts? Banks keep a small

portion of deposited money as cash. It is because the depositors can withdraw money at any time. Only a few depositors withdraw money on a particular day so banks do away with this amount in cash. Bank's major portion of deposit money goes in giving loan. Thus banks accept deposits from public and pay them by cash or by claque on demand and they also give loans. Banks have special separate work of accepting deposits withdrawn by cheques. A commercial bank provides the services of accepting deposits and giving commercial loans.

17.5.1 Role Of Commercial Banks-

In present time commercial banks plays a very important role in the development of economy. Their importance in economic development is as follows:-

1. It is necessary to have high rate of saving for economic development. Commercial Banks keep the public saving safe and give them due interest.
2. Banks circulate the money from public saving to the different producers and investors. If there are no banks, there is no use of saving the money and cannot be used in production.
3. Bank makes favourable allotment of resources. Bank lends money from saving to that sectors where there is maximum profit. Bank also allots resources which are essential for social welfare.

1.5.2 Functions of commercial banks-

(A) Accepting deposits

The most important service of the bank is to

accept deposits. Bank receives deposits from persons, firms and other societies, Broadly these deposits are of three kinds-

(a) Deposits from current accounts.

(b) Deposits from saving accounts.

(c) Fixed deposits.

Businessmen deposit money in current accounts. They can make frequent transactions in these accounts. Banks pay very low or zero interest on these accounts. Generally people deposit their money in savings accounts. There are some restrictions on transaction in these accounts. Banks pay due interest on these deposits. The deposit of current and saving accounts are jointly called demand deposits. Banks pay maximum interest on fixed deposits.

(B) Loaning-

Commercial banks provide loaning facilities to all the sectors of economy, like agriculture, industry, business etc. This loan is provided in the form of cash, credit and overdraft.

Over draft allotting to an account holder to withdraw more than his deposit as loan.

The rate of interest is different according to the purpose for persons and societies by banks. Banks charge more interest on loans than paying on deposits. The main source of bank income is the difference of interest from debtors and depositors.

(c) Other functions-

Banks also provides other facilities to their customers in addition to accepting deposit and loaning. Banks make collection of cheques and bills. They make regular payment of insurance installments. They provide locker facilities for the safety of valuable things. They also provide statistical information to different agencies. They provide facilities of money transfer. In short banks play important role in economic development in financial adjustment.

Banks pay interest on traditional sources deposits. Its role of interest is lower than non-traditional sources. Traditional source keeps record of all their transactions in writing. Their working days and working hours are fixed. So they are not available everyday and every time for financial transactions and their credit procedure is slow and complicated. But they are never involved in exploiting activities. Banks and cooperative societies are institutional financial sources. Non institutional sources are those financial societies which are not registered under government and Reserve Bank of India for

financial transactions and do not follow their instructions. They are beyond the control and regulatory control of monetary authority. There is no regulatory authority or centre which controls the activities of sources of those non-institutional societies.

Generally non-traditional sources charge very high rate of interest from debtors. Non- traditional finical sources include local bankers, money lender, landlords and relatives. Their activities are not time bound. They are very flexible. Their loaning process is very easy and direct. They have very little paper formalities. They do not maintain elaborate record of transactions. and have serious allegations of forgery.

Non- traditional financial sources are mostly local. They are well known to the culture, traditions and customs of that area. So they are very flexible in loaning and recovery. They are well known to the economic conditions, economic behavior, capacity of repayment and other activates of the debtor. So the money paid is mostly recovered. They also use many unfair means to recover their money.

17.6 Local bankers-

They are also doing banking business in India. They are individual firms or persons who work as banks. The whole banking was done by them before the development of modern commercial banks in India. They have been important source of non-traditional credit. Local bankers do following works-

1. Accepting deposits from public.
2. Providing loans to its customers by mortgaging their property and also provide loan to customers on the basis of their credit without mortgaging their property.
3. To transfer funds from one place to another.
4. To run their business along with banking work.
5. Transaction with small businessmen and enterpreneurs.
6. To provide loan to debtor on the basis of his financial status and personal knowledge about his business.
7. To work not only as friend but also as advisor

17.7 Money lenders-

Money lenders also have important role in non-traditional sources of money lending (credit).

Money lenders lend their own capital. They do not accept deposit from public. They generally give small personal loans. They charge high rate of interest from their borrowers. Those who can't approach banking system, generally take loans from these money lenders. Generally money lenders mortgage property and give loans to customers, but they also lend money without mortgaging property according to their credit.

They are also called exploiters for charging high rate of interest from debtors. Now-a-days the importance of money lenders and local bankers reduced due to expansion of financial services and financial institutions. Besides money lenders and local bankers landlords, friends and relatives are also important non-traditional sources of lending money.

17.8 Self Help Groups:-

Poor families still depend on non-traditional sources. Why is it so? There are still no banks in rural areas of India. Taking loan from bank is more difficult than non-traditional sources. One needs security or guarantee for loan and many documents. In the absence of proper papers for loan the poor cannot obtain loans from banks. On the other hand non-traditional loaner like money lenders personally know the debtors. So they are often ready to loans when needed without repaying the old loans them without any bases. Debtors go to money lenders for new loans but money lenders charge high rate of interest, do not complete paper formalities and harash the poor debtors. In recent years people have tried to accept new methods to loan the poor. One if the idea is to join them in small self help groups and collect their savings specially women in rural areas. There are 15-20 members in

one self help group, who meet regularly and make savings. It can be from 25 ` to 100 ` or more per member. It depends on the saving capacity of the families. Members can take small loans from the group. The group charges interest on these loans and it is less than the interest charge by money lenders. If the group makes savings regularly, it take loans from banks after one or two years. Loan is given in the name of the group and its aim is to create self employment opportunities for its members. For example member are given small loans to get their mortgaged land released, fulfill the needs of working capital (to buy seeds, fertilizer, bamboos and clothes) build houses, buy sewing machines, handloom and cattle.

Members of the group take important decisions regarding savings and loan activities. Groups also takes decisions on loans, their purpose, amount, rate of interest and the time limit for returning loans. Group is responsible for receiving loans. If a member does not repay the loan, the other members of the group take it seriously. Thus when poor women unite themselves in self help group, banks are ready to pay them loan. Though they have no security or guarantee for loans.

In this way self help groups help the debtors in solving their problems regarding security of the loans. They get loans on normal rate of interest for their needs from time to time. Besides these groups also help in uniting poor people of rural areas. With their help women not only become independent but also get a common platform through regular meetings. In these meetings they discuss social topics like health, nutrition and domestic violence.

Chit Fund-

Chit fund campanies have important role in motivating people for saving and providing them loans. Company that operates guides and manages chit plan is called Chit Fund company. Chit Fund is a special saving and loaning plan running in India. It is a plan of mutual benefit. Under this plan all the members of the plan work under a contract and deposit their share. Total deposited amount is paid to one member by auction or tender. All the members participate in tender or auction. The member who is ready to accept amount with maximum rebate is called prized buyer. If a member does not participate in tender or auction for loan, then the name of the winner is declared through lottery.

Every month one member gets amount of reward as winner. The man who becomes winner once is not included again in tender and auction. Only non-rewarded members can participate in subsequent tender or auction. The amount of rebate is divided and it is distributed equally among all members. By deducting the dividend the next installment is fixed. Chit fund company gets commission under contract from members for management, operation and guidance. The winner also has to continue paying his installment every month in the chit fund plan. Chitfund companies are also run by organized financial institutions, friends, relatives and unorganized groups.

Important Points

1. Money is that which is accepted by all in exchange.
2. Money works as the currancy of India is Rupaiya, a medium of exchange, measure of value, store of value and base of deferred payments.
3. The central bank of India is the Reserve Bank of India.
4. Barter system was prevalent before the invention of money. In this system, goods and services were directly exchanged for goods and services.
5. The portion of income which has not been consumed is called saving.
6. Credit means lending of money by one party to another.
7. Financial mediators are those persons, societies and firms who work as mediator between depositors and borrowers in the market.

8. Traditional financial sources are regulated, controlled and guided by Govt. of India and Reserve Bank of India.
9. Non-Traditional financial sources are out of control the control and regulations of govt. of India and Reserve bank of India.
10. Self help Groups are new trends for small loans.
11. Reserve Bank of India is propagating financial information in many ways to provide financial awarness.

EXERCISE

Very short Answer Type Questions-

1. What is money?
2. Explain exchange.
3. What is meant by a cheque ?
4. What is the name of the Indian currency?
5. What do you mean by saving?
6. Which is the Central bank of India?
7. What is the symbol of the Indian currency?
8. Which currency was demonetized by govt. of India in 2016?
9. What are financial mediators?
10. For which work do we need loan?
11. Who controls the traditional financial sources?

Short Answer Type Questions

1. What is Barter System?
2. What were the problems in Barter system?
3. Explain the functions of money as a measure of value.
4. What is credit?
5. What are the limits of metallic money?
6. What are traditional financial sources? Explain with examples.
7. What is financial society? Explain with example.
8. Mention the merits and demerits of non-traditional financial sources?
9. What are local bankers? Mention their three characteristics.
10. Explain money lender as a source of credit.

Essay Type Questions:-

1. Explain the different stages of development of money.
2. Describe the main functions of money in detail.
3. Describe the functions of commercial banks in detail.
4. What is the role of money in economy? Explain
5. What is the difference between traditional and non-traditional

   Financial sources?
6. What are Self Help Groups? How are they different from traditional Methods of providing loaning?
7. Write an article on the system of local bankers

Lesson 18

Consumer and Legal Awareness and Right to Information

Along with human development, human needs began to grow. Human beings started exchange of goods to fulfill their requirements; gradually commodity barter started After this, currency in the form of precious metals such as gold and silver started. In Indian history, description is given that Cows were also used as currency. When a person consumes and receives it by getting the value of an object or service, it means that he is a consumer, sub-consumer or a person who receives and consumes. Accounting to the Consumer Act 1986, the consumer is a person who has made-

(i) Payment of the value of any item or service, or has promised to do so.

(ii) A partial payment of the reward, or has committed a partial payment.

(iii) Payment promised as per the late payment method.

The last person who received profit or convenience from the goods or services purchased is called a consumer. (A) Consumer of goods (B) Consumer of service.

PERSON-

Person in the Act includes the following: -

(i) Registered or nonregistered firm.

(ii) Joint Hindu Family.

(iii) Co-operative societies.

(iv) Any association of people whether it is registered under the Registration Act of the Committees or not.

Reasons of Consumers Exploitaion:-

When a person receives a payback or a higher rate of any item or service, according to the buyer's value, and the benefit/facility is not received from the item or service, then the condition is called the exploitation of the consumer.

The following reasons cause exploitation-

1. Purchase without regard to the quality, quantity, accuracy and standard of the items or service.
2. The selection of the right thing or service is not available when different types of goods or services are available.
3. Lack of written and unreadable information related to the item.
4. Believing in written publicity on the packing of items.
5. The consumer not being educated.
6. Not taking purchase receipt of cash/will/tax contract etc., payment of value of the goods/service purchased.
7. Consumer does not complain in a proper manner against sub-standard or harmful items and improper services.
8. No quick decision is taken against complaints.
9. Lack of organization among consumers.
10. The influence of capitalists/industrialists or the government etc.

Types of consumer abuse/exploitation-

Consumer exploitation has happened in many ways. Especially the situation of exploitation occurs when the production of goods is made by capitalist, powerful big companies. Exploitation is divided into two classes. Exploitation in the form of goods or services has following types.

(A) Goods or Items-

1) Weight, volume and less in measurement than shown
2) Not to be as described or specified.
3) Impurity or adulteration.
4) To recover more than fixed price.
5) Less in capacity and low in quality than mentioned.
6) Insecurity of goods.
7) Deliberately hiding the defects of the quality which are exposed on consumption.
8) By creating artificial shortage of items or goods, compelling consumer to buy more products at increased value or poor quality goods etc.

(B) **Service-**

1) Not providing quality satisfaction on time as per service conditions.
2) Insecure redemption of service.
3) Damage to facility/advantage
4) Cause physical, mental, intellectual loss etc.

Consumer Rights-

Consumers' protection area is considered to start from the Sale of Goods Act 1930, after which consumer protection act 1986 was passed. The purpose of this act is to provide maximum protection of interests to the consumers. The provision of the following powers has been made to conserve to enhance the consumption of consumers in section 6 of the Act 1986.

(1) Right to Protection against Scarcity of Goods-

Consumers have the right to provide protection against the marketing of, goods or services that create risk to their life and property. Example – adulterated items are dangerous for life and low quality cement is dangerous for life and property

(2) Right to Information-

The consumer has the right to information from the producer/seller regarding the properties, quantity, accuracy standard and prices which the goods or items on purchasing.

(3) The Right to get different types of goods at different competitive prices-

For the benefit of consumers various types of goods or items supplied by government and the authorities at different prices in the market so that consumers can buy goods of their choice and monopoly of goods can be eliminated.

(4) Right to hearing before proper forums-

The National Council has been given the responsibility of giving this assurance to consumers, they will have the right to be heared before the appropriate forum and such forum will give attention and consideration to the consumers.

Proper forums to consider the problem of consumers.

5. Right to receive rewards against unethical exploitation-

Section 36 of the consumer Protection act has given consumers the right to receive rewards against obstruction of immoral trade practices or exploitation.

6. Right to consumer education-

The National Consumer Council has been given the responsibility to provide education to the consumers under the protection act for their grievances. Once the people are sensitized to their rights, then they can feel empowered against exploitation by the manufacturers and traders.

Consumer Duties

In order to avoid the exploitation or loss of the consumer, the following duties should be followed while purchasing an item (goods) or a service:-

(1) Receipt of payment for the value of the goods/services paid receipt / cash / bill / tax / contract etc., should be obtained necessarily.

(2) Get the written or verbal information related to the goods item.

(3) Focus on categorization and quality makes such as ISI/AG/ISO/FPO/ECO etc.

(4) If there is a defect in the goods and services, immediately inform the seller and demand compensation form the loss.

(5) Collect documents and testimonies for the confirmation of their complaint.

(6) If the manufacturer or seller does not pay attention to the complaint of the consumer, then immediately contact the consumer office/ state government, consumer organization or forum.

Measures for Consumer Dispute Redressal-

The Merchandise Sales Act was made in 1930 before independence for consumer disputes. On December 24, 1986, the Indian Parliament passed the Consumer Protection Act 1986. Since then 24th December is celebrated as Consumer Day in India.

In this Act, arrangement for consumer disputes has been arranged at three levels.

(1) At National Level

(2) At State Level

(3) At District Level

At Rajasthan Level-

Based on the power conferred by consumer Protection act, 1986, the Rajasthan State Consumer Protection Act 1987 was passed. According to this act two-dimensional arrangement was done.

(1) State Level

(2) District Level

State Commission-

According to rule 7 of the Rajasthan Consumer Protection Rules 1987:-

1. The Headquarter of the state commission will be established in the state capital.
2. The working days the time of the tenure will be same of state commission as state government.
3. The official currency and the status of the state commission will be as such as the state government decides.
4. The states commission meeting will be convened by the Chairman whenever necessary.

District Forum-

According to the rule 4 of the Consumer Protection Act, 1987

1. District forums office to be set up at District Headquarters.
2. The working days and office hours of the District Forum will be same as that of state government.
3. The official currency and the status of the district forum will be such as the state government decides.
4. The district forum meeting will be convened by the Chairman [whenever necessary].

Consumer Dispute Redressal Provisions

1. The value of the goods or service and the amount required to compensate is not more than 20 lakhs `, then the district may establish its claim/complaint in the District forum established in each district.
2. The amount or the value of the item service and the amount required for the amount is more than 20 lakhs ` to one crore ` To settle such disputes, the consumer can file a complaint claim with the State Government.
3. If the value of the item or service is more than one crore then the consumer can file a complaint in the National Consumer Protection Commission.

Appeal Areas Against Disputed Decision-

1. If the District forum does not satisfy the consumer with the decision or is unable to give the decision in 90 days period, then the consumer can appeal to the Consumer Protection Commission against the District forum.
2. Appeals can be made against the decision of the State Commission in the National Commission.
3. There is a provision for appeal in the Supreme Court against the decision of National Consumer Protection.

Legal Awareness-

Initially some laws were made in France for the legal aid of the poor/ bankrupt people. In 1851 the legal aid movement was exposed. Some rules were made in 1944 for legal assistance to poor and needy people in Britain. The Government of India issued some guidelines in 1960 on the subject of equal opportunity for justice. In 1960, a committee was formed under the observation of Honourable Supreme Court Justice P.N. Bhagwati to frame some rules on legal services on National level. The Government of India passed the Legal Services Act of 1987 in 1987 to implement the legal services assistance programme uniformly all over India. This law came into effect from Nov. 5 1995 in the whole country. That is why the National Legal Service day is celebrated on November 5.

Under the Legal Services Act 1987 several schemes have been implemented to give opportunity and to improve the judicial system and reduce economic inequalities Many welfare programmes have been run for people living below the poverty line, schedule castes, schedule tribes, disabled, workers, aged people, women, children and other weaker sections, to provide them benefits, by the Central Government and the state government. Due to the fact that the far-flung villages are located in the structures and due to illiteracy and ignorance, these people cannot take advantage of these welfare schemes. In addition, due to lack of awareness of laws, they also commit criminal acts.

Statutory Services of Legal Services Authorities-

1. National Legal Services Authority.
2. State Legal Services Authority.
3. District Legal Services Authority.
4. Block Legal Services Authority.

Information of public welfare schemes and amended rules, laws by the service institution set up under Legal Services Authority Act 1987 for all citizens of the society and the task of delivering is called legal awareness.

Rajasthan State Legal Services Authority-

In Rajasthan, Rajasthan State Legal Service Authority has been established under the Act of 1987. The headquarters are located in Rajasthan High court at Jaipur Honourable Chief Justice, Rajasthan, is its chief patron and a senior judge, its Executive Chairman whose directives are governed by legal service programmes throughout the state.

Act of Rajasthan State Authority-

(1) The Act of state authority will be implemented by the Central Government's policies and instructions.

(2) Providing legal service to such persons who meet the criteria under this Act.

(3) Public court under whose jurisdiction the courts are also functioning for the proper operation.

(4) Taking preventive and adaptive legal aid programmes.

(5) Operation of permanent public courts.

(6) Alternate dispute resolution provision.

(7) Promotion and dissemination of legal consciousness.

(8) Follow such acts which should be directed by the Legal Services Central Authority

The legal awareness team of two panel advocates and two Para legal volunteers has been constituted by the Rajasthan State Legal Services Authority.

Measures for Legal Awareness-

(1) Legal literacy camps are conducted by the judicial authorities and legal awareness teams, in the schools, colleges, and public places.

(2) Civil court and legal awareness campaign is being run in villages through mobile vans.

(3) A regular weekly programme (Kanoon Ki Bat) is broadcast on AIR, Doordarshan and

Community Radio On Doordarshan every Saturday from 7:00 pm to 7.30 pm in Rajasthan and on All India radio on every Sunday. It is being broadcasted in public interest for legal awareness from 5:45 to 6:00 pm.

(4) The Pamphlets and booklets are printed and distributed by the District Legal Services Authority.

For more information contact:

(Rajasthan) at State Level-

Mr. Member Secretary, Rajasthan State Legal services Authority Jaipur

Telephone No. – 0141 2227481

Fax No. – 0141 2227602

Helpline No. – 0141 2385877

At district level-

Chairmen/Secretary, District Legal Services Authority.

At Tehsil Level-

Chairman-Tehsil Legal Services Authority / Committee

Important Beneficial Rules and Schemes-

The various schemes run by State Government of Rajasthan are as follows:-

(1) Help on Accidental Death

Assistance/help of ` 5 Lakhs is provided on the death of the registered workers in unorganized sector.

(2) Medical Grant Relief fund

One Lakh assistance/aid is provided for the treatment of registered worker.

(3) Scholarship to Children of Construction Workers-

For students of class 6 to 8 of registered workers, ` 1000/- for boys and Rs. 1500/- Scholarship to the girl student Scholarship to the students for 9 to 12 is up to Rs. 2000/- for boy student and 2400/- to the girl student, at the graduation level the boy students gets 4000/- and girl students ` 6000/- and at post graduation level 6000/- to the male student and ` 8000/- for the female students has been implemented.

(4) Maternity Relief Schemes-

In the Women Welfare Scheme for each of two deliveries, an aid of 6000/- is being provided.

(5) Rajasthan Vishwakarma Non-organized worker contributory Scheme-

Contributory benefits are given for the life protection of registered worke`

(6) The Maternity Benefit Act, 1961-

Registered women laboureres have the right to avail 6 weeks wages and leave before childbirth and 6 weeks of wages and leave after birth.

(7) State Insurance and Employee Provident Fund scheme is being run for the safety of the employees.

(8) Child Marriage Prohibition Act 2006-

Boys under 21 years of age and girls marrying under 18 years age are known as child marriage It is a punishable offense. Regarding child marriage both the parents can be given strict punishment up to two years of imprisonment or one lakh ` fine or both.

(9) Anti-copying Act-

According to Rajasthan Public Examination Act 1992, Provision of punishment up to three years on the use of unfaire means during the examinations has been made; criminal case is filed against the student and he she is expelled from school.

Right to Information-

The Constitution of India has given freedom of speech to every citizen. People pay tax, so the public has the right to know whether the amount paid by them is spent on the right thing. How is the quality of work? Does the government have any

accountability towards the people or not? The government official/employee has to provide information when asked by any citizen of the country. It is the right of every citizen to get the information; this is the right to Information.

Right to Information Act 2005-

This law was passed by the Lok Sabha on June 15, 2005, after the President's approval this law came into effect from October 13, 2005 in the whole country. Under the Right to Information Act 2005, the following rights were given to the citizens of the country:-

1) Every citizen has the right to get information from any department or office of the state as well from any department or office of the state as well as Central Government.
2) Any citizen can see a document or record and can takes a certified copy of the documents.
3) He can also apply to see the work.
4) Sample of material used in work can be taken.
5) Information can also be taken in computers, CD or Floppy.
6) Right to know the ways of Muster roll, log look tenders, plans of cash books etc is alo prevalent.

How to Get Information-

Any citizen, who wants to get some information, has to apply in the mentioned form. ` 10/- with the application form will be deposited as cash or postal order.

1) If the information is copied from a large size paper then extra amount will be charged.
2) For CD's or floppy ` 50/- extra will be charged.
3) ` 2/- per page for photocopy will be charged.
4) In order to see the documents or records, after depositing of ` 10/- one hour will be given for viewing records. After that, for every 15 minutes or less he will have to pay ` 5/-
5) Information will be given under 30 days.
6) The person will be able to get information about life or freedom under 48 hours.
7) Assistant Information officer will get and give the information under 35 days.
8) If information is not provided in the stipulated period, it will be taken as refusal to give the information.

Penalty Notification on Not Reporting-

If the officer responsible for giving information, rejects the application without any proper reason,or intentionally gives false or incomplete or misleading information then the provision of ` 250/- per day maximum 25000/- ` penalty is there.

The Information Commission can also recommend a disciplinary action against the Public Information Officer.

Information that cannot be granted-

1) State security information.
2) Confidential information on security strategy, science and economic affairs.
3) Confidential information received from abroad.
4) Information due to which the rights of the court, Parliament or Vidhansabha are voilated.
5) Intelligence Bureau, Border Security Force, Crime or threat which is harmful towards security/safety.

Information Officer-

1) In gram Panchayat – Secretary or gram sevak
2) In Panchayat Samiti – Development officer
3) In Jila Parishad – Chief Executive officer.
4) In Nagar Palika – Executive Officer
5) The Institution being given aid by state government Chief Executive Office.
6) In University – Vice Chancellor
7) Senior office under the head of the department in government department.
8) In government secretariat – Secretary of Administration Reform Department.

Appeal Time-

The first appeal can be made before the High Court officer under 30 days of getting information from the Public Information Officer.

Appellate Officer-

Gram Sevak's appeal to the sarpanch, Development officer's appeal to Pradhan, Additional Collector's appeal to District Collector can be made. If the first hearing is not held under 30 days then the second appeal can be made to state Information Authority.

Important Points

1. The last user is called consumer, after receiving the reward of goods or service.
2. When purchasing goods or service or while hiring- its quality, quantity and purity should be checked and attention should be paid.
3. Immediate complain should be made if the quantity, measurement and purity is not at per norms and if there is a demand for more than the rate fixed .
4. Consumers should be aware of their rights and duties.
5. To keep information about government run welfare and beneficial schemes is legal Awareness.
6. Right to Information 2005 empowers every citizen of the country to receive information from the department or office of the central or State Government or to see the record.
7. If the information is not received or the correct information is not provided within 30 days, the recipient can complain to the higher authorities.
8. The citizen has the right to appeal against the information.

EXERCISE

Short Answer Type Questions-.

1. How does the consumer get the goods or service?
2. Why did the things/goods need to be exchanged?
3. Who is called the “person”?
4. What kind of information is given in the legal awareness schemes?
5. How many levels of 'Legal Services' Authority are there?
6. “Kanoon ki baat”- On what day and at what time the broadcast is made ?
7. When did the Right to Information Act come into effect in the country?
8. What should be done if the information is not received within the period of 30 days?

Essay Type Questions-

1. Who is a consumer according to the Consumer Act of 1986?
2. How can consumer abuse be prevented?
3. What is Legal Awareness?
4. What measures have been taken by the government for legal awareness?
5. What is the law made to stop cheating in exams ?
6. What rights have been given to citizen by the Right to Information Act 2005?
7. How can the information be obtained?
8. How has the provision of Information officers been made ?

Lesson 19

SUBJECT : Geography

CHAPTER : Transport and Communication

Objective :

to analyse the factors influencing choice of travel.

Content:

Bus Rapid Transit Corridor (B.R.T)

It is a public transportation instrument in which the capacity and reliability of the transport equipment has been constructed. It is a suitable means of mass travelling. Passengers can easily travel in low fares. Due to high innovative technology, more capacity and convenience, B.R.T. is the prevailing transport system in major cities.

BRT corridor

Implementation of the following can encourage greater use of public transport:

a) Encouraging and motivating people through different incentive schemes to use public transport more.

State Transport Service

b) Making it mandatory for every vehicle, other than small and medium range car, to use bus lane only to reduce the main problem of too much congestion in car lane while too much space being occupied by bus lane, that remains idle for most part of the day.

c) Strict use of two wheelers lane only by two and three wheelers.

d) Construction of frequent foot over-bridge for pedestrians to facilitate across the road movement.

e) Fixing time setting of each and every traffic signal after appropriately studying the volume of traffic in each direction during peak hour etc. thereby reducing incidences of road rage.

Foot - Over Bridge

Activity :

Slogan writing or poster making competition on "Motivate us to use Public Transport".

Assignment

Find out the exact stretch of B.R.T. CORRIDOR in Delhi. Conduct a debate on its further extension in any other towns or cities in India.

SUBJECT : **Economics**

CHAPTER : **Development**

Objective :

:

To understand the special needs of the elderly. differently abled and very young on the road.

Content:

a) Infrastructural development in towns and cities should be done after proper, practical planning keeping in mind the need of the every section of the society, for example, all roads, footpaths, railway stations, public places should be made friendly to the needs of the physically differently abled people with ramp facility, ensuring their convenience and safety.

b) Each interstate bus terminals, approach roads to airports, railway stations etc. should have the facility of ramp escalator to facilitate easy movement of passengers and their luggage safely, thereby reducing incidences of footbridge collapse or stampede at such points etc.

differently abled man using a ramp to board the bus

Development empowers a person to have more economic resources leading to his social mobility and economic solvency. This has resulted in increasing the number of cars on city roads, rash behaviour of drivers. under age super rich kids driving cars and causing fatal accidents, drunken driving etc. Such menace can only be removed by providing strict punishment, setting an example amongst such class.

Assignment :

Place yourself in a situation where you have to accompany either an elderly member or a differently abled member of your family to a public place like bank/post office /hospital/airport /railway station etc. through public transport. What all hurdles you are going to face and how you are going to solve the problems you encountered.

Activity:

.

Organize an advertisement campaign on "Right of The Elderly/Physically Handicapped people on Road".

Hit-and-run case : SC upholds Pereira's sentence

CNN-IBN/ 12 Jan 11:25 AM

New Delhi : The supreme court on Thursday upheld conviction of Alistair Anthony Pereira in the hit-and-run case that left seven people dead, six years ago in Mumbai. the apex court has also cancelled Pereira's bail, and directed him to undergo three-year jail term awarded by the Bombay High Court.

A bench headed by RM Lodha cancelled his bail and directed him to undergo his remaining jail term. The court passed the order on an special leave petition filed by Pereira challenging the Bombay High Court verdict convicting him. Pereira had been sentenced to three-year RI under section 304, one year under section 338 six months for causing grievous injuries. All the sentences will run concurrently, said the High Court while delivering the verdict.

In 2006, the 21-year-old had allegedly rammed his Toyota corolla in the pavement at Bandara, killing 15 sleeping labourers. He was found to be intoxicated at the time. Seven labourers had died and several others were injured. The Bombay High Court had re-opened the case after a public outcry over a sessions court judgement, which let off Pereira leniently.

The state government had also filed a review petition asking for a stricter sentence.

SUBJECT : Civics

CHAPTER : Outcomes of Democracy

Objective :

1. To make the students aware of Democratic needs and teach them to be humble and correct users on the road.
2. To make them understand the value of life.

Content:

The most significant criterion of the outcome of Democracy is the concern for the 'Right to Life' of the citizen.

The growing incidence of road accidents and road rage violates the very principle of right to life, and diminishes one of the most basic outcomes of Democracy. Thus, it becomes our responsibility to make the future citizens aware of the traffic rules and road safety. The following activities and exercise will make you realize the importance of road safety in our life.

Drunken driving kills several people on roads every year

Disturbance like mobile phone ringing and kids shouting in a car can distract the driver

Road rage is one of the major causes of road accidents in india

Exercise :

(I) How far weather conditions or the influence of Alcohol trigger the road rage.

(II) Is the U turn to left side allowed ?

(III) What is meant by the bus lane and why they are separated?

Activities :

(I) Discuss and Debate on the following:
   (a) Dignity and right of citizen is most essential in today's traffic scenario
   (b) Road rage is a killer

(ii) Conduct a ground activity with the help of the classmates demarcating peddlers and vehicle drivers For E.g: Zebra crossing, Bus lanes, U Turn etc. Prepare a report on it.

(iii) Prepare a Project file with the help of newspaper clipping and show ways to reduce road rage with reference to recent cases in which right to life and freedom is threatened.

CHAPTER 20

Cleanliness and Solid Waste Management

Cleanliness:

Among various human values, an important value of remaining clean is also included. Clean toilets have remained a part of Indian culture. In Indian philosophy, keeping body, soul, mind and environment clean have been considered to be important functions of human life. In ancient education system, after the Yagyopavit ceremony,each student was given education associated with sanitation.

Domestic and industrial waste polluted water, solid waste of human and animals and agricultural waste spread diseases. The work of disposal of all waste is called sanitation.

World Health Organization has defined sanitation in various forms, such as-

1. For sanitation, people should themselves arrange for resources and measures to keep toilets and polluted water clean.
2. Common meaning of sanitation refers to those provisions, facilities and services, which make mankind perform a secure disposal of excreta, urine and rubbish, etc.
3. Many entrepreneurs are of the opinion that sanitation is an idea, a belief in its entire form and the following things are included in it:
   a. Safe collection, storage, sensible disposal and reusability of human faeces, urine, rubbish, etc.
   b. Re-using solid waste and management of recycling.
   c. Measures for outflow, disposal and recycling of domestic polluted water.
   d. Arrangement of water outflow of rains and storms.
   e. Collection and disposal management of industrial waste.
   f. Collection and disposal management of hazardous waste such as chemical waste, radioactive waste and waste from hospitals.

Why is Sanitation required?

Increasing amount of rubbish or waste is becoming a serious problem in for densely populated regions. Especially for children, youth and elders in weaker sections, who have less immunity and are suffering from diseases. These factors are main causes of spread of diseases. One reason of environmental pollution is injudicious management of waste. Even today many people do not have the resources to dispose off their rubbish and waste.

Untreated polluted water and other waste of environment cause harm to human health in various ways, such as-

I. Drinking water becomes impure and polluted.
2. Food chain is disturbed and polluted via contaminated fruits, vegetables and fish etc.
3. Bathing and entertainment activities in water bodies cause water sources to be impure and polluted.
4. Spread and increase of flies and several other insects spread diseases.

When human beings destroy their waste properly hygiene and good health prevail resulting in good health.

Types of Sanitation

1. **Community led Total Sanitation (CLTS):** CLTS is associated with the common and insensible habit of easing and urinating performed by rural people in open areas. CLTS aims to apprise people about the subsidized schemes run to prevent rural

people from easing and urinating in open areas.

2. **Dry Sanitation:** Dry sanitation refers to concerted efforts made for making dry toilets. Washing hands is not its only objective.

3. **Ecological Sanitation**: Ecological sanitation generally refers to intense inter-relationship between agricultural measures and cleanliness. In other words, ecological sanitation refers to secure recycling of additional resources. Emphasis is laid on taking nutritional food and decreasing the use of non renewable resources in growing organic crops.

4. **Environmental Sanitation-** Control of environment which is associated with diseases comes in the sphere of environmental sanitation. Solid waste management, treatment of water and polluted water, industrial waste treatment and noise pollution, are small components of this category.

5. **Improved and Unimproved Sanitation-** It is associated with the age old habit of controlling human defecating and urinating at domestic level. Under this, cleanliness and provision of adequate water is ensured.

6. **Lack of Sanitation-** It is associated with the lack of toilets which are used by individuals as per their discretion. Lack of sanitation is commonly and seriously a reason for easing and urinating in the open.

7. **Sustainable Sanitation-** The area of sustainable sanitation includes complete sanitation. In this, on the basis of consumer's status and experience, methods of transport, treatment, reuse and disposal of waste, faeces and urine and polluted water are included.

Swachh Bharat Mission (SBM) -

From 2' October, 2014, it has once again been renamed as Swachh Bharat Mission (Rural). It aims at making India ODF (open defecation free) by october 2nd 2019 . For this, it aims to provide facility of toilets to all the rural families and undertake activities of solid and liquid waste management in all gram panchayats to promote sanitation. Under Swachh Bharat Mission,the subsidy for building toilet in each family has been increased from I0000/- to 12000/-.

Solid Waste Management

In modern time increasing urbanization industrialization and carelessness towards environmental pollution have created the problem of solid waste. Due to this, unhygienic conditions often spread in cities. To eradicate this problem, Solid Waste Management and Waste Disposal Programmes have been started in urban areas. Public Health and Sanitization law *was* framed in London in 1857 CE. According to this law, it was mandatory for all the families to dispose *off* their domestic waste in covered dust bins.

Till now, solid waste management programme is limited to urban areas only. In urban areas, Municipal Corporations have included the work of solid waste management in basic and important services. Solid waste refers to dry or wet unusble goods (waste) obtained from houses, factories, industries, hospitals and other institutions. Peels of vegetables and fruits, egg shells leftover food, paper, packing material. boxes, organic and non organic waste, batteries, cells, bulbs, broken thermometers, poisonous materials, radioactive materials and explosives are included in solid waste.

Process of Solid Waste Management

Public representatives and officers of urban departments who have been elected by the people have handed over the task of solid waste management to chief sanitation inspectors appointed in municipal corporations. Sanitary workers are appointed on daily or contract basis to collect waste from houses, hospitals and other establishments and bring it to waste collection centers. From waste collection centers, waste is transported to solid waste disposal centers through various modes such as covered trucks, open trucks, tractor trollies and horse carts. At the waste

disposal centres, waste is divided into various categories on the basis of their places of production. For example, domestic waste, waste from hospitals, industrial waste, manufacturing-material waste and waste from business establishments, etc.

Measures for Solid Waste Disposal

Municipal Corporations take several measures under the programme of Solid Waste Management. Following are some of the important measures:

1. **Waste reduction and reuse-** Reduction and reuse of products are included in measures for waste disposal. In reduction, both the producers and consumers are asked to generate less waste. For example less packaging, less use of bags, pouches and covers, etc, to use bags made of cloth or any other reusable material. Under the process of reuse, people are made aware to purchase reusable items. For example, instead of throwing off unwanted items such as cloth napkins, plastic goods, glass utensils, etc. they should be buried, distributed or given to people as charity.
2. **Recycling of waste-** Recycling refers to using waste and converting it into useful raw material and decreasing the amount of waste. There are three levels in the process of recycling: I. Identifying recyclable substances and metals from collected waste and collecting them separately. 2. Making raw materials from collected substances or metals.3. Making new items from raw material.
3. **Waste collection-** Special waste and recyclable waste should be collected by workers appointed by local corporations in cities twice in a week. Wastes which are the breeding grounds of houseflies, or wastes which emit foul odour or the wastes spread in open should be collected and removed as soon as possible.
4. **Treatment and disposal-** Technique of waste management performs research to modify management in such form so that the quantity of waste produced becomes less and waste disposal becomes easy. Processes of waste management are implemented on the basis of quantity, type and catagory of waste. For example waste- disposal at high temperature, by burying inside the ground or by adopting organic process. Suitable alternative is chosen for the treatment and disposal. In order to provide the final form to the waste, one out of the following techniques is adopted- re-cycling, pressing after re-use,shortening the management technique.
5. **Incineration-** Incineration is a major common thermal process. Waste burns in presence of oxygen. After incineration, waste transforms into carbon dioxide, water steam and ash. This process forms a source for energy production. It is used to provide heat for electricity production. Incineration is an additional process of providing heat. Cost of transportation decreases due to this. Production of methane- a greenhouse gas- is decreased through this process.
6. **Gasification and Pyrolysis-** Gasification and Pyrolysis both are thermal processes as same. Under these processes, elements of waste are segregated at high temperature. In Gasification, waste is burnt in regions with less oxygen availability and in Pyrolysis waste is burned in the absence of oxygen. This technique is used in areas of less or no oxygen availability. Pyrolysis liquid is formed by a mixture of combustible and non combustible gases. One unique characteristic feature of Pyrolysis is that energy can he replenished without causing any air pollution.

Advantages of Solid Waste Management

Public health, environment and biotic system get benefited by the process of Solid Waste Management. Public cooperation is very necessary in this exercise. At present, sufficient technical expertise and finance are available to eradicate this problem to a large extent, which will produce good long term effects such as-

1. Fire accident, spread of rats, spread of micro-organisms and insects which are responsible

for infectious diseases Stray animals can also be controlled.

2. Diseases will be controlled, public health will improve, capacity to work will increase and burden of patients on hospitals will decline.
3. Due to decrease in the outflow of poisonous elements, water pollution will decline.
4. Cheap and quality organic manure will be available, agricultural productivity will increase and there will be more crops.
5. Cheap energy will be available in the form of electricity production, due to which expense on electricity production will be reduced.
6. Raw material will be available due to which recycled goods will become cheap.
7. Due to increase in working hours, opportunities of employment will increase. Income will also increase.
8. Availability of precious metals will increase.

Important Points

1. Sanitation is a human value.
2. Sanitation refers to removing of all types of dirt and to lead a healthy and comfortable life.
3. Safe disposal of human faeces and urine and waste is included in sanitation.
4. Water, air and human health are negatively impacted by waste.
5. Indian government has started rural and urban sanitation campaigns.
6. Solid waste is a very big problem in cities.
7. Solid waste management refers to waste disposal without negatively effecting public health and environment.
8. Waste management programme functions on the theory of three ® Reduce, Reuse, Recycle.
9. Through Waste Management, raw material and energy sources are re-obtained.
10. Good manure is obtained for agriculture.

EXERCISE

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Why is sanitation important for mankind?
2. When was education regarding sanitation provided?
3. Densely populated regions suffer more from one problem . What is it?
4. Which insect transmits dirt and disease to mankind?
5. What is the limitation of solid waste management?
6. What is domestic waste?
7. What is hazardous waste?
8. What is organic manure?

Essay Type Questions

1. Why is sanitation important for mankind?
2. Explain the meaning of sanitation according to World Health Organization.
3. Mention the types of sanitation.
4. What are the objectives of solid waste management?
5. Which measures have been adopted for Solid Waste Management?
6. What are the advantages of Solid Waste Management?